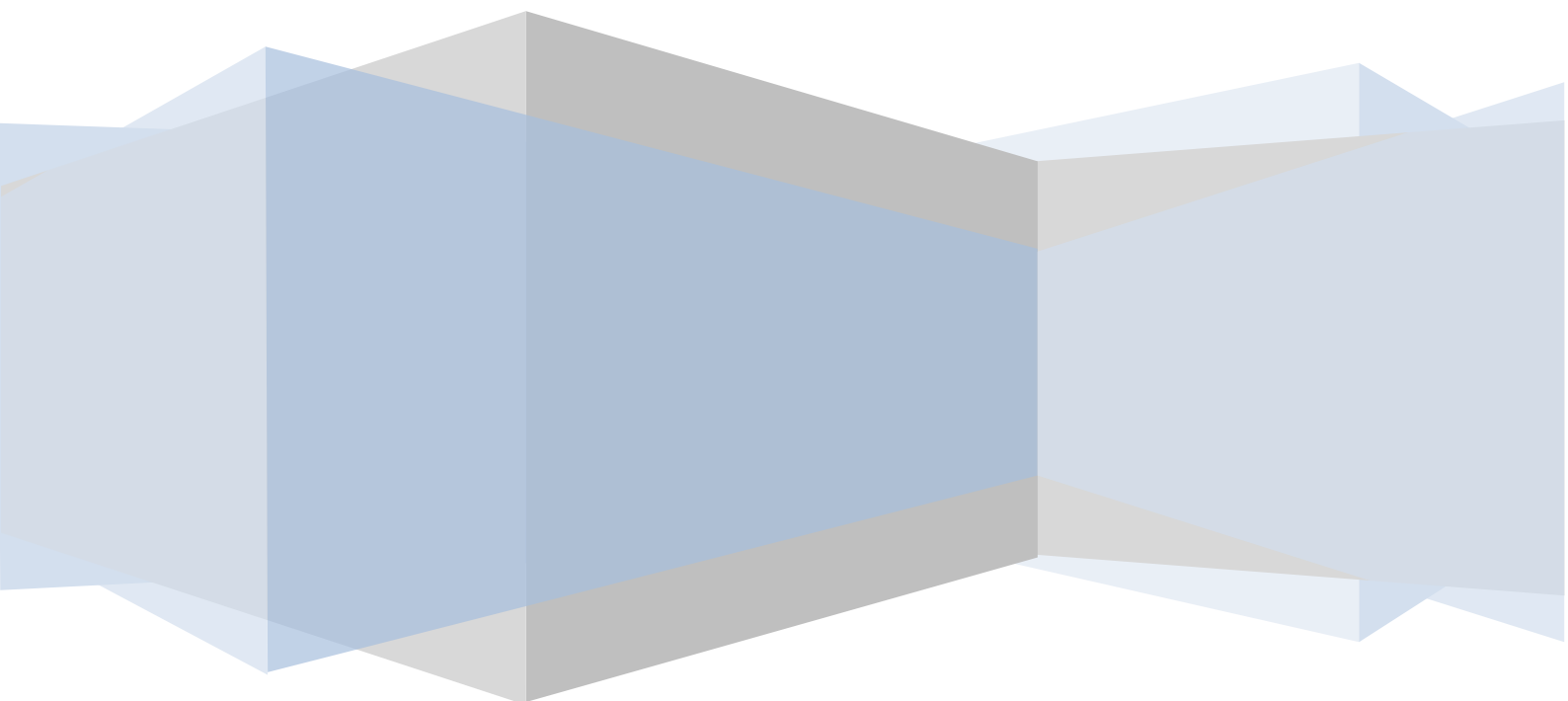


# **NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE**



## **TWENTY YEAR REVIEW 2014**



## CONTENTS

---

<b>Acronyms.....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>1. INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>2. METHODOLOGY .....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>3. PROVINCIAL DEMOGRAPHICS.....</b>	<b>24</b>
3.1 Introduction.....	24
3.2 Population .....	24
3.3 Households.....	25
3.4 Migration.....	25
3.5 Household Tenure.....	25
3.6 Basic Services .....	25
3.7 Education .....	26
3.8 Household Income .....	27
3.9 Unemployment.....	27
<b>4. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY FRAMEWORK.....</b>	<b>28</b>
4.1 Introduction.....	28
4.2 Election Manifesto 2009.....	28
4.3 Medium Term Strategic Framework (2009-2014).....	28
4.4 The National Development Plan (NDP).....	29
4.5 Outcomes Approach.....	30
4.6 Infrastructure Plans (SIPS) .....	31
4.7 Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF).....	32
4.8 Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (Reviewed Version 2011).....	36
4.9 War on Poverty Campaign .....	38
4.10 Crime Prevention Strategy.....	39
4.11 Strengthening of Local Government .....	39
<b>5. EDUCATION.....</b>	<b>41</b>
5.1 Introduction.....	41
5.2 Learner Enrolment.....	41
5.3 Educator-Learner Ratio.....	42
5.4 Early Childhood Education (Grade R) in Public Ordinary Schools .....	43
5.5 The Annual National Assessment .....	44
5.6 The National Curriculum Statement.....	46
5.7 National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).....	47
5.8 No-Fee Schools .....	48
5.9 Matriculation (Grade 12) Pass Rate .....	49
5.10 Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST) .....	51
5.11 Learner Pregnancy .....	54
5.12 Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET).....	56
5.13 Learner Transport.....	56
5.14 School Infrastructure .....	57
5.15 Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign .....	57
5.16 Provision of Library Services .....	58
5.17 Establishment of the Sol Plaatje University.....	58
<b>6. HEALTH .....</b>	<b>59</b>
6.1 Background .....	59
6.2 Life Expectancy .....	59
6.2.1 Mortality and Leading Causes of Death.....	60
6.2.2 Management of Communicable Diseases.....	64

## CONTENTS

6.2.3 Health Promotion.....	65
6.3 Decreasing Child and Maternal Mortality .....	65
6.3.1 Infant Mortality Rate .....	65
6.3.2 Child Mortality Rate.....	66
6.3.3 Maternal Mortality Rate .....	66
6.3.4 Immunisation Coverage.....	67
6.4 Combat HIV and AIDS and Decrease the Burden of Disease from Tuberculosis .....	68
6.4.1 HIV and AIDS.....	68
6.4.2 HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) .....	70
6.4.3 Tuberculosis (TB).....	72
6.5 Strengthen Health Systems Effectiveness .....	74
6.5.1 Primary Health Care (PHC).....	74
6.5.2 Classification of Health Facilities for Compliance .....	76
6.5.3 Provision of a complete and comprehensive package of services .....	77
6.5.3 National Health Insurance (NHI) .....	77
6.5.4 Human Resources.....	78
6.5.5 Health Infrastructure.....	81
<b>7. SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT.....</b>	<b>83</b>
7.1 Income, Poverty and inequality .....	83
7.1.1 Background .....	83
7.1.1 War on Poverty .....	83
7.1.2 Poverty Lines and Headcounts.....	85
7.2 Social Security .....	89
7.2.1 Social Grants .....	89
7.2.1 Social Relief .....	92
7.2.2 Food Security .....	93
7.3 Substance Abuse .....	95
7.3.1 Prevention .....	96
7.3.2 Treatment and Aftercare Services .....	96
7.3.3 Foetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorders (FASD) .....	96
7.4 Crime Prevention and Support.....	97
7.4.1 Secure Care Facilities.....	97
7.4.1 Accreditation of Diversion Services .....	97
7.4.2 Other Services .....	97
7.5 Persons with Disabilities .....	97
7.6 Youth Development.....	98
7.7 HIV and AIDS.....	99
7.7.1 Support services to orphans and vulnerable children (HIV and AIDS) .....	99
7.7.2 The Isibindi Programme.....	100
7.7.3 Thogomelo Training Programme .....	100
7.8 Care and Support to Families .....	100
7.8.1 Family Preservation Enhancing Family Wellbeing .....	100
7.8.2 Child Protection Services .....	101
7.8.3 Early Childhood Development (0-4 years old).....	101
<b>8. SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT.....</b>	<b>103</b>
8.1 Human Settlements .....	103
8.1.1 Formal Dwellings .....	103
8.1.2 Informal Dwellings.....	104
8.1.3 Housing Delivery .....	104
Source: COGHSTA Annual Reports.....	107
8.1.4 Outcome 8: Sustainable Human Settlements and Improved: Quality of Household Life.....	107
8.2 Access to Basic Services .....	108
8.2.1 Water.....	108
8.2.2 Sanitation.....	110
8.2.3 Electricity .....	112
8.2.4 Refuse Removal.....	114
8.2.5 FBS Water and Sanitation.....	115
8.3 Municipal Infrastructure Grant.....	117
8.4 Disaster Management.....	118
<b>9. SPORTS, ARTS AND CULTURE.....</b>	<b>119</b>
9.1 Social Cohesion and Nation Building.....	119

## CONTENTS

9.2	Cultural Affairs .....	119
9.2.1	Promotion of Arts and Culture .....	119
9.2.1.1	Commemorative Events .....	120
9.2.1.2	Mayibuye Centre .....	121
9.2.2	Heritage Resource Services.....	121
9.2.2.1	Honouring Heroes and Heroines .....	121
9.2.2.2	World Heritage Site .....	121
9.2.2.3	Name Change Process .....	121
9.2.3	Museum Services.....	122
9.2.3.1	Exhibitions .....	122
9.2.4	Language Services.....	123
9.2.4.1	Promoting Multilingualism .....	123
9.3	Library and Archive Services .....	123
9.3.1	Library Services.....	123
9.3.1.1	Northern Cape Annual Writer's Festival .....	124
9.3.1.2	Support to Municipalities.....	124
9.3.1.3	Reading Promotion Programme.....	125
9.3.2	Archive Services .....	125
9.4	Sport and Recreation .....	125
9.4.1	Sport Development.....	126
9.4.2	Recreation .....	126
9.4.3	School Sport .....	127
<b>10.</b>	<b>SAFETY AND SECURITY .....</b>	<b>128</b>
10.1	Background .....	128
10.2	Crime Rates.....	128
10.2.1	Serious Crimes 2009-2013 .....	128
10.2.1.1	Contact Crimes .....	129
	<i>Table 59: Crime statistics related to contact crimes for the period 2008/09-2012/13.....</i>	<i>129</i>
10.2.1.2	Contact Related Crimes.....	133
10.2.1.3	Property Related Crimes .....	133
	<i>Table 62: Number of Property Related Crimes for the Period 2009-2012 .....</i>	<i>134</i>
10.2.1.4	Police Detected Crimes .....	134
	<i>Table 63: Crime Dependent on Police detection for the period 2009-2012 .....</i>	<i>135</i>
10.2.1.5	Other Serious Crimes .....	135
10.2.1.6	Trio-Crimes .....	136
10.2.1.7	Other Crimes reported for the period 2009-2012.....	136
10.2.1.8	Twenty (20) Serious Crimes .....	137
10.3	Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy.....	137
10.4	Crime Prevention .....	138
10.4.1	Children in Conflict with the law .....	138
10.4.2	Protecting Victims of Violence .....	138
10.4.3	Transformation of South African Police Services .....	139
<b>11.</b>	<b>ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT .....</b>	<b>140</b>
11.1	Introduction.....	140
11.2	The National Economy.....	140
11.3	The Northern Cape Economy .....	144
11.3.1	Sector contribution to the Northern Cape Economy .....	146
11.4	Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) .....	149
11.5	Trade and Development Promotion .....	150
11.6	Manufacturing Sector Prioritisation and Promotion .....	151
11.6.1	Northern Cape Diamond Strategy.....	152
11.6.1.1	Kimberley International Diamond and Jewellery Academy (KIDJA) .....	152
11.6.1.2	Kimberley Diamond and Jewellery Hub .....	153
11.6.1.3	Relocation of the Diamond State Trader .....	153
11.6.1.4	Jewellery Manufacturing.....	153
11.6.1.5	Diamond and Jewellery Incubation .....	153
11.7	Green Economy .....	153
11.8	Knowledge Economy .....	153
11.8.1	Provincial Information Society Strategy Programme .....	154
11.8.1.1	Background .....	154
11.8.1.2	Introduction .....	154
11.8.1.3	Progress .....	154

## CONTENTS

11.9	Tourism.....	155
11.10	Regulatory Services .....	156
<b>12.</b>	<b>AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT .....</b>	<b>158</b>
12.1	Contribution of the Agricultural Sector to the Economy of the Northern Cape .....	158
12.2	Land reform.....	160
12.2.1	Land redistribution .....	160
12.2.2	Land Restitution.....	160
12.3	Agricultural Development Support and Transformation .....	160
12.3.1	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP).....	160
12.3.2	Ilima/Letsema .....	162
12.3.3	Orange River Emerging Farmer Settlement and Development Programme (OREFSDP) ...	162
12.4	Food security .....	164
12.4.1	Integrated Food Security Strategy.....	164
12.4.2	Fetsa Tlala .....	165
12.5	Rural Development .....	166
12.5.1	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP).....	166
12.5.1.1	Riemvasmaak.....	166
12.5.1.2	Heuningsvlei.....	167
12.5.1.3	Schmidtsdrift.....	167
12.5.1.4	Renosterberg.....	168
12.5.1.5	Magareng.....	168
12.6	Agro-processing .....	168
12.6.1	Vineyard Development Scheme.....	169
12.6.2	Rooibos Tea Processing and Marketing .....	169
12.7	Livestock Production and Development Programme.....	170
12.7.1	Nguni project.....	170
	<i>Source: DALR</i> .....	170
12.7.2	Commercialization of goats .....	171
12.8	Sustainable use of natural resources .....	171
12.8.1	Revitalization of Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation Scheme .....	171
12.8.2	Land Care Programme .....	172
12.9	Agricultural Credit for Small Farmers.....	173
12.10	Other High Impact Agricultural Projects .....	173
12.10.1	Tshwaraganang Hydroponics .....	173
12.10.2	Warrenton Super Chicken.....	174
12.10.3	Ramskop Abattoir Joint Venture .....	174
12.10.4	Emthanjeni Hydroponics.....	174
12.11	Training, Skills Development and Research .....	174
<b>13.</b>	<b>ROADS AND PUBLIC WORKS .....</b>	<b>176</b>
13.1	Introduction.....	176
13.2	Road Infrastructure.....	176
13.2.1	The Road Network.....	176
13.2.1.1	Paved Road Network .....	177
13.2.1.2	Unpaved Road Network.....	179
	<i>Figure 69: Average gravel thickness of unpaved roads in N Cape from 1995 to 2013</i> .....	180
	<i>Source: DRPW</i> .....	180
13.2.2	Investment in Road Network .....	180
	<i>Source: DRPW</i> .....	181
13.3	Public Works .....	182
13.3.1	Police Infrastructure (Police Stations) .....	183
13.4	Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).....	184
13.4.1	Community Works Programme (CWP).....	185
13.5	Special Programmes and Projects .....	187
13.5.1	Operation Khotso Pula Nala .....	187
13.5.2	Rooting Out the Dust Programme.....	188
13.5.3	Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme .....	188
<b>14.</b>	<b>TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE.....</b>	<b>190</b>
14.1	De Aar Logistics Hub .....	190
14.2	Port Nolloth Harbour .....	190
14.3	Upington Cargo Hub.....	190
14.4	Belmont/Douglas Branch Line.....	190

## CONTENTS

<b>15. ENVIRONMENT AND NATURE CONSERVATION .....</b>	<b>192</b>
15.1 Environmental Management.....	192
15.1.1 Air Quality Management.....	192
15.1.2 Energy Efficiency.....	193
15.1.3 Waste Management.....	193
15.1.4 Community Based Natural Resource Management .....	194
15.1.5 Environment Impact Management.....	195
15.1.6 Environmental Awareness .....	195
15.2 Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity .....	195
15.3 Sustainable Management and Use of Natural Resources.....	196
15.3.1 Restoration and Rehabilitation .....	196
15.3.2 Land Conservation .....	196
15.3.3 Hunting Industry.....	197
15.3.4 Regulation of Natural Resource Use .....	197
15.4 Coastal Management.....	197
<b>16. EMPLOYMENT IN THE NORTHERN CAPE .....</b>	<b>198</b>
16.1 Working Age Population.....	198
16.2 Labour Force or the Economically Active Population .....	198
16.3 Employment in the Northern Cape .....	198
16.4 Labour Absorption Rate .....	200
16.5 Labour Force Participation Rate .....	200
16.6 Unemployment in the Northern Cape .....	201
<b>17. GOVERNANCE.....</b>	<b>204</b>
17.1 Intergovernmental Relations .....	204
17.2 Local government .....	204
17.2.1 Developmental Local Government – A New Era .....	204
Integrated Development Planning .....	204
Performance Management.....	204
Co-operating with residents and partners .....	205
17.2.2 Status of Municipalities .....	205
17.2.2.1 Vacancy Rate of Senior Managers (Section 54A and Section 56 managers).....	205
17.2.2.2 Ward Committees .....	206
17.2.2.3 Community Development Workers .....	206
17.3 Support to Local Government.....	206
17.3.1 Five-Year Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 – 2011).....	206
17.3.2 Local Government Turn Around Strategy (LGTAS) .....	207
Mainstreaming LGTAS into Outcome 9 .....	208
17.4 Operation Clean Audit .....	208
<b>18. PROVINCIAL REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE.....</b>	<b>210</b>
18.1 Provincial Revenue.....	210
18.2 Provincial Expenditure .....	211
18.2.1 Expenditure per Department .....	211
18.2.2 Expenditure According to Economic Classification .....	213
18.2.3 Capital Expenditure .....	214
18.2.4 Transfers and Subsidies .....	215
18.2.5 Compensation of Employees .....	216
18.2.6 Training and Staff Development .....	217
18.3 Unauthorised, Irregular and Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure .....	218
18.3.1 Unauthorised Expenditure .....	218
18.3.2 Irregular Expenditure .....	220
18.3.3 Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure.....	221
<b>19. AUDIT OUTCOMES: PROVINCIAL AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT .....</b>	<b>223</b>
19.1 Audit Outcomes of Provincial Government Entities .....	223
19.1.1 Introduction .....	223
19.1.2 Audit Findings.....	223
19.2 Audit Outcomes for Municipalities (2008/09-2012/13).....	226
<b>20. KEY FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS.....</b>	<b>230</b>
20.1 Social Sector.....	230

## CONTENTS

---

20.1.1	Education .....	230
20.1.2	Health .....	231
20.1.3	Poverty Alleviation/ Social Development .....	232
20.1.4	Human Settlement .....	233
20.1.5	Basic Services.....	233
20.1.6	Social Cohesion.....	234
20.2	Justice and Crime Prevention .....	235
20.2.1	Safety and Security .....	235
20.3	Economic Sector .....	235
20.3.1	Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development .....	236
20.3.2	Infrastructure .....	236
20.3.3	Unemployment .....	236
20.4	Governance and Administration .....	237
20.4.1	Intergovernmental Relations .....	237
20.4.2	Participatory Democracy .....	237
20.4.3	Local Government .....	237
20.4.4	Finance and Financial Management .....	238
20.5	Other Matters.....	240
20.5.1	Northern Cape Growth and Development Strategy .....	240
<b>21.</b>	<b>CONCLUSION .....</b>	<b>241</b>

## Acronyms

ABET	Adult Basic Education
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
ASGISA	Accelerated Shared Growth Initiative- South Africa
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment
CASP	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme
CCMDD	Central Chronic Management, Dispensing and Distribution
COGHSTA	Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
CRDS	Comprehensive Rural Development Strategy
CWP	Community Workers Programme
DALR	Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
DEDAT	Department of Economic Development and Tourism
DENC	Department of Environment and Nature Conservation
DHIS	Department of Health Information Systems
DORA	Division of Revenue Act
DSD	Department of Social Development
DTI	Department of Trade and Industry
ECD	Early Childhood Development
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
FASD	Foetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorder
FDI	Foreign Direct Investment
FET	Further Education and Training
GEAR	Growth, Employment and Redistribution
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GDPR	Gross Domestic Product Regional
HCT	HIV Counselling and Testing
HDI	Historically Disadvantaged Individual
HIV	Human Immune Virus
HIG	Health Infrastructure Grant
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
IGR	Intergovernmental Relations
IDP	Integrated Development Plans
IPAP	Industrial Policy Action Plan
ISRDS	Integrated Sustainable Rural Development System
JCPS	Justice, Crime Prevention and Security
KIDJA	Kimberley International Diamond and Jewellery Academy
KPA	Key Performance Area



LED	Local Economic Development
LG	Local Government
LGSA	Local Government Strategic Agenda
LGTAS	Local Government Turn Around Strategy
LPDP	Livestock Production and Development Programme
LSM	Living Standard Measure
MDR	Multi-drug Resistant
MTAS	Municipal Turn Around Strategy
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
NC	Northern Cape
NCPGDS	Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
NCRDS	Northern Cape Rural Development Strategy
NDP	National Development Plan
NGP	New Growth Path
NHI	National Health Insurance
NPFNS	National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
NSNP	National Schools Nutrition Programme
NUSP	National Upgrading Support Programme
OPCA	Operation Clean Audit
OTP	Office of the Premier
OREFSDP	Orange River Emerging Farmers Settlement and Development Programme
PCPS	Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy
PEP	Post-Exposure Prophylaxis
PHC	Public Health Care
PHS	Public Health Services
PICC	Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee
PMTCT	Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission
PMS	Performance Management System
PSDF	Provincial Spatial Development Framework
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
RIDS	Regional Industrial Development Strategy
SADC	Southern African Developing Countries
SAPS	South African Police Services
SIPs	Special Integrated Projects
SMME	Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises
SONA	State of the Nation Address
SOPA	State of the Province Address
SS	Sectoral Strategy
StatsSA	Statistics South Africa
STI	Sexually Transmitted Infections

TB	Tuberculosis
TORs	Terms of Reference
UISP	Upgrading of Informal Settlement Programme
URP	Urban Renewal Programme
WOP	War on Poverty
VCI	Visual Condition Index
XDR	Extensive Drug Resistant

DRAFT

## List of Tables

- Table 1: Household distribution and average household size in Northern Cape
- Table 2: Distribution of households by toilet facility type
- Table 3: Total number of learners in public ordinary schools: 2009-2013
- Table 4: Educator-learner ratio for public and independent schools: 2009-2014
- Table 5: Grade R learners and practitioners in public ordinary schools: 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 6: Academic qualifications of Grade R practitioners in public ordinary schools and according to District as at January 2014
- Table 7: Academic qualifications of Grade R practitioners in community based centres and according to Districts as at January 2014
- Table 8: Annual National Assessment for Mathematics and Language for Grade 3 and 6 from 2011 to 2013
- Table 9: Annual National Assessment for Mathematics and Language for Grade 9 for 2012 and 2013
- Table 10: The number of schools, learners and food handlers and budget for NSNP from 2009 to 2013
- Table 11: The number of learners, schools and budget for no fee schools: 2009-2013
- Table 12: Performance of Grade 12 learners from 2009 to 2013
- Table 13: Quality of Grade 12 passes from 2009 to 2013
- Table 14: Pass rate in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology from 2009 to 2013.
- Table 15: The number of learner pregnancies from grade 4 to Grade 12 from 2004 to 2011
- Table 16: Learner pregnancy per District for 2010, 2011 and 2012
- Table 17: The number of learners having completed full ABET level 4 from 2009 to 2013
- Table 18: Number of learners provided with transport from 2009 to 2013
- Table 19: Provisioning of school infrastructure from 2009 to 2012
- Table 20: Number of learners and voluntary educators in the Kha Ri Gude mass literacy campaign: 2009-2014
- Table 21: Causes of death from 2010 to 2012
- Table 22: Ten leading underlying natural causes of death- 2010 to 2012
- Table 23: Number of deaths by age and according to District - 2010 and 2012
- Table 24: Number of deaths by gender – 2011 and 2012
- Table 25: Total number of children under 5 years and pregnant women vaccinated in 2011
- Table 26: Infant mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14

- Table 27: Child mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 28: Maternal mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2010/11 to 2013/14
- Table 29: Immunisation coverage from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 30: Results of the introduction of the immunisation drive for PCV 3rd dose and RV 2nd dose – 2010 to 2013
- Table 31: Patients registered on ART programme from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Table 32: Number of TB cases diagnosed from 2010/11 to 2013/14
- Table 33: Success rate for TB treatment from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Table 34: Distribution of facilities according to District as at 2012
- Table 35: The number of medical officers, professional nurses and pharmacists per 100 000 of the population in urban and rural areas from 2010 to 2013/14
- Table 36: Annual expenditure on infrastructure from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 37: Infrastructure projects in progress
- Table 38: Social grant beneficiaries by type of grant from 2008 to 2013
- Table 39: The number of beneficiaries and the budget for social relief from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 40: The number of soup kitchens funded and total expenditure – 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 41: The number of drop-in-centres funded and total expenditure from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 42: The number and annual expenditure on ECD centres
- Table 43: The number and %age of households in formal dwellings against the total households per District
- Table 44: The number of housing units delivered for 5 year cohorts from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 45: Distribution of houses built according to programme: 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 46: Annual housing budget and expenditure from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 47: Total number of households and number and %age of households with piped water
- Table 48: Total number of households and number of and %age of households with flush and chemical toilets per District
- Table 49: Number and %age of households with access to electricity against the total number of households per District
- Table 50: Number and %age of households with access to refuse removal against the total number of households per District
- Table 51: Number and %age of households with access to free basic water and sanitation against the total number of households per District

- Table 52: Annual allocation for MIG from 2009/10 to 2012/2013
- Table 53: The number of wards and CDW's per District and the ratio CDW:ward
- Table 54: Number of participants in the CWP as at June 2014
- Table 55: Number of libraries according to type in each District
- Table 56: Establishment of container libraries in WOP wards since 2010
- Table 57: Establishment of mobile book boxes in WOP wards since 2010
- Table 58: Number of learners that received HPT from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 59: Number of learners assisted in provincial and national tournaments
- Table 60: Number of serious crimes reported from 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Table 61: Crime statistics related to contact crimes for the period 2008/09 to 2012/14
- Table 62: Detection rate of cases reported from 2010/11 to 2012/13
- Table 63: Crime statistics for contact related crimes from 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Table 64: Number of property related crimes for the period 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Table 65: Number of other serious crimes reported from 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Table 66: Number of crimes categorised as trio-crimes reported from 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Table 67: The number of other crimes reported from 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Table 68: Economic growth rates for SA: 2001, 2006, and 2008 to 2013
- Table 69: Sector contribution to the Northern Cape GDP for 1996, 2006 and 2013
- Table 70: Companies investing in the N Cape between January 2007 and October 2012 by industry sector
- Table 71: Companies investing in the N Cape between January 2007 and October 2012
- Table 72: Number of companies assisted with export in the N Cape from 2009/10 to 2012/13
- Table 73: Number of students trained at KIDJA from 2011/12 to 2013/14
- Table 74: KPA's of the liquor board from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 75: KPA's of the gambling board from 2009/10 to 2013/1
- Table 76: Number of projects, annual allocation and beneficiaries for CASP from 2004/05 to 2013/14
- Table 77: Number of projects, annual allocation and beneficiaries in for the Ilima/Letsema from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Table 78: The OREFSDP projects allocated water rights and number of hectares allocated
- Table 79: Projects in the Northern Cape of 1 million Hectare food production programme

Table 80:	Distribution of Nguni cattle to the number of farms per District
Table 81:	Number of projects implemented annually and budget for the Land Care Programme from 2009/10 to 2013/14
Table 82:	Annual allocation for the Emthanjeni Hydroponics project from 2011/12 to 2013/14
Table 83:	Road infrastructure projects completed from 2009/10 to 2013/14
Table 84:	Budget and expenditure on road infrastructure from 2009/10 to 2013/14
Table 85:	Number of job opportunities created by provincial departments against targets through EPWP from 2009/10 to 2013/14
Table 86:	Number of job opportunities for target groups for phase 2 of EPWP
Table 87:	Projects implemented under Operation Khotso Pula Nala
Table 88:	Number of trainees trained in Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship programme
Table 89:	Number of air quality networks monitored and emission license applications processed
Table 90:	Number of waste license applications received and processed and landfill sites monitored
Table 91:	Number of job opportunities created under the community based natural resource management programme from 2009 to 2012
Table 92:	Number of EIA applications received from 2009/10 to 2013/14
Table 93:	Number of wild life related assessments completed
Table 94:	Number of applications for bio-diversity permits processed from 2009/10 to 2013/14
Table 95:	The size of the labour force for quarter 1 from 2009 to 2014
Table 96:	No. of wards and CDWs per District and the ratio CDWs:Ward
Table 97:	Total annual revenue from 2008/09 to 2013/14
Table 98:	Total annual expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14
Table 99:	Annual expenditure per department from 2009/10 to 2013/14
Table 100:	Total annual expenditure according to economic classification: 2008/09-2013/14
Table 101:	Total annual capital expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14
Table 102:	Annual expenditure on transfers and subsidies from 2008/09 to 2013/14
Table 103:	Total annual compensation for employees from 2008/09 to 2013/14
Table 104:	Annual expenditure on training and staff development from 2008/09 to 2013/14
Table 105:	Annual total unauthorised expenditure and cumulative balance at year end from 2008/09 to 2013/14

- Table 106: Annual unauthorised expenditure per provincial department from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Table 107: Annual total irregular expenditure and cumulative balance at year end from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Table 108: Irregular expenditure annually according to department from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Table 109: Annual total fruitless and wasteful expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Table 110: Audit opinions of provincial departments and public entities from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 111: Audit opinions of other entities from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Table 112: A summary of the audit opinions of municipalities: 2008/09-2012/13
- Table 113: Audit opinions of municipalities- 2008/09 to 2012/13

## List of Figures

- Figure 1: Number of learners in public ordinary schools: 2009-2014
- Figure 2: Learner performance in Language and Mathematics in Grade 3 and 6 from 2011 to 2013
- Figure 3: The Annual National Assessment results of Grade 9 for 2012 and 2013
- Figure 4: Number of learners versus budget for the NSNP FROM 2009 to 2013
- Figure 5: The number of learners in No-fee schools from 2009 to 2013
- Figure 6: Quality of Grade 12 passes from 2009 to 2013
- Figure 7: Enrolment trends for Grade 12 learners in Mathematics, Physical Science and Technology (2009-2013)
- Figure 8: Pass rate in Mathematics, Physical Science and Technology from 2009 to 2013)
- Figure 9: Enrolment in Mathematics, Physical Science and Technology according to Gender from 2009 to 2013
- Figure 10: Number of learner pregnancies per District in 2010, 2011 and 2012
- Figure 11: Life expectancy for males and females in the Northern Cape
- Figure 12: Maternal mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Figure 13: HIV prevalence trend in trend for the Northern Cape for 1994, 1999, 2004 and 2009 to 2012
- Figure 14: HIV prevalence rate according to District from 2010 to 2012
- Figure 15: Number of patients registered on the ART programme from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 16: TB treatment success rate from 2008/9 to 2013/14
- Figure 17: Utilisation rate of PHC facilities from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 18: Utilisation rate of PHC facilities of children less than 5 years from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 19: Number of medical officers/100 000 of population in urban and rural areas from 2010/11 to 2013/14
- Figure 20: Number of professional nurses/100 000 of population in urban and rural areas from 2010/11 to 2013/14
- Figure 21: Number of pharmacists/100 000 of population in urban and rural areas from 2010/11 to 2013/14
- Figure 22: Vacancy rate for Health from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 23: Population living below the food poverty line in the Northern Cape for 1995, 2005, 2008 and 2011
- Figure 24: Poverty gap in the Northern Cape for 1995, 2005, 2008 and 2009
- Figure 25: LSM for the middle class for 1998 and 2006



- Figure 26: The proportion of households per LSM for 1994, 2000, 2008 and 2012
- Figure 27: The gini coefficient in the Northern Cape for 1995, 2001, 2005, 2008 and 2009
- Figure 28: The percentage children and elderly that reported hunger: 2002 to 2009
- Figure 29: The total amount disbursed annually for all categories of social grants from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 30: Impact of grants on poverty and chronic poverty for the elderly and children
- Figure 31: Number of households benefitting from food security interventions; 2009 to 2012
- Figure 32: Percentage child-headed households in the Northern Cape between 2002 and 2010
- Figure 33: Number of households in formal dwellings versus the total number of households per District
- Figure 34: Number of households living in informal dwellings according to District
- Figure 35: Number of housing units delivered per five year period between 1994 and 2014
- Figure 36: Distribution of houses built according to programme from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Figure 37: Annual expenditure versus budget for housing from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Figure 38: Total number of households with piped water against the total number of households in the province
- Figure 39: The percentage of households with piped water in each District
- Figure 40: Number of households with flush and chemical toilets versus the total number of households per District
- Figure 41: The percentage of households with flush and chemical toilets per District
- Figure 42: The percentage of households with no toilets per District
- Figure 43: Number of Households with access to electricity versus the total number of households per District
- Figure 44: The percentage of households with access to electricity per District
- Figure 45: Number of Households with access to refuse removal versus the total number of households per District
- Figure 46: The percentage of households with access to refuse removal per District
- Figure 47: Number of Households with access to free basic water and sanitation versus the total number of households per District

- Figure 48: The percentage of households with access to free basic water and sanitation per District
- Figure 49: The total number of serious crimes committed from 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Figure 50: Economic growth rates for South Africa: 2001, 2006 and 2008 to 2013
- Figure 51: GDP growth in South Africa quarter on quarter and year on year from 2009 to 2014
- Figure 52: % contribution to the GDP by the primary, secondary and tertiary industries
- Figure 53: Sector contribution to South Africa's GDP growth in 2013
- Figure 54: Comparison of the South African and the Northern Cape economic growth rates (2004 to 2013)
- Figure 55: Real annual economic growth rate per province and South Africa for 2013
- Figure 56: Provincial contribution to the South African economy in 1999, 2006 and 2013
- Figure 57: Sector contribution to the Northern Cape GDP: 1996, 2006 and 2013
- Figure 58: Sector contribution by industry to the Northern Cape provincial GDP from 1999 to 2013
- Figure 59: Number of companies assisted with export in the N Cape from 2009/10 to 2012/13
- Figure 60: The value of investment of companies assisted with export – 2009/10 to 2012/13
- Figure 61: Number of tourists visiting N Cape and total annual spend from 2009 to 2013
- Figure 62: GDP at current prices(R million) in the Northern Cape for Agriculture – 2000 to 2012
- Figure 63: GDP at current prices(R million) in the Northern Cape for Agriculture vs RSA Agriculture – 2000 to 2012
- Figure 64: Number of projects, annual allocation and number of beneficiaries of CASP from 2004/05 to 2013/14
- Figure 65: The average VCI for paved roads in the Northern Cape from 1995 to 2013
- Figure 66: The overall VCI for paved roads in the Northern Cape in 2012
- Figure 67: The overall VCI for paved roads in the Northern Cape in 2013
- Figure 68: The unpaved road network condition in the Northern Cape for 2012/13
- Figure 69: The average gravel thickness of unpaved roads in Northern Cape from 1995 to 2013
- Figure 70: Annual budget versus annual expenditure on road infrastructure from 2009/10 to 2013/14

- Figure 71: Number of EPWP job opportunities created by Provincial Departments from 2009/10 to 2013/14
- Figure 72: The number of CWP participants in each site versus the target
- Figure 73: The percentage of CWP participation per activity sector
- Figure 74: Number of air emission license applications received versus applications finalised and those provisionally issued
- Figure 75: Population 15-64 years (in thousands) for quarter 1 from 2009 to 2014
- Figure 76: Employment figures in Northern Cape for quarter 1 from 2009 to 2014
- Figure 77: Employment figures in the formal, informal and agricultural sectors and private households
- Figure 78: Labour absorption rate in the Northern Cape for quarter 1 from 2009 to 2014
- Figure 79: Labour force participation ratio in the Northern Cape for quarter 1 from 2009 to 2014
- Figure 80: Unemployment rates for the provinces and South Africa for quarter 1, 2009
- Figure 81: Unemployment rates for the provinces and South Africa for quarter 1, 2014
- Figure 82: Unemployment rates in the Northern Cape for quarter 1, from 2009 to 2014
- Figure 83: Unemployment at the district level for 1996, 2001 and 2011
- Figure 84: Total annual provincial revenue from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 85: Total annual expenditure for the province from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 86: Annual expenditure according to departments
- Figure 87: Average % expenditure for the period 2008/09 to 2012/13
- Figure 88: Breakdown of annual expenditure into current expenditure, transfers and subsidies, capital assets and financial assets
- Figure 89: Annual capital expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 90: Annual expenditure on transfers and subsidies from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 91: Annual expenditure on compensation of employees from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 92: Annual expenditure on training and staff development from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 93: Unauthorised expenditure incurred annually from 2008/09 to 2013/14
- Figure 94: Annual irregular expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14 versus the cumulative balance at year end
- Figure 95: Fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred annually from 2008/09 to 2013/14

- Figure 96: Audit opinions of provincial departments and public entities:  
2009/10-2013/14
- Figure 97: Overall audit opinions for provincial departments from 2009/10  
to 2013/14
- Figure 98: Percentage of the different audits annually for municipalities –  
2008/09 to 2012/13

DRAFT

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The first democratic elections in South Africa was held in April 2014 and heralded the first step in the successful transition from apartheid to non-racialism and laid the foundation for a new political and social order. The policy framework at the focal point of the transformation of the country was the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) that was designed not only to build on the political changes achieved but to redress the imbalances of the apartheid past. It provided a framework for integrated and coherent socio-economic progress with the objective of building a democratic, non-racist and non-sexist future that sought to mobilise the people and the resources of the country to eradicate the results of decades of apartheid.

The five pillars that underpin the RDP, namely, meeting basic needs, developing human resources, building the economy, democratising the state and society and implementing development programmes have continued to define and inform public policy. This, despite the fact that, the emphasis has shifted from time to time from one objective to another. For example, in the first term of the democratic government the focus was in meeting basic needs whilst in the second term the emphasis had shifted to the rebuilding and restructuring of the economy through the Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) strategy. This is, however, not to say that the other areas were neglected and even to this day the majority of government programmes are directed at the eradication of poverty, the creation of employment opportunities as well as reducing inequality.

Despite the various positive changes in the last decade and a half, such as the rationalisation of the public service and improvement in the quality of service delivery and the transformation in the health, education and social development sectors government is still faced with a number of challenges. These include, amongst others, the shortage of medical supplies, the comparatively poor matriculation results, low growth of the provincial economy as well as the high unemployment rate in the Northern Cape.

The twenty year review of the Northern Cape provincial government provides a platform for reflection of the journey travelled over the last two decades towards transforming South Africa from an apartheid state to a Constitutional Democracy. A journey that began from a fragmented state prior to 1994 requiring to be modelled in accordance with democratic principles and values enshrined in the Constitution of our country. The ten and fifteen year review reports has served as a basis upon which the latest review input has been founded and the report is fashioned in accordance with the Cluster arrangement that prevails in the province, and follows upon the guiding thematic areas.

Institutional transformation, integration and policy review/development are the pillars upon which government continue to base its trajectory with a sharp focus on

monitoring and evaluation and policy priorities packaged in the outcomes approach (14 Outcomes) in the current electoral cycle, for the purpose of achieving a desired result for the citizens of the province and subsequently the country. Emphasis on monitoring and evaluation would assist to improve service delivery as well as determine the impact of government policies and programmes. Government continues to intensify its effort in fighting the triple challenge of inequality, poverty and unemployment. This is evidenced by the investment in the social sectors as well as in infrastructure.

The main purpose of the Twenty Year Review is to allow government to deliberate on progress made since 1994 in the attainment of the goals and objectives that it has set for itself. This would necessitate an evaluation of the outcomes as well as the impact of national and provincial governments' policies, objectives and programmes on the lives of our people. The review is not only aimed at an assessment of performance but is also intended to determine trends and identify shortcomings and challenges that have hampered government's performance. In the final analysis, the twenty year review is meant to assist government not only to build on the good work achieved thus far but to also assist in planning for the next term of government.

The arrangement of the Twenty Year Review Report has been designed in a way that it comprises of three sections. These are:

**Section A:** This section establishes the basis upon which the actual performance is assessed and evaluated and consists of four chapters. The first of these is the introduction followed by a chapter on the methodology used in the crafting of this report. Chapter three deals with the provincial demographics and the fourth chapter attempts a brief overview of the legislative and policy framework as well as some of the critical programmes of government with the emphasis on the last five years, that is, the fiscal years 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Section B:** This section covers the core aspects of this review, namely, the transformation of and service delivery with regards to the social sector, the economic sector and governance and administration and the efficient, effective and economic management of resources. A significant feature of this section is the determination of trends in service delivery in particular with regards to education, health, social development and basic services including housing. Section B also looks at the economic sector and the contribution made by the provincial government towards the growth of the provincial economy and the contribution of agriculture, in particular, to the economy.

**Section C:** This section summarises the main achievements of the Northern Cape provincial government, notably the successes and the challenges, makes recommendations with regards to the challenges and shortcomings and finally concludes the report.

## 2. METHODOLOGY

The broad methodological approach that was adopted in undertaking this assignment included but was not limited to the following:

- An in-depth analysis was conducted on all the relevant legislation and policy documentation to identify the following:
  - ❖ Functional areas of competence.
  - ❖ All policy objectives, mandates, priorities, programmes, projects and targets that government had set for itself.
  - ❖ Indicators measuring performance; and
  - ❖ Information required to verify and/or substantiate performance
- This was followed by a collection of the relevant data regarding the abovementioned and its analysis thereof to determine trends where applicable, to assess performance of government and to identify shortcomings and challenges; and
- To use the results of the above analysis to formulate recommendations that will assist in charting the way forward.

The methodology utilised quantitative as well as qualitative analytical tools to gather data and information in a phased approach. Analytical methods that were employed were not used merely to describe the status quo. These methods assisted with the analysis of causes as well as other factors driving both opportunities and challenges, the potential and need and to project how these factors will play themselves in the future.

The specific methodology used in the different phases of the Twenty Year Review Included the following:

- Primary research that involved both a quantitative as well as a qualitative analysis of data sourced primarily from Statistics South Africa but where information was lacking data was sourced from provincial and national departments; and
- Secondary research which involved the assessment of provincial department documents such as, *inter alia*, the Strategic Plans and Annual Reports.

Whereas the qualitative analysis used mainly interviews as a means of obtaining information the quantitative approach depended mainly on questionnaires to the relevant role-players.

### **3. PROVINCIAL DEMOGRAPHICS**

#### **3.1 Introduction**

The Northern Cape is situated in the north-western corner of South Africa and is bordered by the Western Cape, Eastern Cape Free State and the North West provinces. The Northern Cape also shares common international borders in the north with Namibia and Botswana and is bordered by the Atlantic Ocean on the west.

The Northern Cape is the largest of the nine provinces and its land mass has increased from 361 830 km<sup>2</sup> (2001 Census) to 372 889 km<sup>2</sup> (Census 2011) and represents 30,5% of the total land area of South Africa. The increase is the result of the incorporation of the Ga Segonyana and Phokwane municipalities which were cross boundary municipalities between the Northern Cape and the North West provinces into the Northern Cape. In addition the Kagisano municipality in the North West province was split into Kagisano/Molopo municipality and the Joe Morolong municipality with the former incorporated in the North West and the latter in the Northern Cape as well as the Moshaweng municipality (now part of the Joe Morolong municipality) which was fully incorporated into the Northern Cape.

The Northern Cape Province consists of five district municipalities and these are:

- Frances Baard which is the smallest district with an area of 12 800 km<sup>2</sup> and represents only 3,4% of the total area of the province.
- John Taolo Gaetsewe has an area of 27 300 km<sup>2</sup> or 7,3% of the total area of the province
- Pixley ka Seme has an area of 103 500 km<sup>2</sup> or 27,8% of the total area of the province.
- ZF Mgcawu has an area of 102 500 km<sup>2</sup> or 27,5% of the total area of the province; and
- Namakwa is the largest of the districts with an area of 126 900 km<sup>2</sup> or 34,0% of the total area of the province.

In addition here are twenty seven local municipalities, the largest of which is the Sol Plaatje municipality in the Frances Baard District.

#### **3.2 Population**

The total population of the Northern Cape is 1 145 861 (Census 2011) compared to 991 919 (Census 2001) and 1 011 864 (Census 1996). The Northern Cape has smallest population in the country and represents 2,2% of the South African population. Despite the fact that Frances Baard is the smallest district in area it has the largest population of 382 086, followed by Siyanda with 236 783, John Taolo



Gaetsewe with 224 799 and Pixley ka Seme with 186 351. Namakwa is the largest district in the province by area but is the least populous with a population of 115 842.

### 3.3 Households

The table below shows the distribution of households and average household size in the Northern Cape.

**Table 1: Household distribution and average household size in Northern Cape**

	<b>Census 2001</b>	<b>CS 2007</b>	<b>Census 2011</b>
<b>Number of households</b>	245 086	264 653	301 405
<b>Average household size</b>	4,6	4,0	3,8

*Source: StatsSA*

The number of households in the province has been consistently increasing since 2001 but the average household size has decreased from 4,6 in 2001 to 3.8 in 2011.

### 3.4 Migration

In the ten year period between the 2001 and 2011 Censuses a total of 69 527 people migrated out of the Northern Cape and 62 792 people migrated into the province. This has resulted in a negative net migration with more people, that is, 6 735, having migrated out of the province than into the province. Of the people that have left the province the largest number have settled in the Western Cape (17 577 people) followed by Gauteng with 16 019.

### 3.5 Household Tenure

The distribution of households by tenure status in the Northern Cape (Census 2011) is as follows:

- 46,9% owned and fully paid off.
- 20,9% occupied rent free.
- 8,2% owned but not yet paid off.
- 18,8% rented; and
- 5,3% other.

### 3.6 Basic Services

According to Census 2011 the proportion of households in the Northern Cape with piped water inside the dwelling or inside the yard is 78,0%, while those with piped

water outside the yard stands at 19,3%. However, 2.6% of the households in the Northern Cape have no access to piped water.

The table below illustrates the percentage distribution of households by type of toilet facility in each District and in the Northern Cape:

**Table 2: Distribution of households by toilet facility type**

	Census			Census		
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011
	Flush/Chemical			None		
Namakwa	47,9	63,3	71,7	11,1	9,8	5,5
Pixley ka Seme	44,0	52,9	73,5	15,6	15	8,0
Siyanda	62,7	69,4	72,6	13,2	13,2	10,3
Frances Baard	69,9	72,8	80,1	5,6	8,4	6,5
John Taolo Gaetsewe	21,6	22,4	30,9	17,3	22,2	9,5
N Cape	52,7	58,6	66,5	11,6	13,1	8,0

Source: StatsSA

The proportion of households using electricity for lighting in the Northern Cape has increased from 63% (Census 1996) to 85,1% (Census 2011) while those using electricity for cooking has increased from 46,7% in 1996 to 78,1% in 2011. The percentage of households in the province using electricity for heating has increased from 43% in 1996 to 62,2% in 2011.

According to Census 2011 66,3% of the households in the Northern Cape have access to refuse removal by a local authority /private company at least once a week. This represents a slight increase of 4,2% over the 1996 Census (62,1%) and 3,7% over the 2001 Census (62,6%).

### 3.7 Education

The vast majority of students aged between 5-24 years who were attending educational institutions in the Northern Cape attended public educational institutions while only 3,4% of students attended private institutions in 2001 and 4,1% in 2011. These figures are lower than the National figures where 5,1% of students attended private institutions in 2001 and 7,3% in 2011.

Although the functional illiteracy rate in the Northern Cape has decreased from 42,1% in 1996 to 26,0% in 2011, the province is still amongst the highest functional illiteracy rates in the country. Although the proportion of persons aged 20 years or older with no schooling has been decreasing from 19,3% in 2001 to 11,3% in 2011 the Northern Cape is the fourth highest in the country and is higher than that of the country average which stands at 8,6% (Census 2011). The Northern Cape has the third lowest

proportion of persons aged 20 years or lower who have completed Grade 12 at 23% and is only better off than the Eastern Cape and Limpopo.

Children in the Northern Cape (25,6 %) were least likely to attend day care centres, crèches, playgroups, nursery schools or pre-primary schools where early childhood development (ECD) programmes are offered (October Household Survey 2012).

The adult literacy rate in the Northern Cape lags behind the national rate where 87,1 % of the population is literate.

### **3.8 Household Income**

The average annual household income in the Northern Cape is the third highest in the country and is only lower than Gauteng and the Western Cape (Census 2011). The average annual household income in the province has more than doubled from R39 757 in 2001 to R86 175 in 2011.

### **3.9 Unemployment**

According to Census 2011 the official unemployment rate in the Northern Cape has increased by less than one per cent from 26,7% in 2001 to 27,4% in 2011 and the latter being the third lowest in the country behind Gauteng and the Western Cape. The official labour force participation rate in the Northern Cape decreased from 54,9% in 2001 to 54% in 2011.

## **4. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY FRAMEWORK**

### **4.1 Introduction**

The approach followed in this chapter is to avoid any repetition of what has already been reported in the ten and fifteen year reviews except to add that those aspects of the legislation and policies have been more than adequately covered in those reports. In line with this, legislation such as the Constitution and the Intergovernmental Relations Act will not be addressed here as well as policies such as the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (ASGI-SA) and GEAR, amongst others. However, sufficient attention will be given to those policies and programmes that have been developed and introduced since 2009.

### **4.2 Election Manifesto 2009**

The 5 priority areas spelt out in the election manifesto are the following:

- Decent work and sustainable livelihoods.
- Education.
- Health.
- Rural development, food security and land reform; and
- Fight against crime and corruption.

### **4.3 Medium Term Strategic Framework (2009-2014)**

The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) which builds on the Election Manifesto of 2009 defines the objectives and targets of government for the five year period beginning 2009 to 2014 and is intended to guide planning and resource allocation across all spheres of government. The strategic objectives of the MTSF are:

- Halve poverty and unemployment by 2014.
- Ensure a more equitable distribution of the benefits of economic growth and reduce inequality.
- Improve the nation's health profile and skills base and ensure universal access to basic services.
- Improve the safety of citizens by reducing incidents of crime and corruption; and
- Build a nation free of all forms of racism, sexism, tribalism and xenophobia.

To give effect to the above strategic objectives the following priority areas have been identified:

- More inclusive economic growth, decent work and sustainable livelihoods.
- Economic and social infrastructure.
- Rural development, food security and land reform.
- Access to quality education.
- Improved health care.
- Intensify the fight against crime and corruption.
- Build cohesive, caring and sustainable communities.
- Creation of a better Africa and a better world.
- Sustainable resource management and use; and
- Build a developmental state including improvement of public services.

#### **4.4 The National Development Plan (NDP)**

##### ***Creating a virtuous cycle of growth and development***

Factors that need to be taken into account in planning are:

1. Rural-urban migration (stands at 10% nationally)
2. Immigrant contribution to population growth.
3. Rising life expectancy.

The National Development Plan sets out to achieve the following:

##### **1. An Economy that will Create more Jobs**

The NDP proposes to create 11 million jobs by 2030

##### **2. Improving Infrastructure**

Infrastructure that supports human settlement (housing, water, sanitation, roads, parks etc) and infrastructure for information and communication technology.

##### **3. Transition to low carbon economy**

A need to move away from the unsustainable use of natural resources and a need for a coherent plan to use water more sustainably and to emit less carbon.

##### **4. An inclusive and integrated rural economy**

By 2030 rural communities should have greater opportunities to participate fully in economic, social and political life in SA. Opportunities underpinned by good quality education, healthcare, transport and basic services as well as successful land reform, job creation and rising agricultural production.

##### **5. Reversing the spatial effects of apartheid**

Settlement patterns continue to perpetuate urban sprawl. Rural spatial planning should focus on sustainable land reform, support to farmers.

## **6. Improving the quality of education, training and innovation**

### **7. Quality health care for all**

By 2030 the health system should provide quality care to all, free at the point of service paid for by public or private insurance.

### **8. Social protection**

By 2030 SA would have a comprehensive system of social protection that includes social security grants, mandatory retirement savings, risk benefits such as unemployment, death and disability benefits and voluntary retirement savings.

### **9. Building safer communities**

By 2030 S Africans should feel safe and have no fear of crime.

### **10. Reforming the public service**

To build a capable state the NDP proposes that parliament's oversight role should be enhanced, the political/administrative interface should be stabilized, the public service professionalised, skills upgraded and coordination improved

### **11. Fighting corruption**

### **12. Transforming society and uniting the country**

## **4.5 Outcomes Approach**

### **Introduction**

There are four components that underpin the outcomes approach, namely:

- Problem analysis
- Theory of change
- Intervention logic; and
- Clear indicators, baselines and targets.

The fourteen (14) outcomes that have been agreed to are the following:

1. Quality basic education.
2. A long and healthy life for all South Africans.
3. All people in SA are and feel safe.
4. Decent employment through inclusive economic growth.
5. A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.
6. An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.

7. Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.
8. Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life.
9. A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government.
10. Environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced.
11. Create a better SA and contribute to a better and safer Africa and world.
12. An efficient, effective and development oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.
13. An inclusive and responsive social protection system.
14. Nation building and Social Cohesion

#### **4.6 Infrastructure Plans (SIPS)**

Government recently adopted an infrastructure plan that is intended to transform the economic landscape of South Africa, create a significant number of new jobs, strengthen the delivery of basic services and support the integration of African economies.

#### **Challenges**

- The New Growth Path sets a goal of 5 million new jobs by 2020; identifies structural problems in the economy and points to opportunities in specific sectors and markets (“job drivers”).
- The first job driver is infrastructure: laying the basis for higher growth, inclusivity and job creation.
- However, the pace of infrastructure development and spending on it is projected to fall from 9,1% currently to 8,1% of GDP of 2013.
- Blockages include weak implementation capacity and poor project development planning.
- Projects are not always strategic, integrated or aligned with national priorities.
- Poor coordination slows projects and limits their impact.

In response to these challenges government has.

- Established a structure (PICC) to coordinate, integrate and accelerate implementation.
- Develop a single common infrastructure plan that will be monitored and centrally driven.
- Assign responsibility and hold them to account.

- Develop a 20 year planning framework beyond one administration to avoid stop-start patterns.

Infrastructure is critical to:

- Promote balanced economic development.
- Unlock economic opportunities.
- Promote mineral extraction and beneficiation.
- Address socio-economic needs.
- Promote job creation.
- Help integrate human settlement and economic development.

### **Special Integrated Projects (SIPs)**

Only SIPs that are of relevance to the Northern Cape are listed below:

- SIP 3; South Eastern Node and Corridor
- SIP 5: Saldhana-Northern Cape Development Corridor
- SIP 6: Municipal Infrastructure Project
- SIP 7: Integrated Urban Space and Public Transport Programme
- SIP 8: Green Energy in Support of the South African Economy
- SIP 9: Electricity Generation to Support Socio-economic Development
- SIP 10: Electricity Transmission and Distribution for All
- SIP 11: Agro-logistics and Rural Infrastructure
- SIP 12: Revitalisation of Public Hospitals and other Health Facilities
- SIP 13: National School Build Programme.
- SIP 14; Higher Education Infrastructure
- SIP 15: Expanding Access to Communication Technology
- SIP 16: SKA and Meerkat

## **4.7 Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF)**

### **Introduction**

The Provincial Spatial Development Framework is an over-arching policy and strategy that:

- Provides direction and guidance pertaining to future land use in the Northern Cape.
- Reconciles and provides a spatial context for provincial sector strategies.



- Promotes a developmental state in accordance with legislation.
- Aligns environmental management in the Northern Cape with applicable international agreements, protocols and conventions.

The PSDF embodies integrated land-use planning, i.e. a participatory planning process aimed at integrating sectoral strategies, optimal allocation of resources between sectors and geographical areas and across the population in a manner that promotes sustainable growth, equity and the empowerment of the poor and marginalised.

### **Overarching Functions of the PSDF**

PSDF is to serve as:

1. A spatial land-use directive which aims to promote environmental, economic and social sustainability through sustainable development.
2. Guideline for instilling a developmental state.
3. Basis for prioritising government programmes and projects.
4. Premise for governmental performance management.
5. Manual for integrated land use planning.

Key objectives of the PSDF are to:

1. Provide a spatial rationale and directive for future development in terms of the principles of sustainability (NSFD and NSSD OF DEA)
2. Give effect to the directives of the National Spatial Development Perspective.
3. Give spatial effect to the provisions of the NCPGDS and guide implementation of the anchor projects.
4. Provide direction for the roll out of national and provincial rural development programmes such as the CRDS and CASP.
5. Provide guidance to public and private infrastructure investment, taking cognisance of the growth and development potential of the various regions and settlements.
6. Spatially coordinate and direct the activities and resources of provincial government departments.
7. Identify land-use issues deemed to be of provincial and regional significance and put forward strategic intervention proposals.

### **The PSDF together with the NCPGDS provides a basis for the prioritisation of programmes and projects through:**

1. Defining time-related targets based on projected developmental needs.

2. Prioritised three to five year capital expenditure programmes according to the budget allocation of province.
3. Motivating, leveraging and securing funding from National Government.
4. Motivating, leveraging and securing funding from any other funding related agencies; or
5. Partnership arrangements with the private sector.

### **Principles for the application of the PSDF**

The use of the PSDF is a broad land-use directive and the following principles apply:

- Any land-use amendment has to conform to the PSDF i.e. account must be taken of and the relevant provisions of the PSDF applied when making decisions that effect the use of land and other resources.
- The PSDF does not create or take away land-use rights.
- The PSDF is applied in a flexible and pragmatic manner focusing on promoting a developmental state and sustainability on the basis of merit and circumstances of each case.

### **Overarching Goal of the PSDF**

***To enable sustainability through sustainable development.***

### **Sustainable development objectives**

- Social sustainability which includes:
  - ❖ Improving the quality of human life and eliminating poverty.
  - ❖ Recognising and responding to the extent of cultural diversity.
  - ❖ Protecting and promoting human health.
  - ❖ Implementing skills training and capacity development for historically disadvantaged individuals.
- Economic sustainability that:
  - ❖ Ensures that new development promotes urban integration, affordable housing and densification.
  - ❖ Ensure that profit and non-profit projects combine into a financially viable local economy
  - ❖ Promote employment creation.
  - ❖ Enhance competitiveness and promote environmental sustainability
  - ❖ Invest a share of the proceeds of non-renewable resources in social and human capital.

- ❖ Protect and enhance property and investments of all inhabitants.
- Biophysical sustainability which incorporates the following principles:
  - ❖ Minimise the use of water, energy, land and materials.
  - ❖ Maximise the reuse and/or recycling of resources.
  - ❖ Use renewable resources instead of non-renewable resources.
  - ❖ Minimise air, water and land pollution.
  - ❖ Create a healthy, non-toxic environment.
  - ❖ Maintain and restore the earth's vitality and ecological diversity.
  - ❖ Minimise damage to sensitive landscapes, including scenic, cultural and historic aspects.
- Technical sustainability with the following objectives:
  - ❖ Construct durable, reliable and functional structures.
  - ❖ Pursue quality in creating the built environment.

### **Sectoral Strategies (SS)**

Sectoral strategies and plans are integral components of the PSDF and should serve as the basis for provincial budgetary processes. The following sectoral strategies are key components of the PSDF:

- SS 1: Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- SS 2: Comprehensive Growth and Development Strategy (DALR).
- SS 3: Fishing and Mariculture Development Strategy.
- SS 4: Land Transport Framework
- SS 5: LED Strategy
- SS 6: Mineral Sector Strategy
- SS 7: NC Manufacturing Strategy
- SS 8: NC Coastal Management Plan
- SS 9: NC Sport and Recreation Plan
- SS10: Roads Plan and Strategy (SANRAL)
- SS11: SMME Strategy
- SS12: Tourism Strategy
- SS13: Water Plan and Strategy

The following SS's are to be prepared:

- SS 14: Provincial Education and Training Strategy
- SS 15: Provincial Energy Reticulation Plan and Strategy
- SS 16: Provincial Environmental Management Framework
- SS 17: Provincial Agriculture and Agro-Processing Strategy
- SS 18: Provincial Industrial Development Strategy
- SS 19: Provincial Renewable Energy Strategy.

### *Spatial Planning Categories*

- Core conservation areas
- Natural buffer areas
- Agricultural areas
- Urban related areas
- Industrial areas
- Surface infrastructure and buildings

## **4.8 Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (Reviewed Version 2011)**

### **Developmental Objectives**

The primary developmental objectives (PDOs) are:

- Promoting the growth, diversification and transformation of the provincial economy; and
- Poverty eradication through social development.

The achievement of the PDOs depends on the achievement of a number of related objectives and these are:

- Developing requisite levels of human and social capital;
- Improving the efficiency and effectiveness of governance and other development institutions; and
- Enhancing infrastructure for economic growth and social development.

### **Development Targets**

1. To maintain an average economic growth rate of between 3 to 4,5%.
2. To create in excess of 16 000 jobs p.a. by 2014.
3. To reduce the number of households living in absolute poverty by 5% per annum.
4. To improve the literacy rate by 50% by 2014
5. To reduce child mortality rate by two thirds by 2014;
6. To reduce the maternal mortality rate by two thirds by 2014;
7. To provide shelter for all by 2014;
8. To provide clean drinking water to all in the province by 2014;

9. To eliminate sanitation backlog in the province to all by 2014;
10. To reduce crime by 10% by 2014
11. To reduce new transmission of HIV and STI's by 50% by 2014
12. To achieve 85% TB cure rate by 2014;
13. To redistribute 30% of the productive agricultural land to PDI's by 2014;
14. To conserve and protect 6,5% of our valuable biodiversity by 2014;
15. To reduce the infrastructure backlog for economic growth and development by 2014; and
16. Vibrant and sustainable rural communities with access to economic infrastructure and basic services by 2014.

### **Specific Targets for 2010-2014**

- Maintain an average real annual growth of 3-4,5%
- Generate in excess of 16 000 jobs annually by 2014
- Reduce households living in poverty by 10%
- Improve literacy rate by 50% by 2014 i.e 5,05% of the population.
- Reduce infant mortality rate by two thirds by 2014 (14/1 000)
- To reduce the maternal mortality rate by two thirds (87/100 000)
- TB – achieve 85% cure rate by 2014;
- To acquire and allocate 81 964 ha
- Infrastructure – 106 194 EPWP job opportunities created by provincial departments and 29 102 job opportunities created by municipalities.

### **Strategic Interventions**

#### **Agriculture**

A transformed and vibrant agricultural sector that contributes to the provincial economic growth, job creation and food security through:

- Land reform and promotion of optimal and sustainable agricultural production.
- Market support to improve market access by small-holder farmers
- Promotion and support of agri-business and agro-processing
- Ensure sustainable use and management of natural resources
- Technology development and transfer
- Implementing integrated food security programme

- Development of farm workers and dwellers to enhance their livelihood and full participation in the sector.

### **Poverty Alleviation Focus Areas**

The following focus areas have been identified in the reviewed PGDS:

- Intersectoral collaboration
- Food security
- Social research
- Material assistance
- Socio-economic initiatives

### **4.9 War on Poverty Campaign**

The War on Poverty Campaign is a response to the need for urgent action against poverty with the overall goal to raise the profile of anti-poverty activities across the departments and spheres of government in order to cover more poor people in the shortest possible time and create the greatest possible impact.

### **Strategic Interventions for Poverty Reduction through Social Development**

#### **Meeting basic needs**

- Water and sanitation
- Integrated housing development
- EPWP
- Social services - poverty alleviation
- HIV and AIDS
- Primary health care

#### **Skills Development**

##### **Improving Access to Knowledge and Skill**

- ECD
- No-fee policy
- ABET
- School nutrition programme
- Improving numeracy and literacy
- Promotion of mathematics, science and technology

## **Improving the work force productivity**

- Improving the supply side of high level knowledge and skills
- Skills development

## **4.10 Crime Prevention Strategy**

### **A Safe and Secure Northern Cape Province**

- Social crime prevention
  - ❖ Anti-substance abuse
  - ❖ Stop violence against women and children
  - ❖ Safer streets and physical environment
  - ❖ Coordination of the Criminal Justice System
- Community Police Relations
  - ❖ Public education, awareness and mobilisation
  - ❖ EPWP safety volunteers
- Civilian Oversight
  - ❖ Public safety through civilian oversight over SAPS
- The reduction of road traffic accidents
  - ❖ Law enforcement
  - ❖ Traffic infrastructure
  - ❖ Road safety education
  - ❖ Law administration and licensing.

## **4.11 Strengthening of Local Government**

A responsible, accountable, effective and efficient local government system.

- Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning and support
  - ❖ Support development and implementation of IDPs
  - ❖ Strengthening intergovernmental relations.

- Deepen democracy through a refined ward committee model
  - ❖ Functioning ward committees
  
- Administration and financial capability
  - ❖ Clean audit for all municipalities
  - ❖ Monthly collections rate on billings.

DRAFT



## 5. EDUCATION

### 5.1 Introduction

Since 1994 government has adopted a number of policies that are not only aimed at increasing access to education but also at improving the quality of education, particularly in respect of the poor. These policies that include, amongst others, the National School Nutrition Programme, No-Fee Schools, free learner transport, the Annual National Assessment Programme and increased access to Grade R have all significantly transformed the basic education sector in the province and the country as a whole. In 2009 the 'Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025' was adopted as the education's delivery blueprint.

The past two decades have recorded significant improvements in a number of education outcomes. These include a decrease in the number of people without schooling, an increase in the number of learners enrolled at public schools, an increase in the number of no-fee schools and a significant increase in the number of Early Childhood Development learners and practitioners. There are, however, a number of challenges that the education sector faces and these are dealt with in detail later in the report.

### 5.2 Learner Enrolment

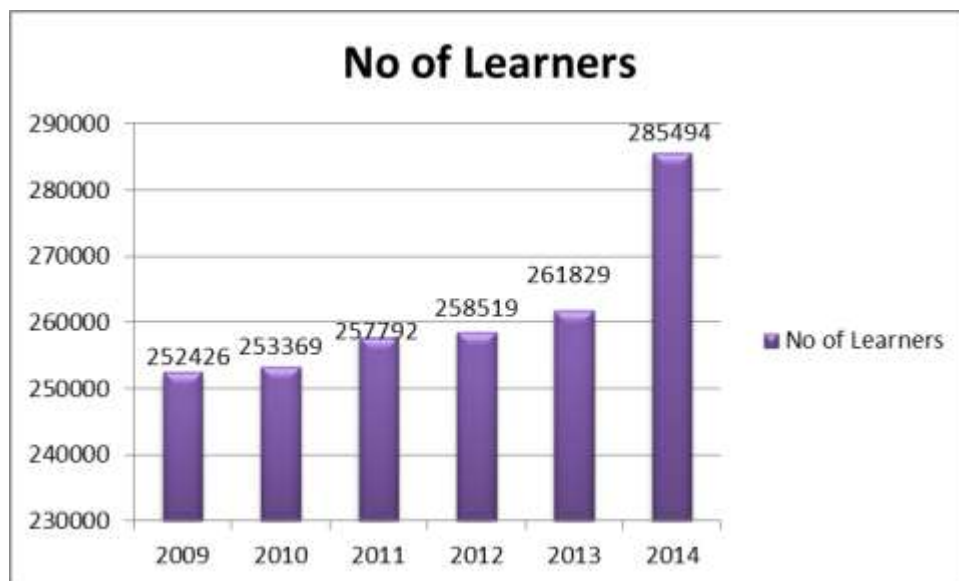
There has been progressive growth in learner enrolment between 2009 and 2014 with a cumulative increase of 13,1% or 33 068 learners over this period. The most significant increase occurred from 2013 to 2014 when the number of learners enrolled increased by 23 665 or 9.03%. There was, however, a slight decrease in the number of learners in public ordinary schools from 2008 when learners numbered 253 024 to 2009 with a total of 252 426 learners. The table as well as figure 1 below indicates the growth in the total number of learners in public ordinary schools between 2009 and 2014.

**Table 3: Total number of learners in public ordinary school: 2009-2013**

Year	Total number of Learners
2009	252 426
2010	253 369
2011	257 792
2012	256 519
2013	261 829
2014	285 494

*Source: EMIS (NCDoE) 2014*

**Figure 1: Total number of learners in public ordinary school: 2009-2014**



Source: EMIS (NCDoE) 2014

### 5.3 Educator-Learner Ratio

The educator-learner ratio for public schools has been increasing steadily from 2009 where it stood at 29,4 to 31,57 in 2014. On the other hand, the ratio in independent schools has been increasing during the first three years of this period (that is, from 12,5 in 2009 to 14,2 in 2012) and thereafter there was a gradual decrease in the remaining years to 12, 28 in 2014. The combined educator-learner ratio for both public and independent schools in 2014 was 30,98. The table below reflects the educator-learner ratio for all schools.

**Table 4: Educator-learner ratio for public and independent schools 2009-2014**

Year	Learner-Educator ratio in Public Schools	Learner-Educator ratio in Private Schools	Learner-Educator ratio in Public & Independent
2009	29,4	12,5	29
2010	30	13	30
2011	31	14	30
2012	31,2	14,2	30,8
2013	31.52	12,85	30,99
2014	31.57	12,48	30,98

Source: EMIS (NCDoE) 2014

## 5.4 Early Childhood Education (Grade R) in Public Ordinary Schools

The Northern Cape Province continues to make significant progress in increasing access by learners to Grade R in public ordinary schools. There has been an overall increase in the number of learners by over 35% from 13 473 in 2009/10 to 18 302 in 2013/14. However, there has been little consistency with a decrease in the number of learners from the previous year experienced in 2010/11 and 2012/13. During the same period, however, there has been an annual increase in the number of the Grade R practitioners from 418 in 2009/10 to 716 in 2013/14 and the Grade R practitioner : learner ratio has decreased from 1: 32,2 in 2009/10 to 1:25,5 in 2013/14. The lowest practitioner: learner ratio of 24,3 was achieved in 2012/13. Table 5 below indicates the number of learners and practitioners in Grade R in public ordinary schools:

**Table 5: Grade R learners and Practitioners in public ordinary schools 2009/10 to 2013/14**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12[	2012/13	2013/14
Grade R learners in public ordinary schools	13 473	12176	14 571	13 551	18 302
Grade R practitioners in public ordinary schools	418	467	557	558	716
Grade R practitioners learner ratio	32,2	26,1	26,5	24,3	25,5

*Source: NCDoE Annual Reports*

Despite the increase in access of learners to Grade R there are still challenges, particularly, with regard to the minimum teaching requirements of Grade R practitioners. Less than half, that is 45%, of the 716 Grade R practitioners in both public ordinary schools and Grade R community based centres have the minimum teaching requirements or above. The table 2 below lists the academic qualifications of Grade R practitioners according to Districts.

**Table 6: Academic qualifications of Grade R practitioners in public ordinary schools and according to Districts as at January 2014**

District	Grade 12	ECD NQF Level 4	ECD NQF Level 5	REVQ 13	REVQ 14
Frances Baard	21	69	56	20	0
John Taolo Gaetsewe	6	51	55	8	3
Siyanda	16	54	33	10	0

Pixley ka Seme	4	59	51	4	0
Namakwa	13	25	20	15	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>258</b>	<b>215</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>3</b>

Source: NCDoE Annual Reports

**Table 7: Academic qualifications of Grade R practitioners in community based centres according to Districts as at January 2014**

District	Gr 8	Gr 11	Gr 12	ECD NQF Level 4	ECD NQF Level 5	REVQ 13	REVQ 14
Frances Baard			1	16	33	2	0
John Taolo Gaetsewe			1	16	15	14	0
Siyanda			0	6	10	1	0
Pixley ka Seme			0	1	1	0	0
Namakwa			1	3	1	1	0
<b>Total</b>			<b>3</b>	<b>42</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>0</b>

Source: NCDoE Annual Reports

The John Taolo Gaetsewe district has the highest percentage of Grade R practitioners with the minimum teaching qualification or higher, that is, 95 or 59,8% of 159 practitioners in public schools and community based centres. On the other hand, the Siyanda district has the lowest percentage of Grade R practitioners with the minimum teaching qualifications or higher with 54 practitioners out of 208 or 41,5%. Furthermore, thirty qualified Grade R teachers in the John Taolo Gaetsewe are employed through the Employment of Educators Act.

### **5.5 The Annual National Assessment**

The 2011 calendar year saw the introduction and the full scale implementation for the first time of the diagnostic Annual National Assessment (ANA) in literacy (language) and numeracy (mathematics). This represented a major shift in policy in the basic education sector in the country and this was prompted by the poor performance of the learners across the country in both regional and international benchmarking assessments, particularly in literacy and mathematics. The Annual National Assessment targets learners in Grades three, six and nine in mathematics and languages. The table below reflects the overall performance of Grade 3 and Grade 6 in the province in 2011, 2012 and 2013.

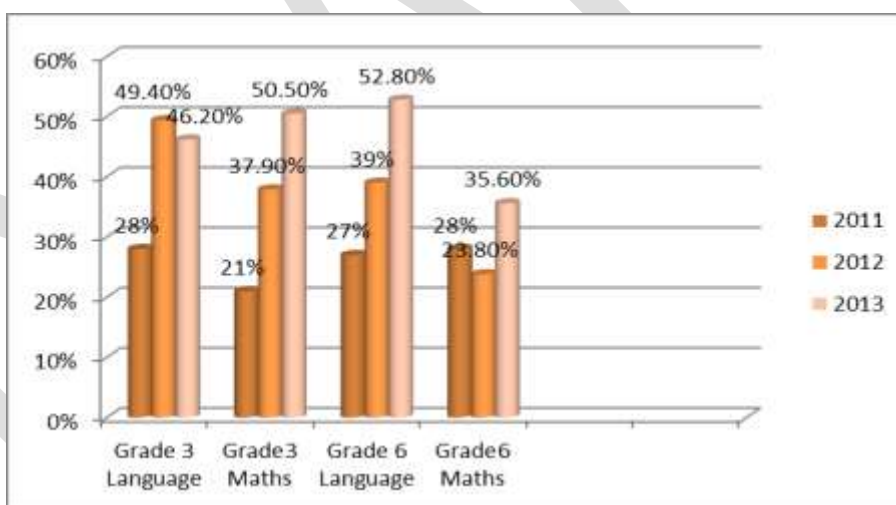
**Table 8: Annual National Assessment for mathematic and Language for Grade 3 and Grade 6 from 2011 to 2013**

Grade and Subject	2011	2012	2013
Grade 3 Language	28 %	49,4 %	46,2%
Grade 3 Mathematics	21%	37,9%	50,5%
Grade 6 Language	27%	39%	52,8%
Mathematics Grade 6	28%	23,8%	35,,6%

*Source: NCDoe Annual Reports*

In general, there has been a significant improvement in learner performance in both Grade 3 and Grade 6 in language and mathematics since the beginning of this programme with the table above bearing testimony to this fact. Whilst there has been large scale improvement in Grade 3 mathematics (increased by 29,5% from 2011 to 2013), Grade 6 language (up by 25,8% from 2011 to 2013) and Grade 6 mathematics (an increase of 11,8% from 2012 to 2013) , the Grade 3 language has decreased by 3,2% from 49,4% in 2012 to 46,2% in 2013. However, the 2013 overall performance in Grade 3 language is still significantly better than 2011 where learner performance in the province averaged 28%.

**Figure 2: Learner Performance in Language and Maths in Grades 3 and 6 2011-2013**



*Source: NCDoe Annual Reports*

The Annual National Assessment tests for Grade 9 were conducted for the first time in 2012 in Home Language (English and Afrikaans), First Additional Language and Mathematics. A total of 23 204 learners participated in these tests.

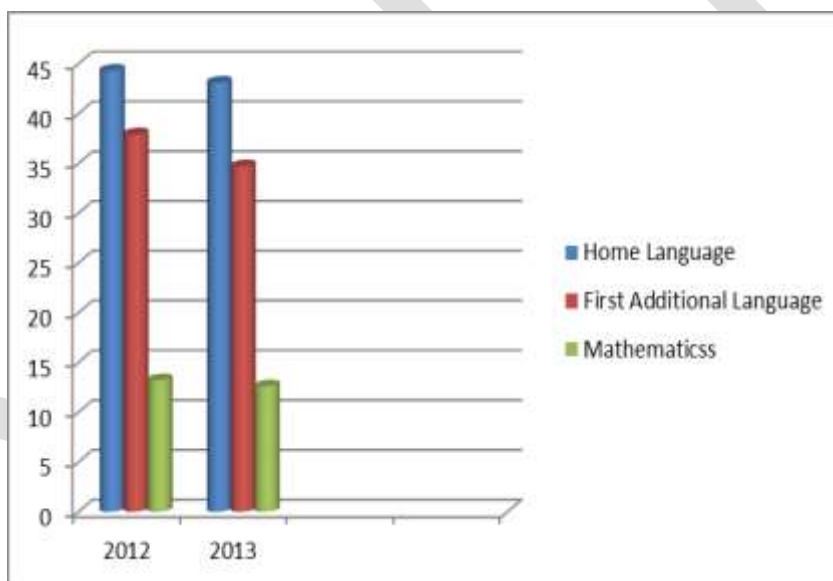
**Table 9: The Annual National Assessment results of Grade 9: 2012 and 2013**

Subject	2012	2013
Home language (Both English and Afrikaans)	44,3	43,1
First Additional Language (FAL)	37,9	34,7
Mathematics	13,2	12,6

*Source: NCDoe Annual Reports*

The provincial averages for all three subjects tested in grade 9 were lower than those achieved in 2012. The Northern Cape only exceeded the national average in the First Additional Language.

**Figure 3: Learner Performance in ANA in Grades 9 for 2012 and 2013**



*Source: NCDoe Annual Reports*

## 5.6 The National Curriculum Statement

The Curriculum and Assessment Statement (CAPS) introduced a repackaged curriculum with the aim of facilitating better teaching and learning with improved learning outcomes. CAPS led to a decrease in the administrative burden on teachers, clearer specifications of subject content and strong recommendations regarding teaching and assessment. A phased approach was used in the implementation of CAPS and it began in 2011 in the foundation phase i.e. Grades 1-3 and Grade 10. A total of 2136 teachers and 502 principals underwent orientation programmes in CAPS. Assessment of learners in the foundation phase and implementation began in 2012.

The following year (2012) saw the implementation of the programme for the intermediate phase (Grades 4-6) whereby a total of 4 301 teachers and principals underwent orientation in CAPS and implementation in Grades 4-6 began in 2013. Grade 11 teachers also underwent orientation on CAPS in 2012 for implementation in 2013.

In 2013, 3 499 senior phase teachers and principals and Grade 12 teachers had undergone orientation in CAPS and implementation in Grades 6 to 9 and Grade 12 began in 2014.

The implementation of the Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement has proceeded over the past 3 years without any major challenges and on-going monitoring and support is being provided to teachers to ensure mastery of the content and assessment methodologies. It is still too early to measure the success of this programme.

### **5.7 National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP)**

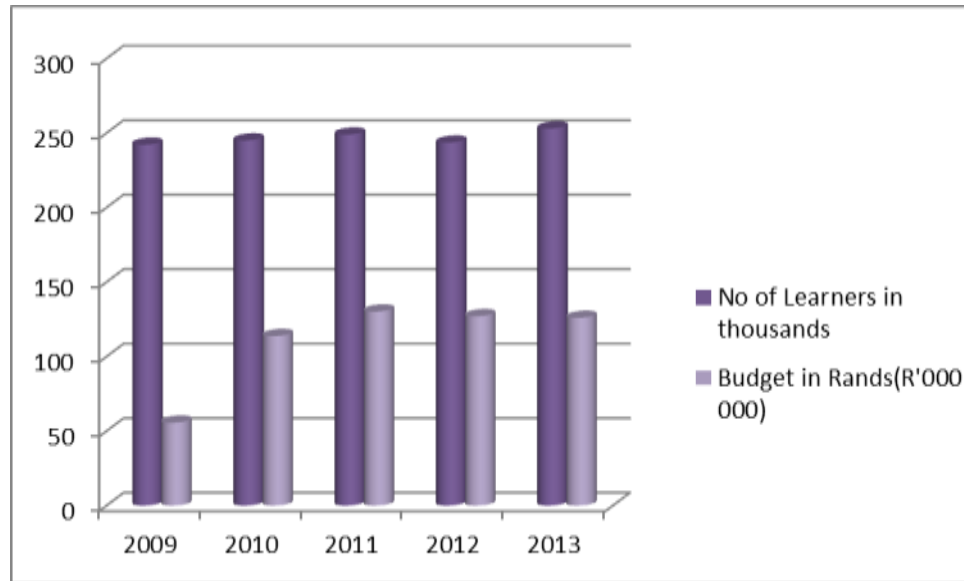
The School Nutrition Programme was one of the first programmes introduced by the democratic government in 1994 to combat poverty and, particularly, hunger in primary schools. This programme continues to form an integral part of government's strategy to address the plight of our neediest learners and the Northern Cape was the first province to extend the school nutrition programme to secondary schools in the province with funding from the provincial equitable share allocated to NCDoe. The table below gives details of the National Schools Nutrition Programme (NSNP) for the period 2009 to 2013.

**Table 10: No of schools, learners and food handlers and budget for the NSNP for the period 2009 to 2013.**

	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013
Schools	550	561	550	515	508
Learners	242 147	245 012	248 960	243 550	252 993
Annual Expenditure	R55,69m	R113,77m	R130,19m	R127,08m	R125,99m
Food Handlers	1 483 (R600 stipend p/m)	1 524 (R640 stipend p/m)	1 535 (R640 stipend p/m)	1 409 (R720 stipend p/m)	1 526 R840 stipend p/m

*Source: NCDoe Annual reports*

**Figure 4: No. of learners versus budget for NSNP – 2009-2013**



Source: DoE Annual reports

In the five year period covered above an average of almost 90% of all schools in the province as well as an average of over 95% of the total learners has been covered by this programme. However, despite the budget more than doubling from R55,69m in 2009 to R113,768m in 2010 the number of schools serviced by the programme increased from 550 to 561 and the number of learners increased by only 2 865 from 242 147 in 2009 to 245 012 in 2010. But a R16,4m increase in budget from 2010 to 2011 resulted in the number of beneficiary schools decreasing by eleven and the number of learners increasing by 3 948. The reduction in the number of food handlers in 2012 as compared to 2011 was due to the decrease in the vote line budget for quintiles 4 and 5.

### 5.8 No-Fee Schools

The implementation of the No-Fee School policy is aimed at expanding access to education to the vulnerable groups in society and to provide free and compulsory education for large sections of our communities who would otherwise not be able to afford it. The province has made tremendous progress in the execution of this policy with the no-fee schools having increased from 381 in 2009 to 453 in 2010. From 2011 to 2014 there has been a progressive decrease in the number of no-fee schools. More than 75% of public schools in the province have been declared no-fee schools. The table below depicts the number of learners and schools and the annual budget for no-fee schools from 2009 to 2014



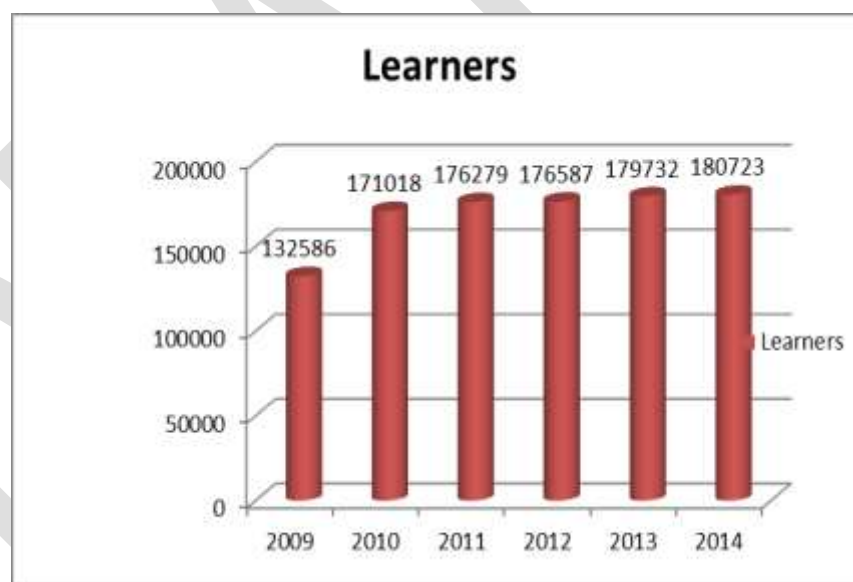
**Table 11: The number of learners, schools and the budget for No-fee schools (2009-2013)**

	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014
Learners	132 586	171 018	176 279	176 587	179 732	180 723
Budget R'000	102 685	138 325	150 682	160 103	171 458	184 275
Schools	381	453	451	421	414	412

*Source: DoE Annual reports*

Despite the number of schools benefiting from this programme decreasing in 2011, 2012, 2013 and 2014 the number of learners have consistently increased by 48 137 learners over this time interval i.e 2009 to 2014. The decrease in the number of schools in 2012 and 2013 that was serviced by this programme can be attributed to the decrease in the total number of public ordinary schools in the province from 596 in 2012 to 552 in 2013.

**Figure 5: The number of learner in No-fee schools for 2009 to 2013**



*Source: NCDoE Annual Reports*

### 5.9 Matriculation (Grade 12) Pass Rate

The number of candidates who wrote the matriculation examination has decreased over the four year period from 10 377 in 2009 to 8 925 in 2012 which is contrary to the trends since 1996 that showed a steady increase in the number of candidates. The number of candidates who wrote the 2013 examination is only slightly higher than the 2009 figure.

An analysis of the matriculation pass rates since the advent of democracy (1994) indicates that it peaked in 2003 at 90,3% but has since declined steadily to reach its lowest level in 2009 at 61,3%. The Table 12 below indicates the performance of Grade 12 learners over the last five years.

**Table 12: Performance of Grade 12 learners from 2009 – 2013**

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2013</b>
No Wrote	10 377	10 182	10 116	8 925	10 403
No Passed	6 356	7 366	6 957	6 661	7 749
% Pass	61,25	72,34	68,77	74,63	74,49

**Source: NCDoe**

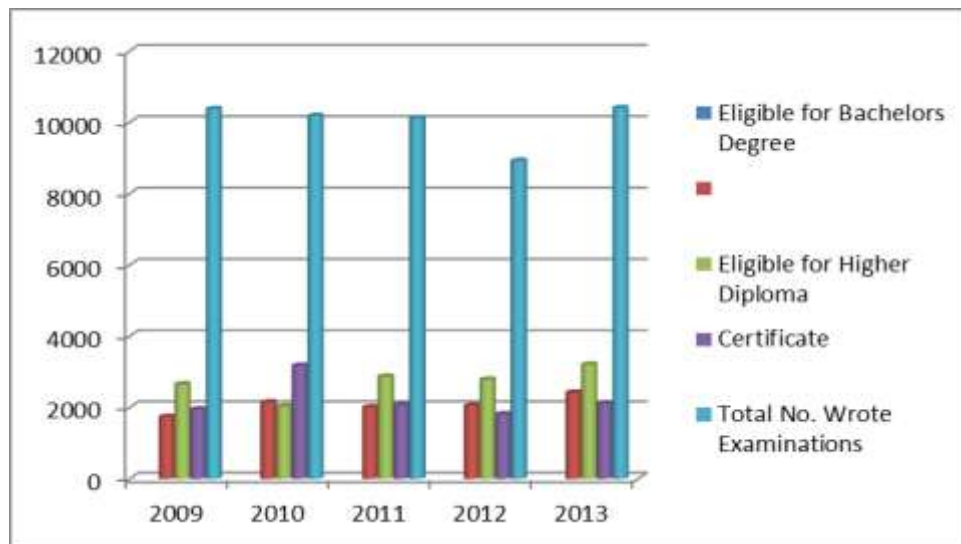
The quality of the matriculation results has in general improved from 2009 to 2014 with 16,78% of learners obtaining passes that made them eligible for a Bachelors Degree in 2009 compared to 23,3% in 2013. The percentage of learners that obtained passes making them eligible for a Higher Diploma has also increased from 25,6% in 2009 to 30,8% in 2013.

**Table 13: Quality of Grade 12 Passes over the period 2009-2013**

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2013</b>
Eligible for Bachelors Degree	1 741	2 152	2 012	2 055	2 424
Eligible for Higher Diploma	2 660	2 035	2 871	2 787	3 207
Certificate	1 953	3 179	2 074	1 819	2 118
Total No. Wrote Examinations	10 377	10 182	10116	8 925	10 403

**Source: DoE**

**Figure 6: Quality of Grade 12 passes from 2009 to 2013**

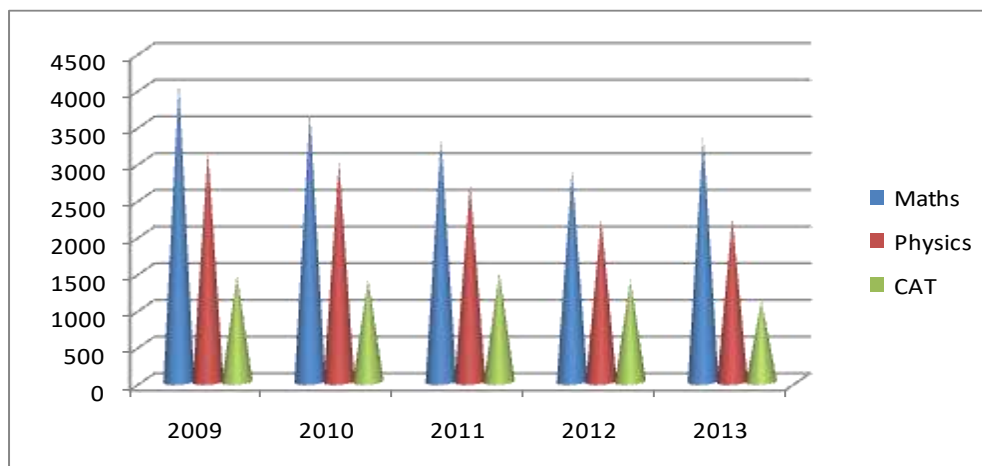


Source:NCDoE

### 5.10 Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST)

To address the lack of scarce skills required for meaningful participation in the economy government has introduced the Dinaledi schools project. The aim of this programme is to increase the participation rates of learners from previously disadvantaged communities in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology. There is a need not only to increase the quantity but also the quality of the learners, especially the girl learners. Figure 7 indicates the enrolment of Grade 12 learners in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology.

**Figure 7: Enrolment Trends of Grade 12 Learners in Maths, Science and Technology – 2009-2013**



Source: NCDoe 2013

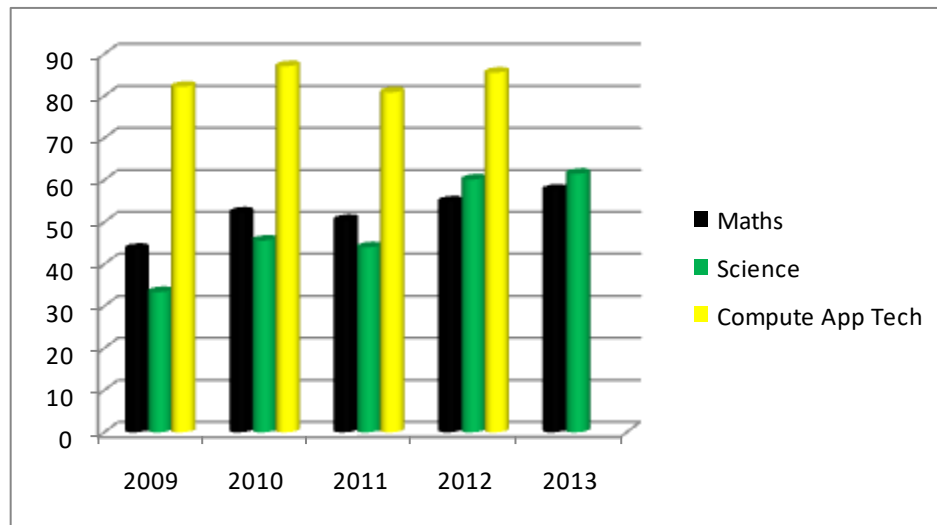
From the figure above it is clear that the number of learners in the all of the MST subjects has been decreasing over the last five year period and the lowest enrolment figures in all three subjects are to be found in 2012. The table and figure below reflects the overall pass rate of in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology for the period 2009-2013.

**Table14: Pass Rate in Maths, Science and Computer Application Technology from 2009 to 2013**

	Mathematic	Physical Science	Technology
2009	43,63	33,35	82,21
2010	52,27	45,50	87,11
2011	50,49	43,98	80,88
2012	54,89	60,13	85,56
2013	57,70	61,50	84.50

Source: NCDoe 2013

**Figure 8: Pass Rate in Maths, Science and Computer Application Technology from 2009 to 2013**

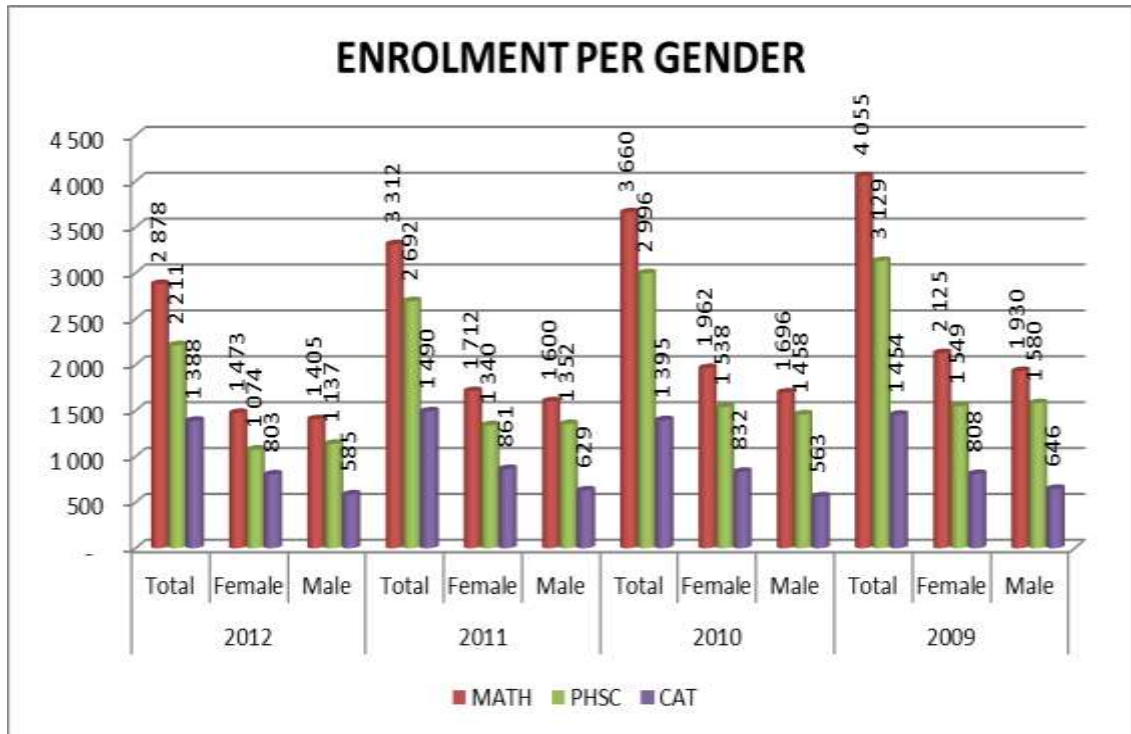


Source: NCDoE 2013

The pass rates in all of the three subjects have improved over the last five year period with Physical Science showing the most significant improvement from 33,35% in 2009 to 61,5% in 2013, Mathematics increasing from 43,63% to 57.7% over the same period and Computer Application Technology from 82,21 % to 85,56% with an all time high of 87,11% in 2010. These improvements can be attributed to the fact that fewer learners had enrolled for these subjects over this period resulting in a much better quality of learners.

Figure 9 below clearly illustrates that the number of female learners taking Mathematics and Computer Application Technology exceeds that of their male counterparts in each of the years from 2009 to 2013. The opposite, however, is the case for Physical Science where the number of male learners exceeds that of the female learners over the same time-line.

**Figure 9: Enrolment in MST according to Gender – 2009 to 2012**



Source: NCDoe 2013

### 5.11 Learner Pregnancy

Learner pregnancy continues to threaten government's programme of improving the attendance of children of school-going age. To address this challenge the collaborative effort of all stakeholders is required. The provincial Department of Education is working in close collaboration with the departments of Health and Social Development as well as community based organisations in an attempt to combat learner pregnancy. The table below reflects the extent of learner pregnancy in the province.

**Table 15: Learner pregnancy from the Grade 4 to Grade 12 from 2004 to 2011**

Learner Pregnancy								
	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Gr 4	0	0	1	1	2	0	0	1
Gr 5	14	5	0	6	3	0	0	0
Gr 6	5	5	6	14	15	3	0	10
Gr 7	22	18	22	38	35	8	27	22
Gr 8	60	45	71	90	71	16	93	80
Gr 9	55	62	130	193	138	42	125	112
Gr 10	81	87	221	282	186	55	227	245
Gr 11	92	64	219	306	168	60	242	228
Gr 12	67	66	168	168	183	48	211	171
<b>Total</b>	<b>396</b>	<b>352</b>	<b>838</b>	<b>1 098</b>	<b>801</b>	<b>232</b>	<b>925</b>	<b>869</b>

Source: NCDoe

In the period covered (that is, 2004 to 2012) in the above table 2007 recorded the highest number of pregnancies with 1 098 pregnancies and the highest incidence of occurrence was in Grade 11 with 306 pregnancies followed by Grade 10 with 282 and Grade 9 with 193. It is, however, not uncommon for pregnancies to occur from as low as Grade 4. The table and figure below gives the breakdown of learner pregnancies per district for the years 2010, 2011 and 2012.

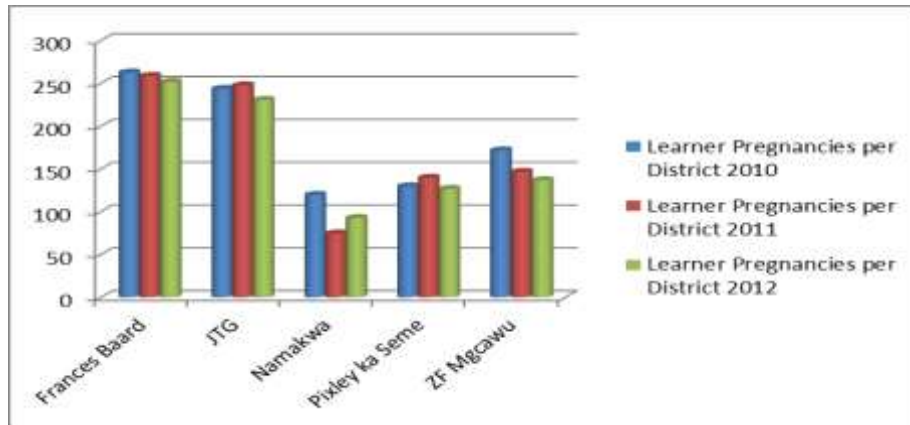
**Table 16: Learner Pregnancies per District for 2010, 2011 and 2012**

District	2010	2011	2012	% of Total
Frances Baard	263	259	252	29,2
John Taolo Gaetsewe	244	248	231	27,4
Namakwa	120	75	93	10,9
Pixley ka Seme	130	140	127	15,1
ZF Mgcawu	172	147	137	17,3
<b>Provincial Total</b>	<b>929</b>	<b>869</b>	<b>840</b>	<b>100</b>

Source: NCDoe

Although there has been a minimalistic decrease in pregnancy numbers in the Frances Baard District the average percentage of pregnancies in this district over the three year period 2010 -2012 is the highest of all districts at 29,25 followed by the John Taolo Gaetsewe on 27,4%. The Namakwa District has the lowest average rate of pregnancies at 10,9% over 2010 to 2012 period.

**Figure 10: Learner Pregnancies per District for 2010, 2011 and 2012**



Source: NCDoe

### 5.12 Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET)

Adult Basic Education and Training is the cornerstone of government's attempts to increase literacy and to also help to attain the NCPGDS target of reducing illiteracy by 50%. The table below illustrates the progress made by learners in the province who have completed ABET level 4 in the province.

**Table 17: Number of learners completed full ABET level 4 from 2009 to 2013**

Year	Passed full GETC AET LEVEL 4
2009	68
2010	72
2011	167
2012	341
2013	

Source: NCDoe

There has been a significant increase in the number of learners that have successfully completed the full GETC ABET level 4 examinations with an increase of more than five-fold from 2009 when the number that passed was 68 to 2012 when 341 passes were recorded.

### 5.13 Learner Transport

Despite the increase in the number of learners being transported to school from 2 009 to 2013, the provisioning of learner transport to deserving students continues to pose a serious challenge. The reasons for this are two-fold, namely, a lack of resources in general and the poor road infrastructure, particularly in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District.



**Table 18: The number of learners provided with transport from 2009 to 2013.**

Year	Total number of Learners transported
2009	18 192
2010	19 354
2011	20 895
2012	22 292
2013	23 424

*Source: NCDoe*

#### **5.14 School Infrastructure**

A prerequisite for the achievement of Outcome 1: Improved quality of basic education while at the same time increasing access to education is the provision of adequate school infrastructure. Whilst new schools are being constructed where the need exists, the main emphasis is on the construction of additional classrooms, libraries, administration blocks and ablution facilities. In expanding access to Grade R in public ordinary schools the key challenge is the providing adequate classrooms for this purpose. Once again it is the schools in the rural areas that appear to be the worse off and are without administration blocks and kitchen facilities for the school nutrition programme.

**Table 19: Provisioning of School Infrastructure from 2009 -2012**

	2009	2010	2011	2012
New Schools	2	-	4	3
ECD Classrooms	-	8	11	13
Administration Blocks	1	4	2	10
Additional Classrooms	46	-	14	10
Mobile Classrooms	60	20	38	18
Ablution Blocks	4	7	6	12
Fencing	7	12	5	9
Water	27	13	9	12
Sanitation	15	-	-	-
Science Laboratories	1	1	5	7
Media Centres	-	-	7	6
Electrical Upgrades	13	9	14	10
Repairs and Renovations	53	13	31	24
Offices	3	2	2	1

*Source: NCDoe*

#### **5.15 Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign**

The Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign has made considerable progress from 2008 when the number of learners participating in the programme increased from 2990 in 2008 with an all time high of 9 122 learners involved in 2011. However, there

was a significant decrease in 2012 by 1 841 learners. At the same time the number of voluntary educators has increased from 381 in 2008 to 475 in 2011. Although the number of learners decreased in 2012 it still remains significantly higher than the 2008 figures with the number of voluntary educators increasing to 521 in 2012. The table below reflects the number of learners and voluntary educators that took part in the programme during the period 2009 to 2012.

**Table 20: The number of learners and Voluntary educators in Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign 2008-2014**

	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Learners	2 990	7 654	7 785	9 122	7 281
Voluntary Educators	381	497	166	475	521

*Source: Department of Basic Education 2012.*

### 5.16 Provision of Library Services

Library Services in the Department of Sports, Arts and Culture supports Education provincially at a transversal level by providing access to reading material thereby providing reading opportunities to learners. Since 2009 the number of modular libraries, mobile book boxes and container libraries has grown from 161 to 264 in 2012. The majority of these libraries are located in areas that have been identified as War on Poverty areas thus taking reading material to the rural areas and making it accessible to the poor.

### 5.17 Establishment of the Sol Plaatje University

In his 2011 State of the Nation address, the President of the Republic of South Africa announced the establishment of two new universities, one in the Northern Cape and the other in Mpumalanga. A ministerial task team was set up to oversee the establishment of the university in the province. Significant progress has been made to date and these include:

- That the university will be called the Sol Plaatje University and the administrative seat will be in the city of Kimberley.
- The university has begun with classes offering limited courses out of temporary facilities.
- Land for the construction of the university has been identified
- The University Council has been established and members sworn in by the Minister of Higher Education.

## **6. HEALTH**

### **6.1 Background**

From the onset of the democratic dispensation significant progress has been made in the health sector, particularly with regards to promoting equitable health services to all citizens. Various programmes have been implemented that were aimed at, amongst other things, the expansion of free primary health care to all, the development and improvement of health infrastructure, including the building and upgrading of clinics and hospitals and several hospitals have been revitalised or refurbished as well as the development of human resources and the provision of equipment. In addition, there has been an increase in access to medication, particularly Anti-Retroviral treatment to those afflicted with HIV and AIDS and Tuberculosis.

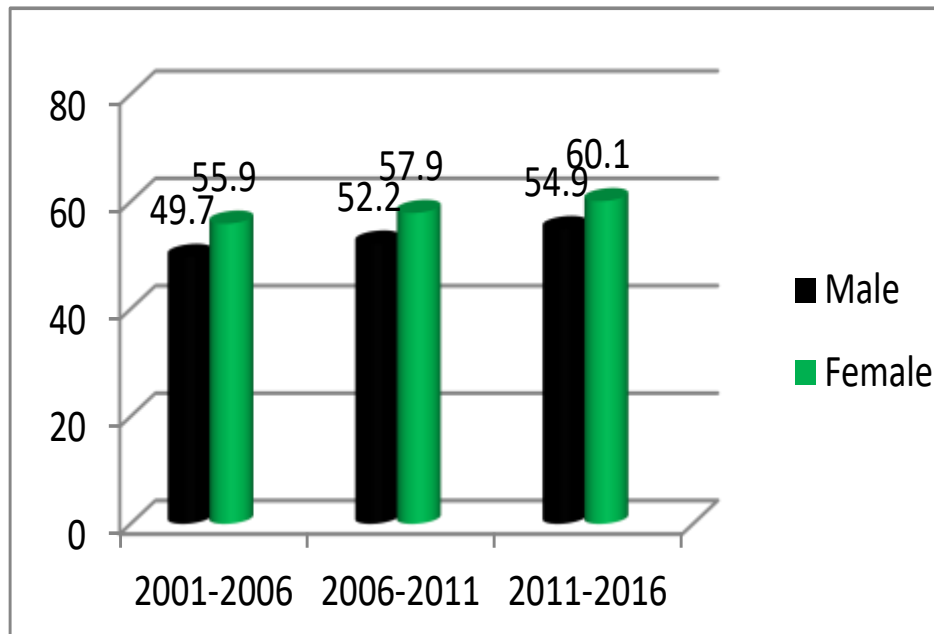
The priorities of the health sector are well articulated in the 10 Point Plan developed and introduced in 2009 and is aimed at the creation of a well functioning health care system capable of producing improved health outcomes. The focus is on a core set of strategically selected areas and priorities and these have been formalised in the Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement (NSDA) signed off between the Minister and President as well as the Premier and Member of the Executive Council for Health in the Province. The NSDA not only outlines the outputs for the health sector but also seeks to create a synergy with the Millennium Development Goals (MDG). Four outputs have been identified in the NSDA and these are:

1. Increasing life expectancy.
2. Decreasing maternal and child mortality.
3. Combating HIV and AIDS and decreasing the burden of disease from Tuberculosis.
4. Strengthening health system effectiveness.

### **6.2 Life Expectancy**

According to Statistics South Africa's mid-year population estimates for 2013, the average life expectancy in the Northern Cape has increased for both males and females from 49,7 years and 55,9 years respectively for the period 2001-2006 to 52,2 years and 57,9 years for the period 2006-2011. The life expectancy is estimated to increase even further to 54,9 years for males and 60,1 years for females for the period 2011-2016. The figure below illustrates the life expectancy for males and females for the three periods mentioned.

**Figure 11: Life expectancy for Males and Females in N Cape**



Source: StatsSA – Mid-year population estimates 2013

The figure above clearly illustrates that the life expectancy of females is higher than that of males for all three periods under consideration.

### 6.2.1 Mortality and Leading Causes of Death

The Statistics South Africa reports on the causes of death indicate that the total number of deaths recorded in the Northern Cape in 2010 from all causes was fifteen thousand one hundred and eighty three (15 183). The total number of deaths from all causes decreased in 2011 to fourteen thousand seven hundred and eighteen (14 718) and decreased even further in 2012 to thirteen thousand nine hundred and seventy one (13 971). Approximately 8.9% of these deaths (1 344) in 2010, 8,4 % (1 235) in 2011 and 10,9% in 2012 were non-natural deaths while the remaining (that is, over 90% of) deaths in both 2010 and 2011 were due to natural causes. The main causes of non-natural deaths were external causes that were due to accidental injury, transport accidents, assault and complications of medical and surgical care. The table and figure below give a breakdown of broad causes of all deaths in the province for 2010, 2011 and 2012 calendar years.

**Table 21: Causes of death for 2010 and 2011**

	2010		2011		2012	
	No.	%	No.	%	No	%
Total of 10 leading natural causes	6 534	43,0	6 097	41,4	6 034	43,2
All other natural causes	7 305	48,1	7 386	50,2	6 406	45,9
Non-natural causes	1 344	8,9	1 235	8,4	1 531	10,9
Total deaths	15 183	100	14 718	100	13 971	100

*Source: StatsSA – Mortality and the causes of death in South Africa*

The total number of deaths from the ten leading underlying natural causes of death decreased by 1,6% from 43% in 2010 to 41,4% in 2011 but increased to 43,2% in 2012. On the other hand the total deaths from all other natural causes increased by over 2% from 48,1% in 2010 to 50,2% in 2011 but decreased to its lowest in this three year period to 45,9% in 2012. . There was also a minimal decrease in the number of deaths due to non-natural causes from 2010 to 2011 but increased to 10,9% of the total deaths in 2012.

The ten leading natural causes of death in 2012 were the same as in 2010 and 2011 (with the exception of ischaemic heart diseases) but differed only in ranking and the in the contribution of each cause to the overall number of deaths per year. Tuberculosis remains the leading cause of natural deaths in the province over this period. Despite maintaining the same rank at the top of the list, there has been a decline in the number of deaths due to tuberculosis. In 2010 1 396 or 9,2% of all deaths recorded in the province were due to tuberculosis and it decreased slightly to 1 246 or 8,5% in 2011 and declined even further to 1 233 or 9% in 2012. HIV was the second leading cause in 2010 before dropping to fourth place in 2011 and back to second place in 2012. Cerebrovascular disease moved from 630 (4,1%) in 2010 to 689 (4,7%) in 2011 and 657 (4,7%) in 2012. Influenza and pneumonia increased from 747 (4,9%) in 2010 to 761 (5,2%) in 2011 but decreased to 554 (4%) in 2012. Table 22 below lists the ten leading natural causes of death in the Northern Cape.

**Table 22: Ten leading underlying natural causes of death - 2010 to 2012**

	2010		2011		2012	
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%
Tuberculosis	1 306	9,2	1 246	8,5	1 233	9,0
HIV	761	5,0	660	4,5	945	6,9
Influenza & Pneumonia	747	4,9	761	5,2	554	4,0
Cerebrovascular diseases	630	4,1	689	4,7	667	4,9
Other forms of heart disease	592	3,9	535	3,6	448	3,3
Intestinal infectious diseases	586	3,9	448	3,0		
Ischaemic heart diseases					366	2,7
Chronic lower respiratory diseases	514	3,4	550	3,7	533	3,9
Diabetes Mellitus	483	3,0	381	2,6	476	3,5
Hypertensive diseases	433	2,9	432	2,9	510	3,7
Disorders involving the immune mechanism	412	2,7	395	2,7	310	2,3
Total	6 464		6 097		6042	

*Source: StatsSA – Mortality and the causes of death in South Africa*

It is also important to note that a high number (41.7%) of all deaths was recorded in the economically active population, which is the age group between fifteen (15) to forty nine (49) years. In terms of districts, Frances Baard had more deaths (38.8%) than all other districts in the Province. This can be attributed to the scourge of HIV, hence we see TB, amongst others, being one of the main killers. The table below reflects the number of deaths according to age and District.

**Table 23: Report of deaths by age and according to Districts 2010 and 2012 – Stats SA**

	Age in Years															
	<1		1 -4		5 - 14		15 -49		50- 64		65+		Unspec- ified		Total	
	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012
<b>Frances Baard</b>	281	191	110	74	50	42	1927	1429	1008	928	1110	1198	1	6	4487	3868
<b>J Taolo Gaetsewe</b>	281	258	82	83	25	31	1221	1019	499	510	635	653	1	5	2744	2559
<b>Namakwa</b>	41	42	10	13	9	6	330	308	240	281	469	445	0	4	1099	1099
<b>Pixley Ka Seme</b>	226	174	55	41	23	29	1058	1263	576	815	703	982	0	11	2641	3315
<b>Siyanda</b>	251	161	92	50	59	42	1686	1134	847	676	1168	779	8	7	4111	2849
<b>Total</b>	<b>1 080</b>	<b>826</b>	<b>349</b>	<b>261</b>	<b>196</b>	<b>150</b>	<b>6 222</b>	<b>5 153</b>	<b>3 120</b>	<b>3 210</b>	<b>4 085</b>	<b>4 057</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>33</b>	<b>15 082</b>	<b>13 690</b>

*Source: StatsSA Mortality and the causes of death in South Africa*

The mortality and causes of death report further shows that, more men are dying than women, in all five districts of the Province. Frances Baard still accounts for the most deaths for both men and women. The following table indicates the number of deaths according to gender for 2011 and 2012

**Table 24: Report of deaths by gender - 2011 and 2012**

District	Sex						Total	
	Male		Female		Unspecified			
	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012	2011	2012
<b>Frances Baard</b>	2357	1993	2120	1853	10	22	4487	3868
<b>John Taolo Gaetsewe</b>	1404	1398	1340	1156	0	5	2744	2559
<b>Namakwa</b>	626	608	472	491	1	-	1098	1099
<b>Pixley Ka Seme</b>	1341	1702	1296	1600	4	13	2641	3315
<b>Siyanda</b>	2131	1562	1976	1278	4	9	4111	2849
<b>Unspecified</b>	-	167	-	113	-	1		281
<b>Total</b>	7853		7204		19		15076	13971

*Source: StatsSA Mortality and the causes of death in South Africa*

## 6.2.2 Management of Communicable Diseases

In 2010 the Communicable Disease Control Unit identified and investigated a total of 35 outbreaks of diseases such as Rift Valley Fever, Legionellosis, Cryptosporosis, hand, foot and mouth disease as well as human rabies that occurred for the first time in more than 10 years.

The Northern Cape Province is not endemic for local transmission of malaria with a total of 66 malaria cases reported in 2011 compared to 19 in 2010 and 27 cases in 2012. The malaria case fatality rate for 2011 was 4.8% as compared to 2.1% in 2010 with no fatalities recorded in 2012. But it needs to be noted that all fatalities were imported cases with the victims coming from countries such as Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Sierra Leone.

The emergence and spread of the novel H1N1 Influenza A (2009) virus in the country had the government responding to the pandemic. The H1N1 Influenza A (2009) virus continued to be the dominant strain causing influenza in the 2010 and 2011 seasons. During the 2009 Influenza season, a cumulative total of ninety three (93) Influenza A (H1N1) cases and three (3) deaths were confirmed in the Northern Cape Province. The sector's preparedness through effective sentinel sites and port health services effectively contained the outbreak.

The H1N1 vaccination campaigns have yielded resounding success over the past three years. To mitigate the effect of the pandemic since 2010, the department



conducted vaccinations in line with the World Health Organisation guidelines and coordination.

**Table 25: Total Number of vaccinated people in 2011**

<b>Districts</b>	<b>Children 6mths- 59 months</b>	<b>Pregnant women</b>
Frances Baard	5 621	2 683
John Taolo Gaetsewe	1 657	1 040
Namakwa	2 656	500
Pixley Ka Seme	1 084	502
Siyanda	4 667	1 030
<b>Total</b>	<b>15 685</b>	<b>5 755</b>

*Source: DoH*

### **6.2.3 Health Promotion**

The Department has focused on the reduction and management of non-communicable diseases through early detection and screening and promoting healthy lifestyles. This has been prioritised as one of the critical programmes and has been advocated throughout the length and breadth of the Province.

Health promotion is the practice adopted to enable people to take control over, monitor and improve their own health. To this end the department has implemented well over two hundred (200) healthy lifestyle programmes in our communities for the period 2009 to 2014.

Further, to ensure an independent and dignified life to clients who are either bound to wheelchairs or who are hearing impaired, the department has provided assistive devices to the tune of 2 210 wheelchairs and 1 395 hearing aids for the five year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14.

## **6.3 Decreasing Child and Maternal Mortality**

### **6.3.1 Infant Mortality Rate**

Infant mortality rate is defined as the number of deaths of children less than one year per 1 000 live births. The national target in terms of Output 2 of Outcome 2 is to decrease the infant mortality rate to 18 deaths or less per 1000 live births by 2014/2015. The table below indicates the infant mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 26: Infant mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial year	Infant Deaths /1 000 live births
2009/10	7,2
2010/11	6,5
2011/12	8,4
2012/13	9,0
2013/14	8,1

**Source: DoH**

The infant mortality rate was at its lowest in 2010/11 financial year and peaked in 2012/13 with 9 deaths per 1 000 live births. The increase in the rate between 2010/11 to 2012/13 can be attributed to the high incidence of HIV in infants. Nevertheless, it is pleasing to note that the infant mortality rate in the Northern Cape of 8,1 for the 2013/14 financial year is far below the National target 18 deaths or less per 1000 live births by 2014/2015.

### **6.3.2 Child Mortality Rate**

Child mortality rate is defined as the number of children per 1 000 who die before the age of five years. The child mortality rates for the period 2009/10 to 2013/14 are given in the table below.

**Table 27: Child mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial year	Child Deaths /1 000
2009/10	4,1
2010/11	5,3
2011/12	5,5
2012/13	5,5
2013/14	5,8

**Source: DoH**

Despite the fact that the child mortality rate in the province has been increasing consistently in the five year period as reflected in the above table it is still significantly lower than the 2007 rate of 50.4 and the national target of 20 or less deaths per 1 000 by 2014/2015. The challenge of the high incidence of HIV is carried over to the child mortality rate which stood at 5,8/1000 at the end of the 2013/14 financial year. However, a programme to improve the skills of health care practitioners in the Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses is in place to strengthen the community component in the fight against child mortality.

### **6.3.3 Maternal Mortality Rate**

The maternal mortality rate has decreased significantly since 2007 when it was 300 maternal deaths per 100 000 live births to 127 per 100 000 live births in 2013/14.

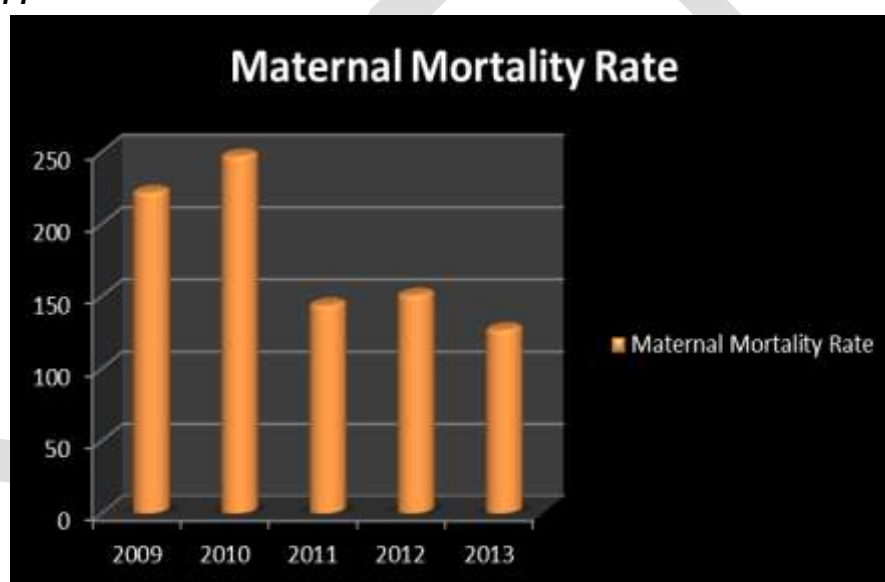
The national target in terms of Output 2 of Outcome 2 is to decrease the maternal mortality rate to 100 deaths or less per 100 000 live births by 2014/2015. The table below indicates the maternal mortality rate for a five year period from 2009/10 to the 2013/14 financial year.

**Table 28: Maternal mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial year	Deaths /100 000
2009/10	222
2010/11	247
2011/12	144
2012/13	151
2013/14	127

**Source: DoH**

**Figure 12: Maternal mortality rate in the Northern Cape from 2009/10 to 2013/14**



**Source: DoH**

The Province has shown a marked improvement in reducing maternal mortality with a substantial reduction from 247/100 000 in 2010/11 to 144/100 000 in 2011/12 and an even further decline to 127/100 000 in 2013/14. Although all facilities provide antenatal care, late bookings by pregnant women continue to be a major challenge. Nevertheless, it is quite within the capability of the province to achieve the national target set for the maternal mortality rate by 2014/15. A study has been commissioned in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District to establish the root causes of child and maternal deaths as the district has the highest mortality rate in the province in this regard.

### **6.3.4 Immunisation Coverage**

Immunization coverage for children under one (1) year has shown improvement from 93.1% in 2010/11 to 97% in 2013/14 although the latter is a decrease of just

under 2% on the previous financial year. The table below indicates the immunisation coverage for children under one year from 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 29: Immunisation coverage from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial year	%
2009/10	-
2010/11	93,1
2011/12	95,0
2012/13	98,8
2013/14	97,0

*Source: DoH*

Babies that tested PCR positive at 6 weeks has decreased from 7,5% in 2010/11 to 5,3% in 2011/12 and with a remarkable drop to 2,7% in 2012/13. There has, however, been a slight increase to 3% in 2013/14. This significant decrease since the 2010/11 financial year is indicative that the Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) coverage for HIV positive antenatal patients has improved beyond expectation and reduced to almost a third.

The introduction of the immunisation drive in 2009 for Pneumococcal vaccine 3rd dose and Rota Virus 2nd dose have yielded the following results:

**Table 30: Results of the introduction of the immunisation drive**

Vaccine	PCV 3rd Dose	RV 2nd Dose
2010	15 716	16 895
2011	19 447	21 330
2012	21 034	22 725
2013	22 0 67	22 267

*Source: DoH*

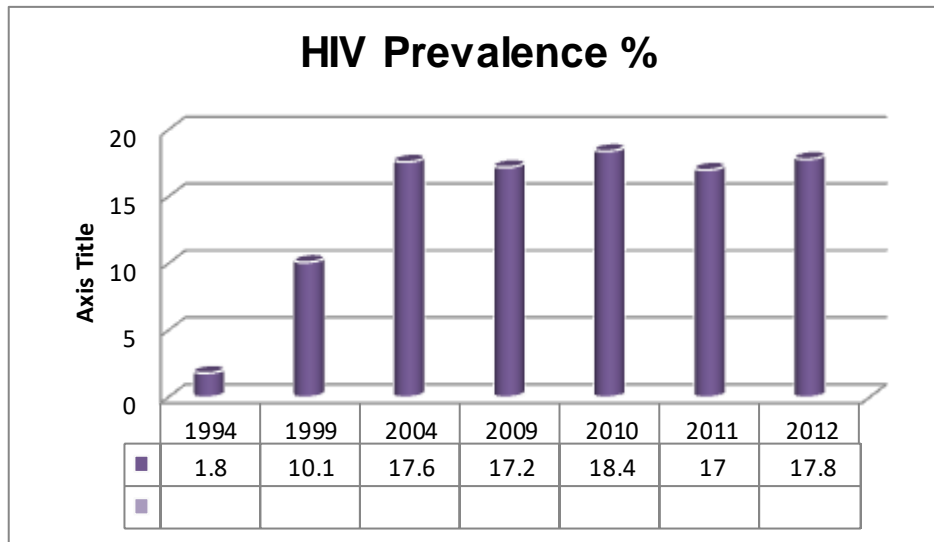
## **6.4 Combat HIV and AIDS and Decrease the Burden of Disease from Tuberculosis**

### **6.4.1 HIV and AIDS**

South Africa has the highest burden of HIV with an estimated 5,7 million people or 11.6% of the population infected. This is borne out by the fact that the HIV prevalence rates among antenatal cases has risen sharply over a few years. In the Northern Cape the HIV antenatal prevalence rate rose from 1,8% in 1994 to 18,5% in 2005. In line with the new National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV and AIDS the current response to HIV and AIDS in the Northern Cape Province focuses mainly on prevention, treatment, care and support, monitoring and evaluation, research, human rights and access to justice with the Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) being the cornerstone of reducing deaths of new borns and children.

The HIV prevalence rate among women attending antenatal care is at 17% in the province according to the National Antenatal HIV Prevalence Survey, 2011 with the Northern Cape presenting the lowest HIV infection rate in South Africa. This has, however, increased slightly to 17,8% in 2012. The figure below depicts the HIV prevalence rate for 1994, 1999, 2004 and annually for the period 2009 to 2012.

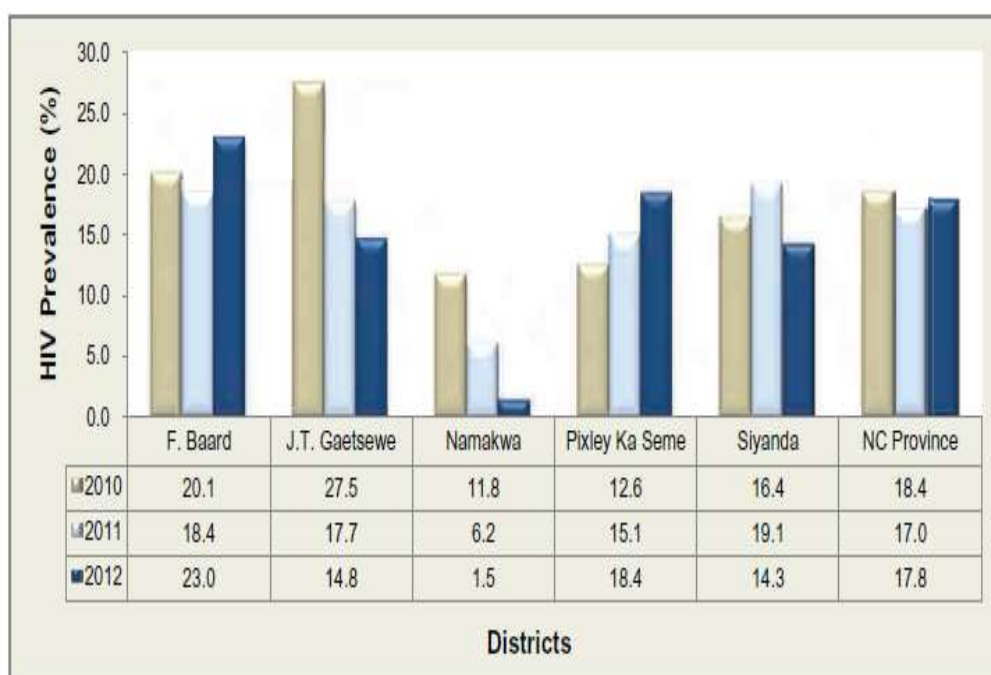
**Figure 13: HIV Prevalence Trend, Northern Cape (1994, 1999, 2004, 2009, 2010-12)**



Source: DoH

According to the report, the HIV prevalence rates differ greatly amongst the five districts: in 2011 ZF Mgcawu recorded the highest infection rate at 19.1%, followed by Frances Baard at 18.4%, John Taolo Gaetsewe at 17.7% and Pixley ka Seme at 15.1% (see the figure below). The Namakwa district recorded the lowest prevalence rate at 6.2%.

**Figure 14: The HIV prevalence rate according to Districts from 2010 to 2012**



Source: DoH

However, high fluctuations of prevalence rates have been recorded in the Namakwa district with 7.3% in 2007, 2.2% in 2008, 0% in 2009 and 11.8% in 2010. This can be ascribed to the small sample size in this sparsely populated district, hence the wide variations observed. It must also be noted that, as people are living longer due to ART, HIV prevalence is expected to stabilize, rather than decline.

Despite the low HIV prevalence within the province, syphilis within the Northern Cape remains relatively high, even though there was a decrease from 5.6% in 2009 to 3.6% in 2010 to 3.8% in 2011. The Pixley-Ka-Seme district maintained the highest syphilis prevalence in the province whilst John Taolo Gaetsewe district recorded the lowest.

Prevention programmes include Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT), Post-Exposure Prophylaxis (PEP), condom distribution and life-skills training. Treatment includes HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT), the Anti-Retroviral Treatment (ART) programme, the treatment of opportunistic infections and effective management of sexually transmitted infections (STI). Care programmes such as the Home and Community Based Care (HCBC) and the Orphans and Vulnerable Children (OVC) are also being implemented. Job opportunities have been created for 1378 (2009/10), 1491 (2010/11), 1534 (2012/13) and 2 476 (2013/14) community health workers.

#### **6.4.2 HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)**

The intensification of HIV counselling and testing as seen a year on year increase in the number of people tested for HIV in public health facilities across the province. In the 2013/14 financial year a total of 158 469 people were tested which was almost

20% more than that of 2012/13 when 133 002 people were tested. The HIV positivity rate in 2013/14 at 6,9% (11 009) was lower compared to 8,6% or 11 947 of 2012/13.

The reduction in the HIV positivity rate as recorded through the DHIS is similar to the trend observed through the National Antenatal HIV survey which notes the stabilisation of HIV prevalence in the Northern Cape. The HIV and AIDS programmes continue to strengthen in its efforts to reduce new infections and targeted interventions are aimed at the most vulnerable groups, for example, casual sex workers, truck drivers, same sex partners, inmates and youth.

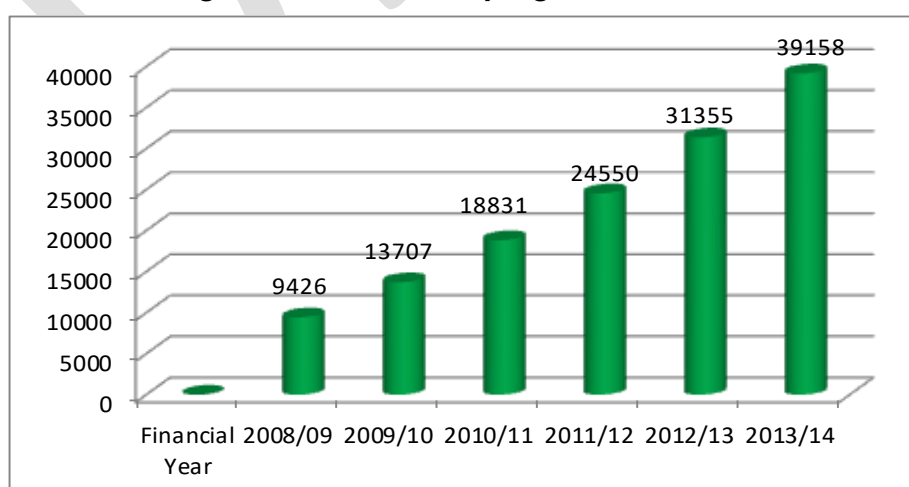
The HIV Counselling and Testing Campaign is a key aspect of the work of the department with outreach services targeting communities across the province. This together with the policy shift for ART enrolment eligibility to a CD 4 count of less than 350 has seen more than a fourfold increase in the number of registered Anti-retroviral treatment (ART) patients from 9 426 at the end of the 2008/09 financial year to 39 158 at the end of 2013/14 financial year. The table and the figure below indicate the consistent increase of ART registered patients for the last six financial years.

**Table 31: Patients registered on the ART programme from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	No. of ART registered patients
2008/09	9 426
2009/10	13 707
2010/11	18 831
2011/12	24 550
2012/13	31 355
2013/14	39 158

Source: DoH

**Figure 15: Patients registered on the ART programme from 2008/09 to 2013/14**



Source: DoH

The province managed to roll-out ART services to all primary health care facilities to increase access to ART treatment, care and support. The national DoH has implemented the Central Chronic Management, Dispensing and Distribution (CCMDD) system to improve treatment adherence and reduce waiting times in clinics. There are currently 494 patients registered on the programme.

The Home and Community Based Care (HCBC) programme has recorded some improvement as is evidenced by the number of home visits by care givers. The number of home visits has been increasing steadily over the years and was well in excess of one million visits in 2011/12. Unfortunately there was a decrease in the number of home visits in 2012/13. The following are the number of visits for each financial year since 2009/10:

- 2009/10: 817 155 visits
- 2010/11: 842 826 visits
- 2011/12: 1 129 396 visits
- 2012/13: 866 134 visits
- 2013/14: 244 152 beneficiaries (decrease due to indicator change)

Each caregiver on average has served 13 patients and made approximately 36 home visits per patient per annum which suggests that the Home Based Care service is operating at full capacity.

#### **6.4.3 Tuberculosis (TB)**

There has been a marked improvement in the fight to combat Tuberculosis and HIV and AIDS. The integrated treatment of both TB and HIV and AIDS has been the critical focus of the work and there has been a noticeable decline in the number of new cases of TB detected. This is indicative of the fact that the work of the Intensified Case Finding (ICF) Campaign is succeeding.

The ICF campaign was launched in Frances Baard District in January 2011 with the aim of tracing contact cases of newly diagnosed TB cases (known as Index Cases) in a bid to reduce the spread of TB in the communities. Thereafter, further campaigns were conducted on a quarterly basis in each district by field teams consisting of a community health care worker, a professional nurse and a lay counsellor. In some areas the campaigns were linked to the Ministerial Health Campaign that targeted certain communities in the province based on testing, HIV and TB data.

As a result of all these efforts the number of patients diagnosed with TB was drastically reduced from 10 252 in 2010/11 to 3 946 in 2013/14. This is despite the fact that there has been a slight increase in 2013 14 on the figures of the previous financial year. The table below indicates the number of patients diagnosed with TB from 2010/11 to 2013/14.



**Table 32: TB cases diagnosed from 2010/11 to 2013/14**

Year	Cases diagnosed
2010/11	10 252
2011/12	10 040
2012/13	3 804
2013/14	3 946

*Source: DoH*

The TB incidence rate (for new TB cases) has therefore decreased slightly from 787 per 100 000 to 747 per 100 000 of the population. However, it should be noted that there is a marked reduction amongst new cases as opposed to the cases of re-treatment. The latter have increased from 1 817 (17.7% of all cases) in 2010 to 1980 (19.7% of all cases) in 2011.

The escalation of Multi-drug Resistance (MDR) TB and the emergence of Extensive Drug Resistant (XDR) TB warrant further strengthening of the programme. Poor living conditions, high unemployment rate and high prevalence of HIV exacerbates the situation.

Since the implementation of the Policy Framework on the Decentralisation of Drug Resistant (DR) TB in 2011, three hundred and twenty (320) MDR TB and fifty four (54) XDR TB cases were diagnosed in 2011. However, these numbers were significantly reduced in 2012/13 to 13 MDR cases and 31 XDR cases and in 2013/14 to 14 MDR cases and 30 XDR cases.

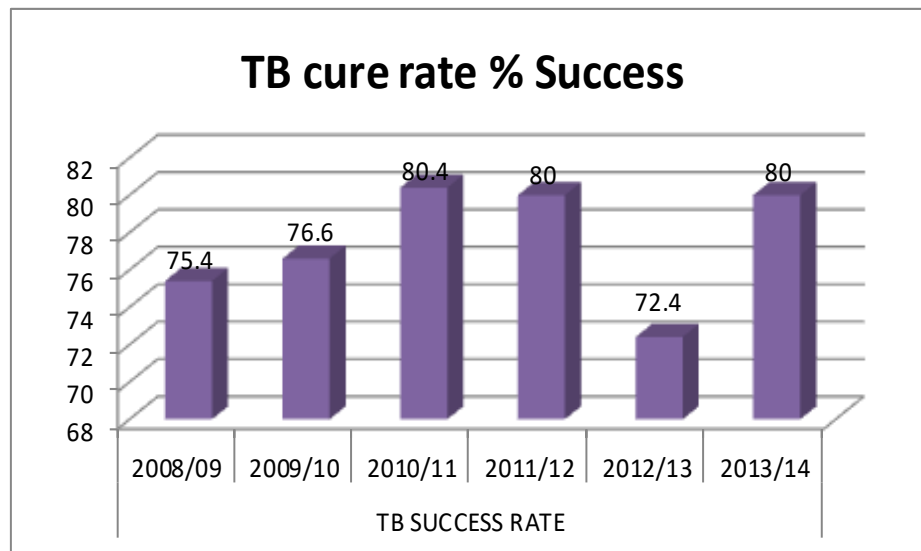
Readiness assessment for decentralisation of MDR TB care was done at Nababep community health centre and at the Postmasburg and Tshwaragano Hospitals. The refurbishment of West End Hospital drug resistant unit was funded by Provincial TB Control Programme and Global fund. Forty (40) beds were added to the thirty (30) existing beds to accommodate the increasing demand for beds for MDR and XDR patients. The TB unit was officially opened in May 2012. The treatment success rates for TB are indicated in the following table and figure.

**Table 33: TB treatment success rate for 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Success rate in %
2008/09	75,4
2009/10	76,6
2010/11	80,4
2011/12	80
2012/13	72,4
2013/14	80

*Source: DoH*

**Figure 16: TB treatment success rate for 2008/09 to 2013/14**



*Source: DoH*

The above figure indicates that the success rate for TB treatment peaked at 80,4% in the 2011/12 fiscal year and dropped to a low of 72,4% in the following financial year. The latter represents the lowest success rate over the last six financial years. Although there was a significant increase in the following financial year (2013/14) when an 80% success rate was recorded, this is still below the national target of an 85% cure rate by 2014. The national target is, however, considered to be difficult for the Northern Cape to achieve because it is based on factors such as social determinants of health and that the higher the percentage achieved the growth of the success rate becomes more challenging.

## **6.5 Strengthen Health Systems Effectiveness**

If the public health care system is to be effectively strengthened there is a need to overhaul the health services delivery platform from one that is based on a largely curative, high cost care model to one that also promotes cost effective primary health care delivered to as close to the community and households as possible.

### **6.5.1 Primary Health Care (PHC)**

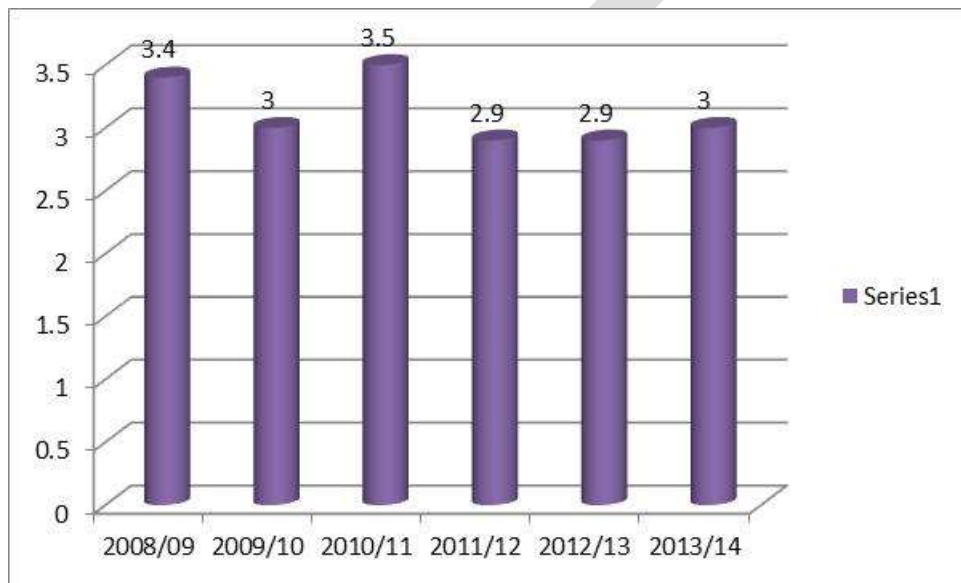
In the Northern Cape access to primary health care services has increased in 2011/2012 with a total of 3,3 million patients utilising the Primary Health Care facilities compared with the 3,1 million patients recorded in 2010/11. Primary health care services are provided by 131 clinics, 29 mobile services, 46 satellites and 33 community health centres.

With the success of the Rota Virus and Pneumococcal vaccines we may perhaps see less of children under five visiting health facilities, as this will result in the halting and better management of child illnesses. This, however, does not mean

that less resources are required but that instead more investment is required for prevention rather than cure. This is the essence of public health care.

The PHC facilities utilisation rate is the average number of visits made per person per year to a PHC facility, which is calculated by dividing the total headcount passing through the PHC facilities by the total population. The target for the PHC utilisation rate in the Northern Cape is 3,5. The figure below illustrates the PHC utilisation rate in the province from 2008/09 to 2013/14.

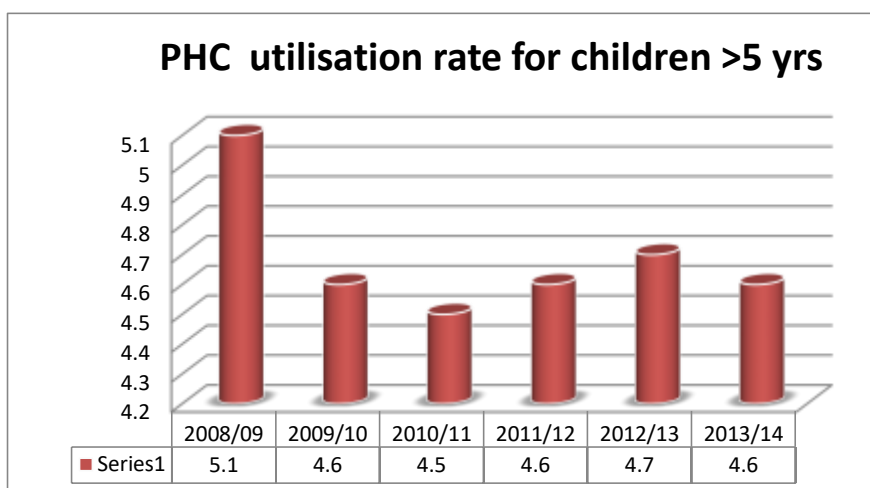
**Figure 17: Utilisation rate of PHC facilities 2008/08-2013/14**



**Source: DoH Annual and Quarterly Reports**

The figure below depicts that for the past five years there has been a positive trend of children below five years increasingly visiting PHC facilities, or facilities providing that level of care. In the medium term this trend can only improve.

**Figure 18: Utilisation rate of PHC of children less than 5 years**



*Source: DoH Annual and Quarterly Reports*

### 6.5.2 Classification of Health Facilities for Compliance

The process for the classification of health facilities was concluded in 2012 with the aim of ensuring that all health facilities were classified in order to function according to a national set of norms and standards. The outcome of this process was as follows:

- Kimberly Hospital has been classified as a tertiary facility.
- The Tuberculosis and Mental Health facilities are currently classified as specialised hospitals.
- Gordonia Hospital has been accredited with regional hospital status and has been subsequently renamed the Dr Harry Surtie Hospital.
- There are eleven district hospitals in the province and these are the Barkly West, Calvinia, Colesberg, De Aar, Hartswater, Kakamas, Kuruman, Postmasburg, Prieska, Springbok and Tshwaragano hospitals.
- The following facilities, namely, Warrenton and Jan Kempdorp Hospitals in the Frances Baard District, Douglas Hospital in the Pixley-Ka-Seme District and the Keimoes Hospital in the ZF Mgcawu District have now been reclassified as Community Health centres.

The table below shows the distribution of health care facilities in each district as at 2012.

**Table 34: Distribution of facilities per district as at 2012**

Districts Health Facilities	Frances Baard	John Taolo Gaetsewe	Namakwa	Pixley ka Seme	ZF Mgcawu	Province
District Hospitals	2	2	2	3	2	11

<b>Community Health Centres</b>	4	5	10	8	6	<b>33</b>
<b>Clinics</b>	25	36	26	28	15	<b>1 310</b>
<b>Satellite Clinics</b>	6	0	22	4	15	<b>46</b>

Source: NCDoH

### 6.5.3 Provision of a complete and comprehensive package of services

To expand the service package to meet the demand and to increase access of all health care services to the people of the Northern Cape the following actions have become both urgent and peremptory:

- The Northern Cape Department of Health is building a new Psychiatric facility which will cater for child and adolescent Mental Health Service (CAMHS) and is envisaged to be operational in 2014.
- The National Department of Health has advised the provinces to include infrastructure for mental health when they plan construction of new facilities.
- Two regional hospitals are under constructions in the province and two are to be renovated.
- With the improvement of infrastructure and capacity the department intends to progressively improve the implementation of the 72 hour observations across all districts and;
- Progress has also been made in taking a proportion of the state patients out of prison into the care of the Department of Health.

### 6.5.3 National Health Insurance (NHI)

Pixley-Ka-Seme District has been identified as one of the eleven Districts in the country to pilot the National Health Insurance (NHI) which has been phased in as of 1st April 2012. These are the following teams that are critical for the introduction of the NHI:

- District clinical specialist teams constituted by the following professionals; Gynaecologist, Paediatrician, Family Physician, Anaesthetist, Advanced Midwife and Paediatric Nurse.
- School health teams
- Ward based outreach teams; and
- District Health Management teams

The above has been put in place as part of a process of re-engineering the health, and in particular, primary health care.

#### 6.5.4 Human Resources

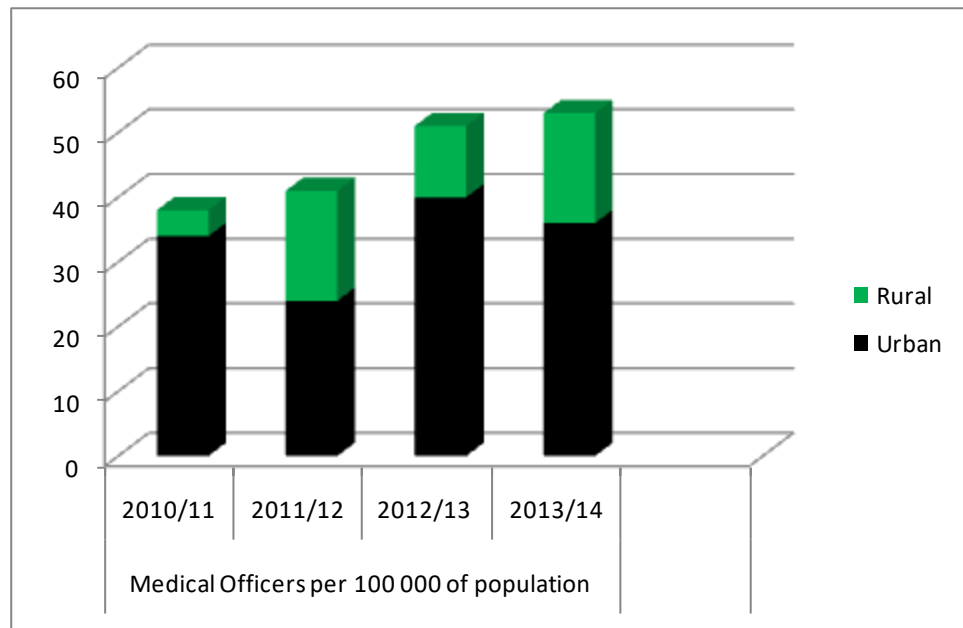
There has been a marked improvement in increasing the human resources in health care facilities with particular regard to clinical staff. Although there has been an increase in all categories of clinical staff in the rural districts there is still a dire need for more professionals to be deployed in the rural areas of the province. The indicator of the ratio of clinical staff to patients has only been tracked since the 2010/11 financial year and therefore statistics pertaining to the years before is not available. The table and figures below illustrates the number of medical officers, professional nurses and pharmacists per 100 000 of the population in both urban and rural areas.

**Table 35: The number of medical officers, professional nurses and pharmacists per 100 000 of the population in urban and rural areas from 2010/11 to 2013/14.**

<b>Profession</b>	<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/13</b>	<b>2013/14</b>
Medical Officers	34	24	40	36
Medical Officers in rural areas.	4	17	11	17
Professional nurses	121	115	124	115
Professional nurses in rural areas.	32	117	88	115
Pharmacists	9	6	11	10
Pharmacists in rural areas.	2	3	3	5

*Source: NCDoh*

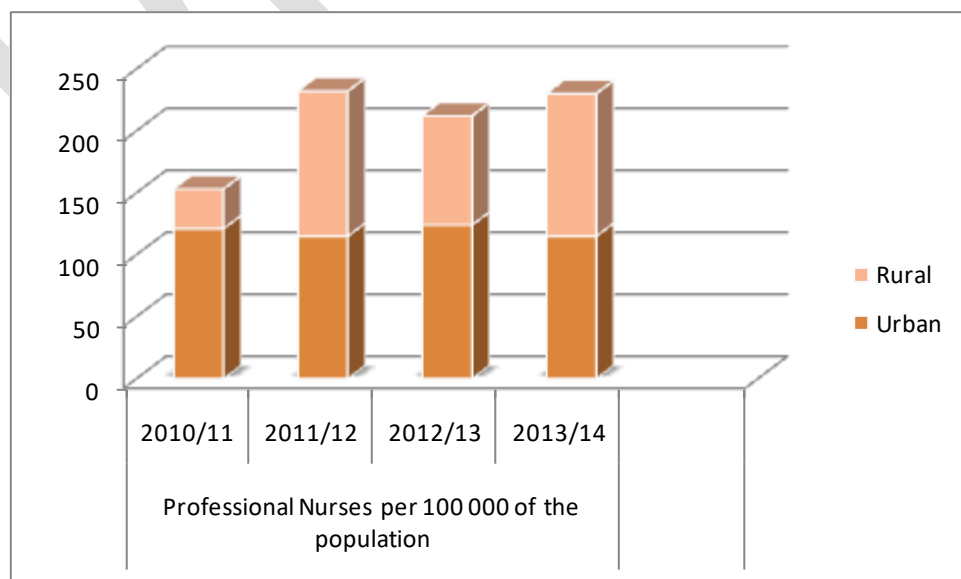
**Figure 19: The number of medical officers per 100 000 of the population in urban and rural areas from 2010/11 to 2013/14.**



Source: NCDoh

The ratio of Medical Officers in urban areas in the province was at its lowest in 2011/12 financial year where it stood at 24 per 100 000 of the population and at its highest in the 2012/13 financial year at 40 per 100 000 of the population. There is a great disparity between the rural and urban ratios for Medical Officers with the lowest ratio of 4 per 100 000 in rural areas recorded in 2010/11 and the highest of 17 per 100 000 in 2013/14. The latter ratio is less than half that of the urban ratio for the same financial year.

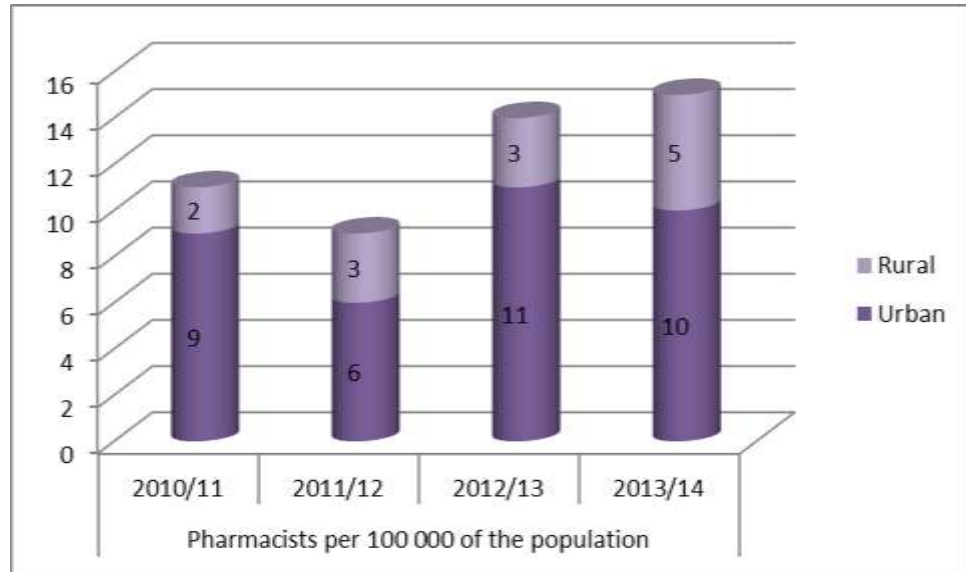
**Figure 20: The number of professional nurses per 100 000 of the population in urban and rural areas from 2010/11 to 2013/14.**



Source: NCDoh

Despite the gross inequality between the rural and urban ratio for professional nurses per 100 000 of the population in 2010/11 (32/100 000 compared to 121/100 000) there has been marked improvement in this ratio for the following three years and in the 2013/14 year the ratios for the rural and the urban areas were the same for the first time at 115 professional nurses per 100 000 of the population.

**Figure 21: The number of pharmacists per 100 000 of the population in urban and rural areas from 2010/11 to 2013/14.**



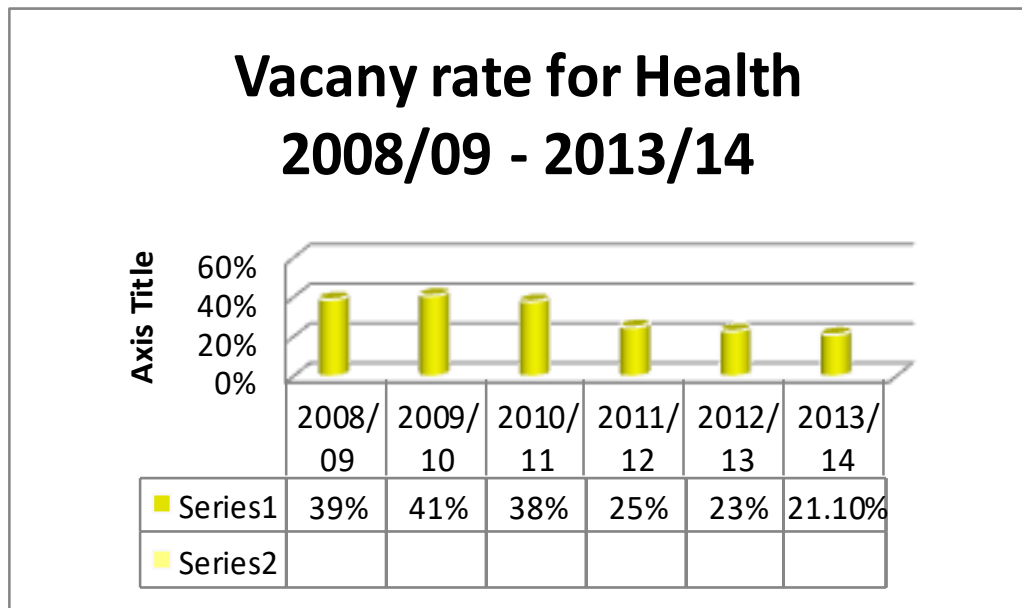
Source: NCDoh

Staff retention and stability with regards to clinical staff in general seems to be poor and this again borne out by the fact that the ratio of pharmacists/100 000 of the population was at its lowest in 2010/11 at 6 and at 11 in 2012/13. The rural ratio is much lower than the urban ratios and was half that of the urban ratio in 2013/14 (5 compared to 10).

Significant progress has been made with the filling of vacant posts with the vacancy rate standing at 21,1 % at the end of the 2013/14 financial year. Figure 22 below indicates the vacancy rates from 2008/09 to 2013/14



**Figure 22: Vacancy rate from 2008 to Quarter 3 of 2012**



*Source: Annual Report*

The vacancy rate for the five year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14 has almost halved and was at its lowest in 2013/14.

#### 6.5.5 Health Infrastructure

The Hospital Infrastructure Grant (HIG) is allocated for both the upgrading and maintenance of health facilities and for the construction of new hospitals in the province. For the five year period from the 2009/10 financial year to the 2013/14 financial year a total of over R2,14 billion was spent on health care infrastructure. This has included the construction of new hospitals and clinics as well as the refurbishment, upgrading and maintenance of already established health care facilities. The annual breakdown of the expenditure for the abovementioned period is given in the table below.

**Table 36: Annual expenditure on infrastructure from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Amount Spent (R'000)
2009/10	425 509
2010/11	309 469
2011/12	492 925
2012/13	466 019
2013/14	450 499
<b>Total</b>	<b>2 144 421</b>

*Source: NCDoH Annual Reports*

The following facilities have been constructed or upgraded during the period 2009 - 2014:

- Hondeklipbaai Clinic - 2009
- Mapoteng Clinic - 2010
- Riemvasmaak Clinic - 2010
- Groot Mier Clinic - 2010
- Hopetown Clinic upgrade - 2011
- Upgrading of West End MDR TB Unit – 2012
- Deurhaim Clinic
- Ga-Mopedi Clinic
- Dr Harry Surtee Hospital in Upington - 2014
- Upgrading of Tshwaragano Hospital.

The following infrastructure projects are currently in progress:

**Table 37: Status of health infrastructure projects**

<b>Project</b>	<b>Projected date of completion/Status</b>
De Aar Hospital	2015
Kuruman Hospital	Design Stage
Postmasburg Hospital	Contractor on site
Port Nolloth CHC	Construction Stage
Williston CHC	Design Stage
Kagung Clinic	Design Stage
Novalspont Clinic	Completed
Mental Hospital - Kimberley	Construction phase
Galeshewe Day Hospital	Upgrade in progress
West End Hospital	Tender stage

*Source: NCDoH*

## 7. SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

### 7.1 Income, Poverty and inequality

#### 7.1.1 Background

Since 2009, the social development sector within government has endeavoured to ensure that all its social protection interventions are based on a set of guiding principles that are as follow:

A **protective function** with measures that safeguards citizens from hunger and food insecurity through the expansion of community food and nutrition centres commonly referred to as Soup Kitchens and Drop-in-Centres. This is aimed at the saving of lives and reducing levels of deprivation in the short to medium term.

A **preventive function** through linking grant beneficiaries to economic livelihoods through the Expanded Public Works Programme to prevent people from falling into deeper poverty.

A **promotive function** to enhance the capabilities of individuals, communities and institutions to participate in all spheres of activity through our Community Based Planning Approach; and

A **transformative function** focusing on reducing inequities and vulnerabilities through changes in policies, laws, budgetary allocations and redistributive measures, in terms of the rural bias focus.

The Department of Social Development has adopted four policy priorities in accordance with the 2009 Medium Term Strategic Framework, namely:

1. Protecting the poor.
2. Youth development.
3. Crime prevention; and
4. Building cohesive, caring and sustainable communities.

These four policy priorities serve as guidelines for the effective delivery of services and provide a framework for the interventions necessary for addressing poverty, vulnerability and social exclusion.

#### 7.1.1 War on Poverty

The War on Poverty Campaign signalled a new approach in the fight against poverty by the three spheres of government and its social partners. The main objective of this approach is to enable the provision of integrated services to poor

households through the use of social research. The effective implementation of this programme will, amongst other things, assist in:

- The identification of needy households for planning purposes to develop strategies to alleviate poverty and improve service delivery.
- The integration of services between departments and spheres of government; and
- Informed planning, budgeting and decision-making by all government departments.

The Provincial War on Poverty Programme is an overarching programme that aims to assist families to graduate out of poverty. This programme focuses on the following priorities:

- Priority 1: Access to a “basket of public services” to ensure all Northern Cape constituents enjoy the minimum acceptable standard of living.
- Priority 2: Income protection through the social wage that includes, among things, social grants, transport subsidies, no-fee schools and housing subsidies; and
- Priority 3: Economic Inclusion through linking beneficiaries to job and skills development opportunities.

In order to intensify the War on Poverty campaign the Northern Cape Provincial government saw the need for accurate information with regard to the households in the province. To this end it embarked on the ‘Balelapa household profiling project’ which was aimed at providing the provincial government with up-to-date information on all households in the province enabling the state to enhance its planning capabilities and to direct services to where it was needed most.

The Balelapa project was initiated in May 2010 with the sole objective of profiling all the households in the province with the ultimate aim of ensuring that the poor and vulnerable households are provided with an integrated basket of services and development support that included access to education, nutrition, free basic services, and economic empowerment opportunities. According to information available in 2010, there were approximately 280,000 households in the Northern Cape located in 271 settlements.

The Balelapa project unfolded in 3 phases, namely:

- (1) Profiling of all households in the province.
- (2) Verification and capturing of data obtained during the profiling process.
- (3) Analysis of the data and reporting.

By the end of the 2011/12 fiscal year a total of 265 963 households were profiled and 48 252 needy households were identified as living in abject poverty qualifying for assistance from the War on Poverty Programme. An incremental approach has been adopted to graduate households out of poverty and implementation began in 2013. In the 2013/14 financial year 1 271 households with no income received an integrated basket of services to assist them towards sustainability and were successfully migrated out of extreme poverty.

The War on Poverty Programme is based on a PIMD study that looked at five domains of deprivation.. Based on these variables 63 wards for the Province have been identified of which 21 are situated in Frances Baard, 18 in Pixley ka Seme, 11 in John Taolo Gaetsewe, 9 in ZF Mgcawu and 4 in Namakwa district.

The key to eliminating poverty and reducing inequality is the investment in people, especially young people. All households identified as qualifying for assistance were assigned change agents, who have been identified to change the circumstances of the household. Supporting household change agents is critical in breaking the cycle of poverty especially those identified in the household profiles. This support includes, but is not limited to, bursaries, scholarships, learner-ships, internships, community works programme and start-up funding. Through the Balelapa Project the DSD has to date identified over 80 000 Change Agents, predominantly young people, in the province. In the 2013/14 fiscal year 2 614 change agents were linked to development and economic opportunities to support and facilitate them towards sustainability.

A highlight is the award which the Balelapa Project has won despite extensive criticism and challenges. This ground-breaking project scooped the DPISA's 1st Runner-up Centre for Public Service Innovation Award, 2011 in the category "Innovative Enhancement of Internal Systems in Government".

The precursor to the WOP was the "Building Healthy Families" project, more commonly referred to the 500 Families Project. The object of this project was to profile 100 of the poorest families in each of the districts in the province and provide support and assist them to migrate out of poverty. By the end of 2013/14 financial year 451 families received an integrated basket of services to assist them towards sustainability.

### 7.1.2 Poverty Lines and Headcounts

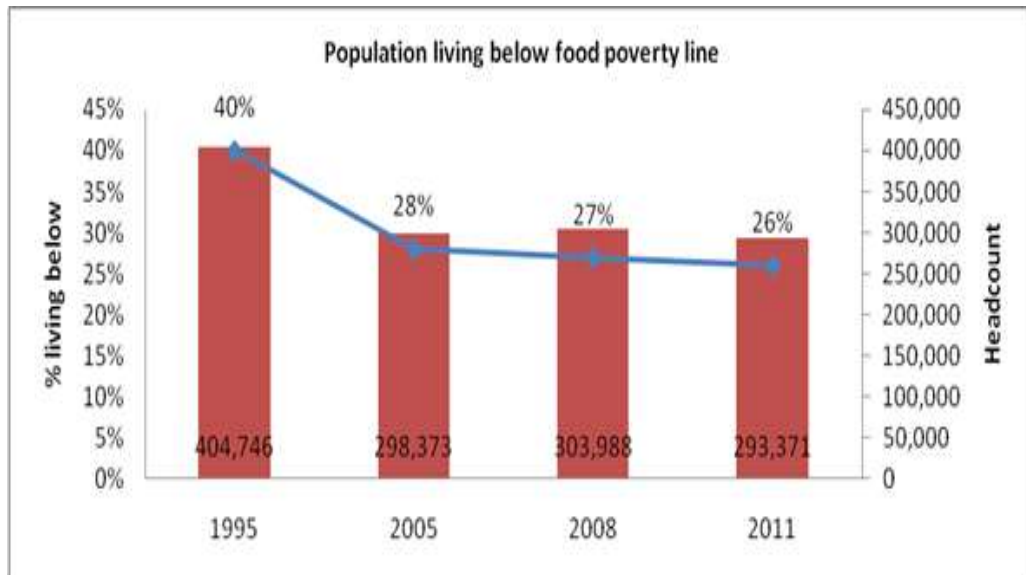
The two most frequent ways of measuring poverty are:

The **Poverty Line** which is the minimum average sum of money that a household or individual needs to survive; and

The **Poverty Gap** which indicates how far a household or individual falls below the poverty line

The proportion of people in the Northern Cape living below the food poverty line has decreased from 40% in 1995 to 26% in 2011. There has also been a decline in the number of people living below the food poverty line from 404 746 in 1995 to 293 371 in 2011. The figure below illustrates the percentage as well as the number of people living below the food poverty line.

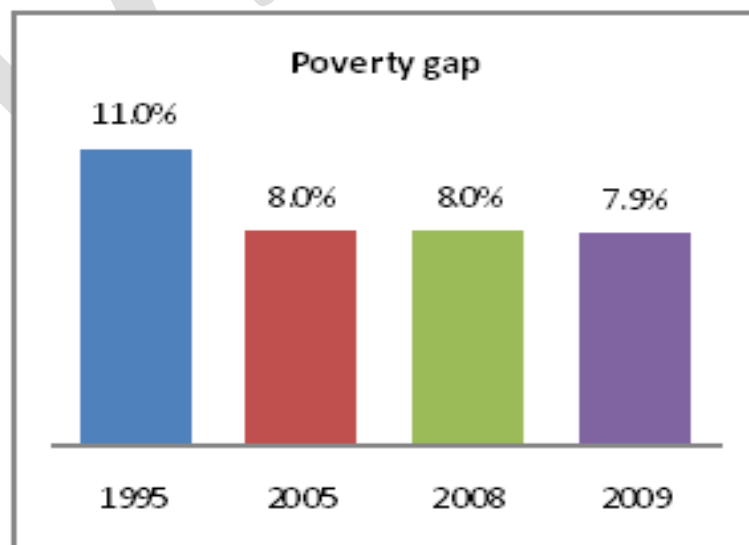
**Figure 23: Population living below the food poverty line in the Northern Cape**



Source: NCSDS

The depth of poverty indicates how far below the poverty line the income for the average poor person is, that is, how deep their poverty is. The available data indicates that in 1995 the average income of a poor person in the Northern Cape was 11% below the poverty line but by 2009 it had been reduced to 7.9%. This, however, was higher than the national average of 6% in 2008. The figure below depicts the poverty gap in the Northern Cape for 1995, 2005, 2008 and 2009.

**Figure 24: Poverty gap in the Northern Cape for 1995, 2005, 2008 and 2009**

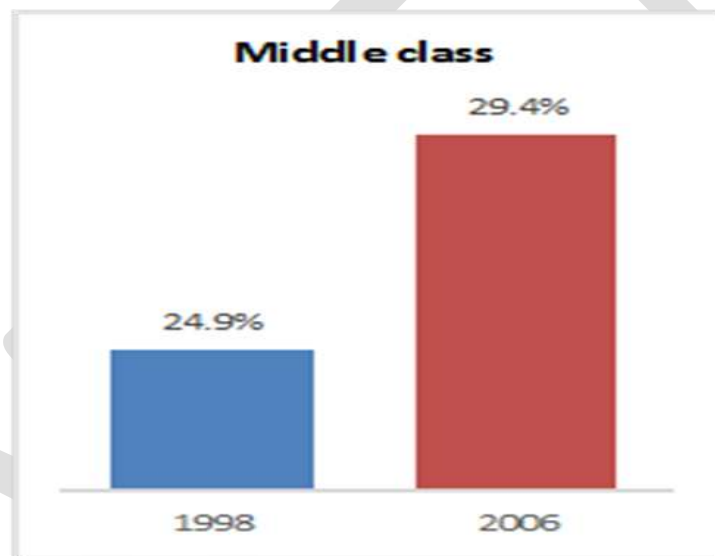


Source: NCSDS

In order to supplement the information provided by the poverty line and poverty gap ten living standard measures (LSM's) based on a total of 29 variables are used to measure a household or individual's living standards, in essence, measuring their wealth, assets and consumption patterns. Those households that fall into LSM 1 are living in poverty and can only afford the most basic necessities while those falling in LSM 10 are considered to be wealthy and can afford luxuries. Between 1994 and 2000 there was a decrease from 29,6% to 22,6% of the population of the Northern Cape living in the lower three categories. Similarly, between 2000 and 2008 there was a decrease in the proportion in these lower categories and a corresponding increase in the middle categories

This trend continued resulting in another decrease between 2008 and 2012 in the LSM bands 1 to 3 from 19,2 to 7,5% while between 1998 and 2006 the middle class increased from 24,9% to 29,4% and the latter is depicted in the figure below.

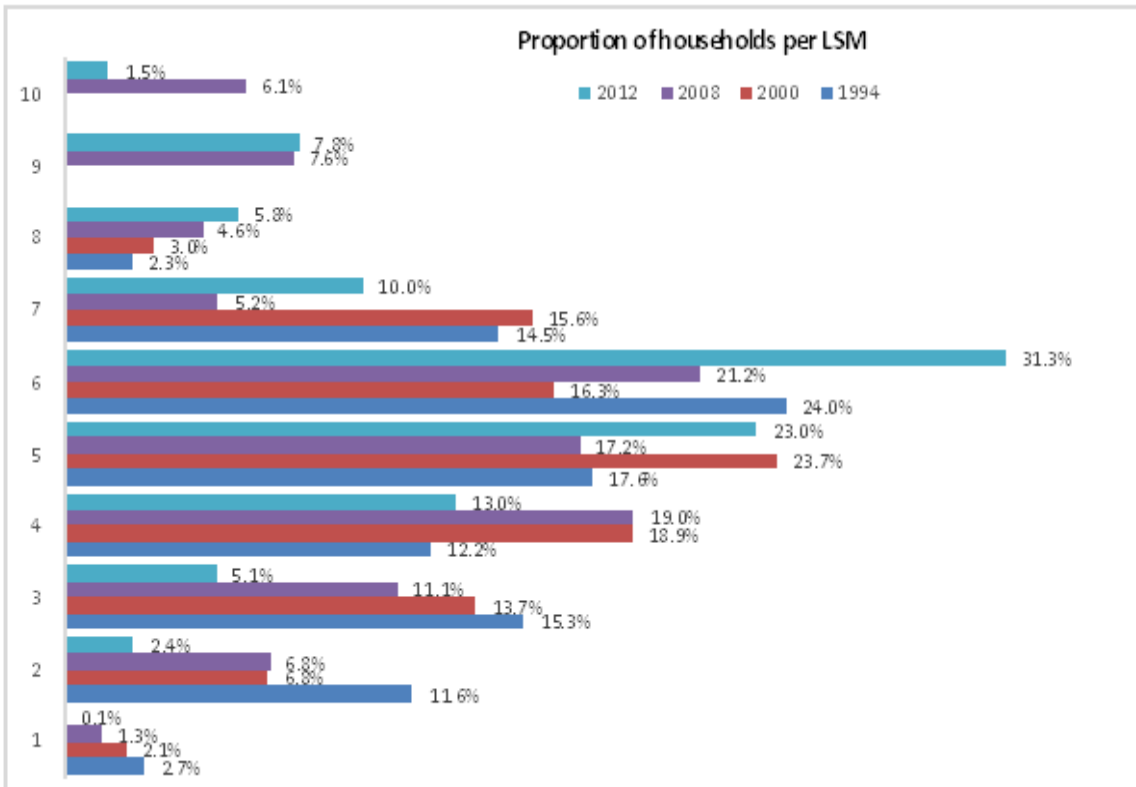
**Figure 25: LSM middle class for 1998 and 2006**



Source: NCDS

The figure below illustrates the percentage of households for each of the ten LSM's in 1994, 2000, 2008 and 2012.

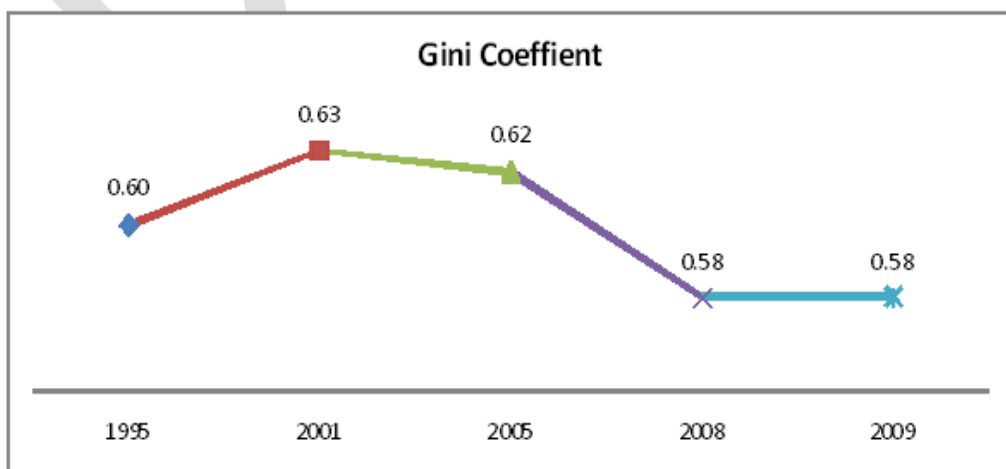
**Figure 26: Proportion of households per LSM for 1994, 2000, 2008 and 2012**



Source: NCDS

Another measure of poverty and, more particularly, inequality is the gini coefficient which measures income inequality. A gini coefficient of zero represents perfect equality while a gini coefficient of one represents perfect inequality. The income inequality in the Northern Cape has decreased from 0,6 in 1995 to 0,58 in 2009 indicating a slight narrowing of the income gap. The graph below illustrates the gini coefficient in the Northern Cape.

**Figure 27: The Gini Coefficient in the Northern Cape**



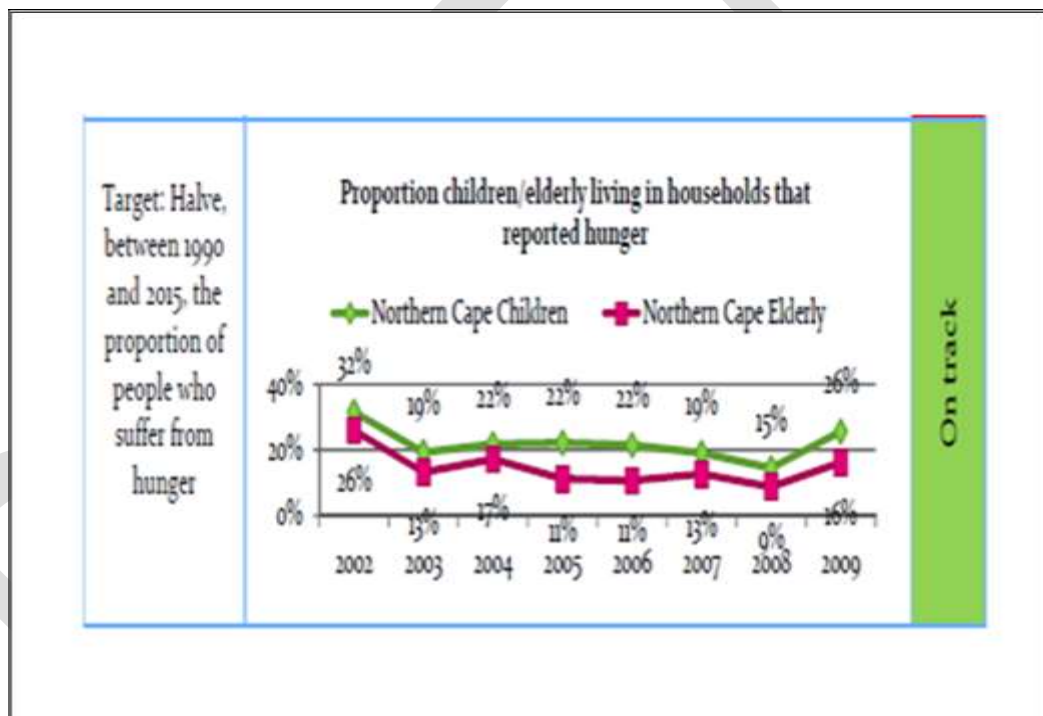
Source: Statssa



The proportion of Northern Cape people living below the poverty line has declined from 54% in 2002 to 27% in 2009, while the poverty gap was 11% in 1995, compared to 8% in 2008. By assigning the poor to the lowest 40% of the income distribution, a monthly per capita income of less than R555 per person is derived. Sixty-nine percent (69%) of Northern Cape children and 60% of the province's youth aged 15-24 years live in such low income households, while 35.6% of the province's older persons live in households with an expenditure of less than R1 200 per month.

The proportion of the elderly that have been reported going hungry has decreased by 10% from 26% in 2002 to 16% in 2009 and the number children who went hungry decreased by 6% over the same period. The graph below illustrates the proportion of children and elderly that reported hunger annually for the period 2002 to 2009.

**Figure 28: %age children/elderly that reported hunger from 2002 to 2009**



Source: NCDS

## 7.2 Social Security

### 7.2.1 Social Grants

Social grants represent the main, and in many cases, the only source of income for many households in the Northern Cape. The total number of people benefitting from grants increased from 11% in 2000 to 37% in 2013. In 2013 there was just under 426 000 social assistance grant recipients in the province compared to 99 395 in 2000. In 2012 social grants was the second main source of income for households

at 28,5% after salaries and wages at 55,3%. The importance of grants as a source of income has increased from 23,7% in 2009 to 28,5% in 2012.

Provision is made for payment of social grants according to seven different categories and the breakdown of these grant payments according to these categories from 2008 to 2013 is shown in the table below:

**Table 38: Social grant beneficiaries by type of grant from 2008 to 2013**

<b>Grant type</b>	<b>2008/09</b>	<b>200/10</b>	<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/13</b>	<b>2013/14</b>
Old age	56 612	63 040	70 021	76 721	74 919	77 081
War Veteran	76	64	41	23	17	12
Disability	49 364	47 932	49 257	49 920	50 012	48 201
Grant in Aid	15 635	17 573	43 345	4 092	4 214	4 755
Care dependency	3 926	4 264	4 655	4 236	4 485	4 610
Foster care	13 836	14 955	14 511	14 456	14 342	14 307
Child support	180 539	199 588	242 548	266 063	277 835	275 849
<b>Total</b>	<b>319 988</b>	<b>347 416</b>	<b>424 378</b>	<b>415 511</b>	<b>425 824</b>	<b>424 815</b>

Source: NCDS

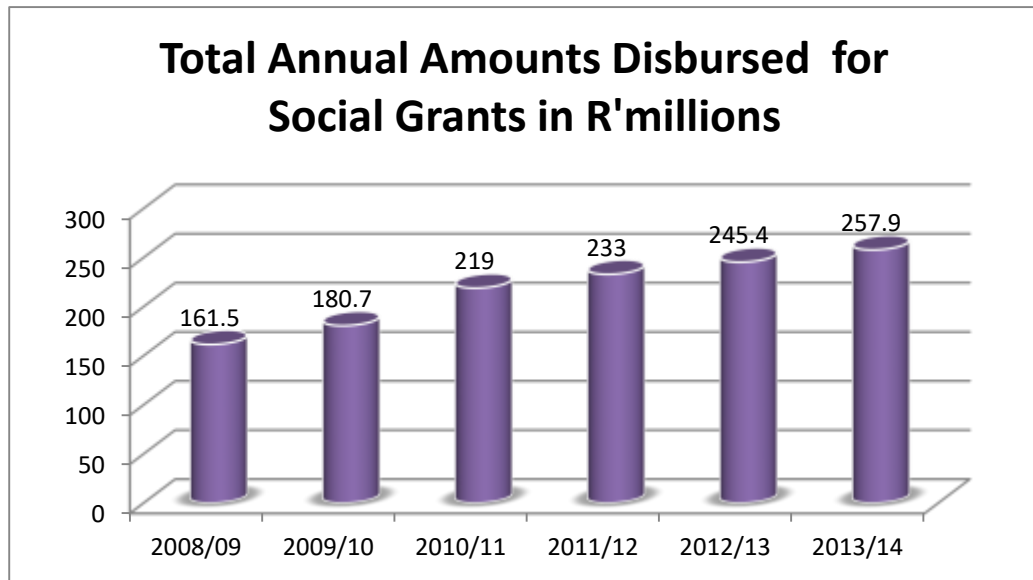
From the table above it is evident that the total number of recipients for all categories of grants increased from 319 988 in 2008 to 424 815 in 2013 representing an average annual increase of 5,5% over the six year period. Generally all categories of grant recipients increased between 2008/09 and 2013/14 except for grant-in-aid that decreased from 15 635 in 2008/09 to 4 755 in 2013/14 and the War Veterans grants that decreased from 76 in 2008/09 to 12 in 2013/14.

The number of beneficiaries of the child support grant showed the most significant increase from 180 539 in 2009 to 277 835 in 2013. This figure (i.e. child support grantees) stood at just over six thousand in 2000. This translated into an average increase of 32,9% per annum since 2000 and can be attributed to the fact that the eligibility age of recipient children increased from six years in 2000 to eighteen years in 2011.

The category of social grants with the second largest number of beneficiaries is the old age grants that increased from 56 612 recipients in 2008/09 to 77 081 in 2013/14 representing an average increase of just over 6% per annum. The number of Northern Cape disability grant recipients has increased from 28 427 in 2000 to 50 012 in 2012/13 an average increase of 4,4% per annum. It is interesting to note that research in 2006 showed that 36% of disability grant beneficiaries had disabilities that did not hinder them from obtaining gainful employment.

The total annual monetary value of all grants paid out has increased from R161,5 million in 2008/09 to R257,9 million in 2013/14. The annual amount paid for each of the financial years from 2008/09 to 2013/13 is depicted in the figure below.

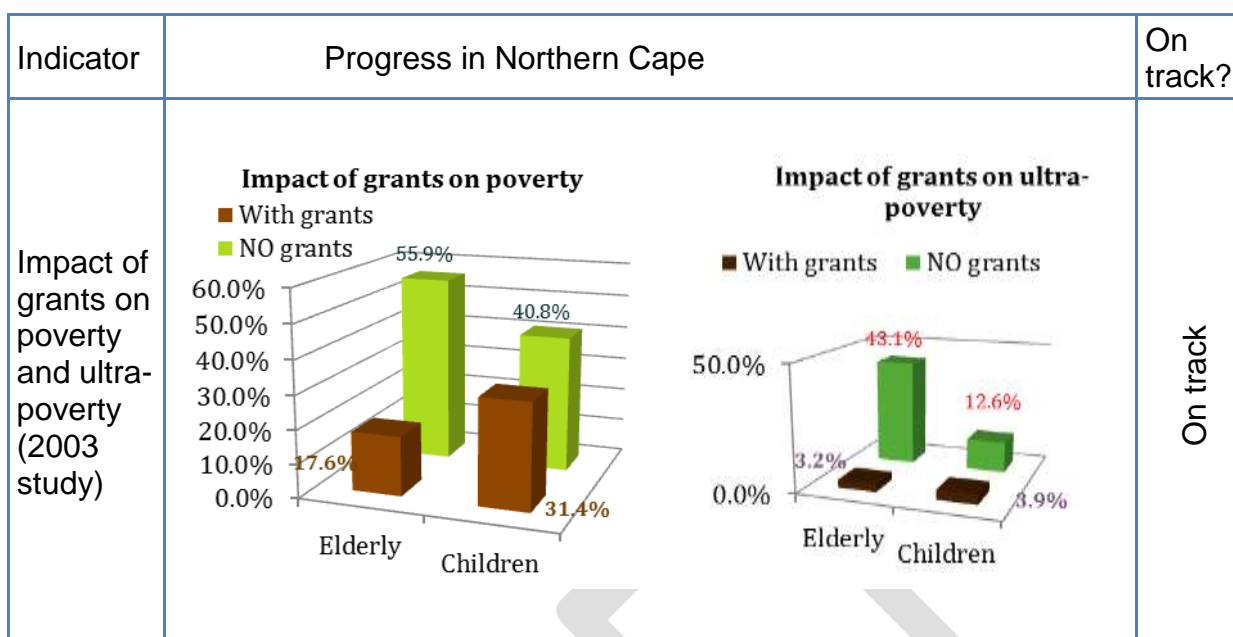
**Figure 29: Total amount disbursed annually for all categories of grants- 2008/09-2013/14**



Source: NCDS

The combined effect of all grants is that it reduced the percentage of Northern Cape children living in poverty from 40,8% to 31,4%, and the percentage of the province's elderly from 55,9% to 17,6%. The grants system reduced inequality by correcting the Gini coefficient on per capita household expenditure from 0.67 before grants to 0.62 after grants (Reducing Poverty, A decade of Achievement in Northern Cape: 2000-2010, Department of Social Development, 2011). This reflects a marked decrease in the Gini coefficient recorded in 2009 for the Northern Cape. The graph below illustrates the impact of grants on poverty and chronic poverty for the elderly and children.

**Table 30: Impact of grants on poverty and chronic poverty for elderly and children**



Source: STATS SA, 2009. Profile of the Northern Cape: Reflecting the impact of grants on Poverty and Chronic poverty.

### 7.2.1 Social Relief

The main focus of the social relief programme is to render temporary relief to families experiencing undue hardship and distress as well as those affected by natural and unnatural disasters. Social relief is usually provided in the form of, amongst other things, food parcels, blankets, school uniforms and household utensils. Over the past five years a total of 121 404 individuals benefited from the social relief programmes, (including annual winter relief programmes launched between June and August as well as the 2010 Flood Relief programme). The total budget for social relief programmes amounted to R25,236 million from 2009/10 to 2013/14. The annual breakdown of number of persons benefiting from these programmes and the budget is provided in the table below.

**Table 39: The number of beneficiaries and the budget for social relief from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	No. of beneficiaries	Budget in R'000
2009/10	13 168	4 070
2010/11	16 256	4 808
2011/12	16 136	5 516
2012/13	30 416	4 847
2013/14	45 428	6 085

Source: DSD Annual Reports

## 7.2.2 Food Security

The gap between the rich and the poor has widened and the most obvious manifestation of this has been household food insecurity. In order to address the challenges of food insecurity the state has implemented the Sustainable Livelihood programme through which Drop-in-Centres, Soup Kitchens and food production initiatives have been established. By the end of the 2013/14 financial year following food security interventions to ensure sustainable livelihoods in our communities were accomplished:

- At the end of the 2013/14 financial year there was 109 soup kitchens of which 81 are in the War on Poverty wards.
- Drop-in-Centres have been set up in 32 sites and 12 of these centres are in War on Poverty wards.
- A total of 25 food gardens have been established and more than 50%, that is, 13, are in War on Poverty wards.
- Seven crop production centres have been set up of which 5 are in War on Poverty wards.
- 17 socio-economic initiatives have been started and 11 of these are in War on Poverty wards; and
- Social cooperatives have been established with all of them in War on Poverty wards.

The table below lists the number of Soup Kitchens funded by the provincial government and the annual expenditure incurred for the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 40: The number of Soup kitchens funded and total expenditure – 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	No of Soup Kitchens	Expenditure R'000
2009/10	53	3 462
2010/11	74	4 887
2011/12	75	6 213
2012/13	75	5 882
2013/14	109	10 708

*Source: DSD Annual Reports*

For the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14 a total of over R31 million was spent on the provision of meals through the soup kitchens with the amount expended consistently increasing with each financial year and the budget almost doubling for the period under review.

The table below depicts the number of Soup Kitchens funded by the provincial government and the expenditure incurred for each financial for the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 41: The number of Drop-in-Centres funded and total expenditure from 2009/10 2013/14**

Financial Year	No of Drop-in-centres	Expenditure R'000
2009/10	21	5 458
2010/11	28	8 300
2011/12	30	9 228
2012/13	34	6 725
2013/14	29	7 297

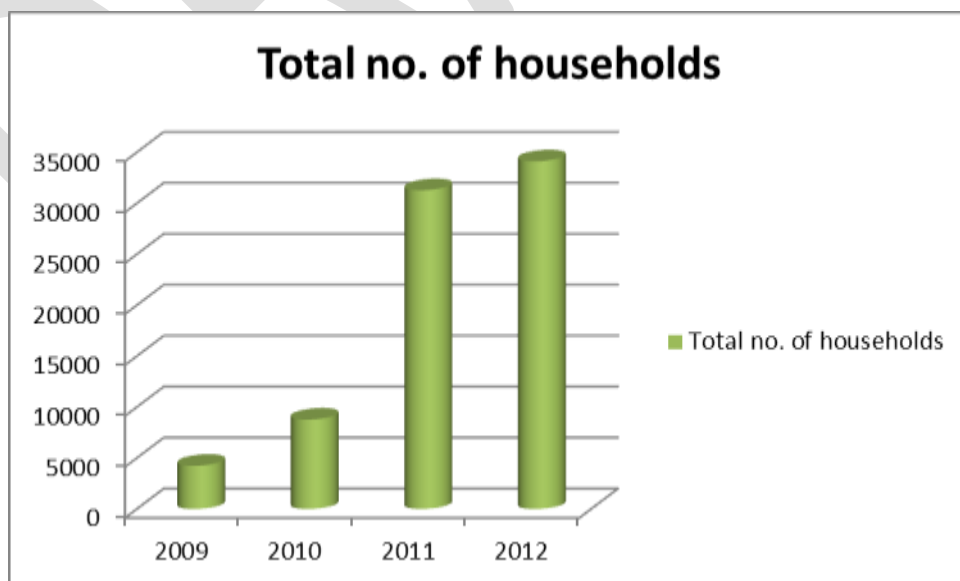
Source: DSD Annual Reports

The total expenditure on Drop-in-centres from 2009/10 to 2013/14 was over R37 million with the highest amount of R9,228 million expended in the 2011/12 financial year.

The number of meals served to the poor and vulnerable has increased from 80 000 in 2009 to 740 888 in 2013; and the number of household food gardens has risen from 196 in 2009 to 256 in 2012. Furthermore, the number of community food gardens has increased from 12 in 2009 to 25 in 2013 while crop production centres grew from four to seven in the same period.

The number of households benefiting from food security interventions have grown from 4 244 in 2009 to 34 123 in 2012. The figure below depicts the number of beneficiary households from 2009 to 2012.

**Figure 31: No. of households benefitting from food security interventions: 2009 to 2012**



Source: DSD Annual Reports

A total of 403 employment opportunities have been created through the soup kitchens and Drop-in-centres over the five year period. The socio-economic projects

funded by the state have been able to create a further 90 employment opportunities over the same period.

The socio-economic projects are spread across all five districts with a deliberate bias towards the poorer Districts of Pixley ka Seme and John Taolo Gaetsewe. The distribution of these initiatives in each District is as follows:

### ***Pixley ka Seme***

There are five projects in Pixley ka Seme and these comprise of the Emthanjeni car wash in De Aar, Happy Nappy in Hanover, Umsobomvu bakery in Colesburg, Umsobomvu car wash in Colesburg and the Siyancuma Social Cooperative in Douglas

### ***John Taolo Gaetsewe***

In the John Taolo Gaetsewe District there are four projects consisting of the Boitshoko Broiler Project in Kampaneng, Bana Ba Thari Bakery in Tsineng, Tshwaragano HCBC (toilet paper manufacture) in Dibeng and School Uniform Cooperative in Cassel.

### ***Frances Baard***

There are three projects in this District all of which are in the Sol Plaatje municipality. They are the Greenpoint Butchery, Galeshewe recycling project and the Colville Baseo Bricks project.

### ***ZF Mgcawu***

Two projects have been established in the ZF Mgcawu District and these are the Siyavuka Laundry and Dry Cleaning in Pabalello, Upington and the Mier Development Warehouse.

### ***Namakwa***

The Namakwa District has two socio-economic initiatives, one in Pofadder called the Lungile Cooperative (bakery/guesthouse) and the other in Kamiesberg known as the Kamieskroon Clothing and Textile Project.

## **7.3 Substance Abuse**

One of the main achievements in the fight against substance abuse has been the development of a Provincial Substance Abuse Prevention Strategy that was approved by the Executive Council of the Northern Cape government in 2012. To complement this, individual departmental operational plans have been developed in line with each department's responsibilities and its implementation is monitored through the Provincial Substance Forum.

### **7.3.1 Prevention**

There are a number of substance abuse prevention programmes implemented in the province. These include the Ke Moja: "I'm fine without drugs" programme that includes substance abuse education and awareness and life skills development. This entails visits to schools, door to door and sport against drugs campaigns, youth workshops and information session. This enables the youth to make informed choices that promote their development as the programme focuses on providing education and awareness on the negative effects of substance abuse and the life skills to avoid substance abuse. This programme has reached more than 226 647 children.

A further 171 553 community members have been reached through the substance abuse prevention programme sessions including substance abuse education, life skills and parenting skills.

### **7.3.2 Treatment and Aftercare Services**

At the beginning of 2009, the emphasis for treatment services for substance abuse users shifted from in-patient treatment services to community based treatment services. Given the need and popularity of this service, 4 236 substance abuse users had access to this service since 2009. The community based substance abuse treatment involves counselling, education, and life skills education in order to achieve and maintain sobriety.

The improvement in service delivery initiatives with specific emphasis on access were made possible through the implementation of the referral protocol addressing the preparation of service users for in-patient treatment services. In 2013 the Department entered into a contract with Resilia clinic in Upington to provide in-patient treatment services to voluntary adults.

The community based treatment services has resulted in a significant decrease in substance abusers admitted to in-patient treatment centres for treatment and from 2009 to 2013 429 persons were admitted for treatment.

### **7.3.3 Foetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorders (FASD)**

The Department of Social Development has entered into a partnership with Foetal Alcohol Related Research (FARR) aimed at providing educational programmes on FASD targeting women of child-bearing age on the effects of alcohol consumption during pregnancy. This programme known as the 'Healthy Mother Healthy Baby' programme has already reached 3 125 women of child-bearing age in De Aar and research conducted has confirmed a decrease of 30% of FASD in De Aar. According to studies conducted by FARR the prevalence rate of foetal alcohol syndrome in De Aar in 2003 was 12% which decreased to 8,6% in 2010. The FAS prevalence rate in Upington in 2003 was 6,9% considered to be very high although it is almost half that of De Aar for the same year. This is the very first decrease recorded worldwide in relation to a reduced prevalence of FASD. The Healthy Mother Healthy Baby Programme has been rolled out in Upington.



## **7.4 Crime Prevention and Support**

There are a number of crime prevention programmes implemented in the province that is designed to prevent young people that have been involved in crime from re-offending. These include, inter alia, therapeutic programmes, diversion services and Adolescent Development Programmes.

### **7.4.1 Secure Care Facilities**

Two additional secure care facilities were established in the last MTSF period for young people finding themselves to be in conflict with the law. A state of the art institution was established in Springbok in November 2009 in partnership with BOSASA and the De Aar Secure Care Centre in October 2010. These two institutions, which are a blue print for improved services for children at risk and those in conflict with the law, can accommodate a total number of 51 young people. This brings the total number of secure care facilities in the province to five that can accommodate a total of 265 young people.

### **7.4.1 Accreditation of Diversion Services**

In line with the minimum norms and standards for Diversion Services and the Policy Framework for Accreditation of Diversion Services in South Africa, five Non-Profit Organisations received accreditation status and one received candidacy status in the 2011 cycle. A further two Non-Profit Organisations received accreditation status in the 2013 cycle. In order to comply with the relevant legislation forty probation officers were trained in five therapeutic programmes, namely, substance abuse, sex offenses, restorative justice, aftercare and life skills programme. A total of 6 645 children and young people were assessed of which 1 651 were referred to diversion programmes. Almost 77% or 1 266 of those referred have successfully completed the diversion programme.

### **7.4.2 Other Services**

- Almost one hundred thousand children and youth were involved in preventative and development programmes that ranged from crime prevention, home based supervision, diversion programmes, awareness programmes, aftercare programmes and supervision of probation officers.
- 653 children and young people benefited from the Adolescent Development Programme.

## **7.5 Persons with Disabilities**

A range of care and support services are provided to people with disabilities that are in line with the United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities. This support and services include, inter alia, assistive devices, advocacy and awareness programmes, providing residential facilities for disabled persons living and participating in protective workshops. Since 2009 the following are some of the achievements from services provided:

- More than five hundred advocacy and awareness programmes took place many of which were to highlight the plight of the disabled.
- Two hundred and sixty assistive devices were provided to persons with disabilities enabling them to fully participate in the community.
- Six protective workshops were held and 2 339 disabled persons accessed services at these workshops.
- There are almost six thousand persons with disabilities that reside in facilities funded by the state and managed by Non-Profit Organisations; and
- A total of 16 827 persons with disabilities accessed social development services through departmental and NGO interventions.

## **7.6 Youth Development**

The youth development programme provides services to youth aged between 19-35 years to enable their employability by advancing their capabilities and become agents for social change. These programmes mainly deal with skills development that range from entrepreneurship workshops, National Youth Service programme category 1 and computer training. The social change programme covers National Youth Service category 3, youth camps and dialogue.

Youth service centres are the central coordinated service points to develop the youth in the abovementioned skills as well as recreational programmes. There are 25 fully functional youth service centres in the province and spread throughout all districts as follows

- Six in Pixley ka Seme.
- ZF Mgcawu has 4.
- John Taolo Gaetsewe has 5.
- Eight in Frances Baard ; and
- Namakwa has 2.

Some of the achievements of the youth development programmes are as follows:

- For the period 2009 to 2013 a total of 34 159 youth gained knowledge and skills by participating in skills programme towards social change and nation building.
- Implementation of an accredited learnership programme in partnership with EDTP Seta that is called the Further Education and Training on Youth Development- NQF Level 4 with a 12 month duration. Thirty participants from the Renosterberg municipality were targeted for this programme; and
- Learnerships have been awarded to 606 young people that were identified through the Balelapa household profiling project.

## 7.7 HIV and AIDS

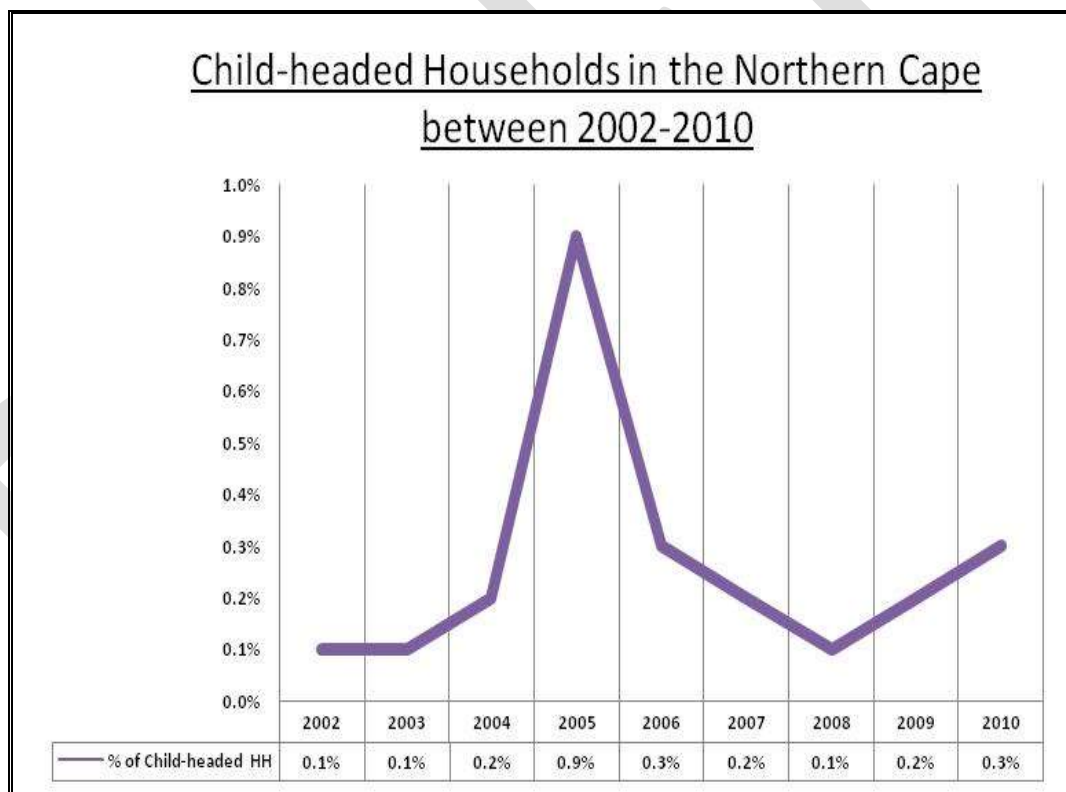
The HIV & AIDS scourge that continues to be a key priority area for our collective integrated response, the department in conjunction with its partners in the NGO sector continued to prioritize home and community based care within all communities, in every town, settlement and village

### 7.7.1 Support services to orphans and vulnerable children (HIV and AIDS)

Even though 36,92% of all children in the Northern Cape are orphaned, the low percentage (0,3% in 2010) of children living in child-headed households suggests that orphaned children are probably absorbed into existing households.

Although the percentage of child-headed households in the Northern Cape appears low, this number seems to be on the increase since 2008, as is depicted in the graph below.

**Figure 32: %age child-headed households in the N Cape between 2002 and 2009**



**Source: Stats SA, Profile of the Northern Cape**

We therefore remain focussed on implementing and will continue to ensure that the best interest remains paramount, with child-headed households as a priority for protection and care and to prioritise the welfare of children and in this regard develop, monitor and measure tools that define and deal with child poverty.

During 2009, funding was provided to 883 Community Caregivers rendering HIV/AIDS services at a stipend of R1200 per month which has increased to 965 receiving a monthly stipend of R1400.

Various training, capacity building and skills development programmes to caregivers have increased from 263 participants to 1069 reached and 61 received accredited training at the level of NQF Level 2 through the Thogomelo Programme, which involves care of the caregiver and child protection. This empowerment has increased the number of awareness programmes from 121 during 2009 to 303, with an additional 11 youth camps and 2 men's summit.

A total of 26 Home and Community Based Care organisations were funded during 2009 which has increased to 42 organisations especially in rural areas in John Taolo Gaetsewe, Pixley ka Seme and ZF Mgcawu districts.

### **7.7.2 The Isibindi Programme**

The objective of this programme is to train youth care workers so that a holistic service is rendered to children in collaboration with other stakeholders, for example, schools, clinics, home based care organisations etc. This model has proven to be most effective in addressing the needs of orphans and vulnerable children through care workers who provide direct support to children in their homes and in the community. The Isibindi Programme together with the home and community based caregivers has seen an almost six-fold increase in the number of orphans and vulnerable children serviced, from 10 749 in 2009 to 63 859 in 2013. During 2009, six Isibindi Programmes which involve training child and youth care workers rendering services to children and families infected and affected by HIV/AIDS were funded in Frances Baard and an additional three has been implemented in Colesberg, Port Nolloth and Paballelo. Together with the home and community based caregivers, the basket of services provided has increased from 10 749 to 26 616 orphans and vulnerable children, youth and the elderly infected and/or affected by HIV/AIDS.

### **7.7.3 Thogomelo Training Programme**

This programme is a skills development initiative that aims to increase the knowledge and skills of community caregivers (CCG) to provide psychological support pertaining to HIV and AIDS and the vulnerable child. The training provided is accredited and in the five year period from 2009 to 2013 a total of 210 Home Community Based Caregivers have been certificated.

## **7.8 Care and Support to Families**

### **7.8.1 Family Preservation Enhancing Family Wellbeing**

As part of the departments' efforts to assist families that have degenerated, there has been an intensified focus on strengthening family preservation services and programmes in order to address and minimise conditions such as family violence, family disintegration and disputes. Different needs based programmes and therapeutic services were rendered to respond to the ever changing needs of

families which included marriage counselling, family therapy, marriage enrichment, and family group conferencing and reunification services.

For the five year period spanning 2009 to 2013 families participated and benefitted from the various family preservation services to enhance their social functioning. The following services were implemented to promote the well-being of families:

- A total of 9 932 parents were empowered with parenting skills.
- More than 10 000 families participated in programmes such as marriage preparation and marriage counselling.
- 642 family members were reunited.
- As many as 37 100 individuals received family counselling.
- Marriage counselling was provided to 1 759 couples; and
- A total of 3 830 individuals received crisis intervention.

### **7.8.2 Child Protection Services**

Over the years the services towards the protection of children has been strengthened with the introduction of Community Based Child Protection programmes referred to as the Isolabantwana projects. At the end of the 2013/14 financial year there were 41 Isolabantwana projects funded that were rendering child care and protection services through 300 volunteers each receiving a monthly stipend.

The implementation of a child protection register enables the department not only to fast track but to monitor services rendered towards abused and neglected children.

The Department of Social Development has also implemented community based projects that renders services to children living and working on the streets. There are seven volunteers involved in these projects.

In terms of the Children's Act of 2005 that emphasises the implementation of prevention and awareness programmes a total of 1 220 such programmes were conducted in the five year period ending with the 2013/14 financial year. The aim of these programmes was to strengthen and build the community's capacity and self-reliance to address problems that may lead to statutory interventions.

Of those children that needed care and protection approximately 4 400 children were placed in foster homes. A further 2 141 of these children who were abused received services in trauma counselling and were able to function normally in society.

### **7.8.3 Early Childhood Development (0-4 years old)**

Whilst the Early Childhood Development (ECD) regarding the Grade R learners is led by the Education sector in the province, the development of 0 to 4 year olds lies with Social Development. With the promulgation of the Children's Act 38 of 2005 in 2010, ECD service providers were confronted with challenges with re-registration of their programmes because of non-compliance with the norms and standards

prescribed by the Act. To address these challenges a structured ECD programme was developed and ECD service providers were workshopped on the content.

Since 2009 ECD Centres that were partial care sites had to be registered with the department as providing ECD services and at the end of the 2013/14 financial year 583 centres were registered. More than 67% (i.e. 391) of the registered ECD centres are funded by the DSD with almost a third (130 centres) located in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District. The state funded centres provide services to a total of 18146 children thus increasing access to services to children especially from the rural areas. The Department has also funded the purchase of various educational toys and equipment, particularly for the disadvantaged ECD centres to promote stimulation activities.

There are currently 52 private ECD sites registered in the province. Some of the private ECD sites have closed down due to the fact that they could not meet the norms and standards or the requirements of municipal by-laws.

The number of pre-Grade R children accessing ECD services in the province has more than doubled from 13 248 in 2009 to 26 690 in 2014 despite the fact that some of 5 year old children are attending Grade R classes. Furthermore, the number of ECD practitioners for the same period has increased from 225 (2009) to 1 749 (2014). This has led to a corresponding decrease in the ratio of learners to practitioners from 58.9 to 15,3.

The table below lists the number of Early Childhood Development Centres funded by the provincial government and the total annual expenditure incurred for the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 42: No. of and annual expenditure on ECD Centres from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Number of ECD centres	Expenditure in R'000
2009/10	374	26 533
2010/11	372	33 066
2011/12	371	49 737
2012/13	386	53 794
2013/14	583	

*Source: DSD Annual Reports*

The DSD in collaboration with other departments as well as the private sector has put the following ECD infrastructure in place:

- The construction of four ECD centres in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District.
- In partnership with the Kholomelo Mine has constructed three ECD centres in Postmasburg.
- The provision of four mobile units and toilets by the Department of Education in the Pixley ka Seme and Frances Baard Districts; and
- The construction of three centres in Kagung, Churchill and Mapiniki funded by the JTG Development Trust.

The DSD has a number of initiatives and programmes that address the challenges faced by children.

## 8. SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT

### 8.1 Human Settlements

#### 8.1.1 Formal Dwellings

Accordance to StatsSA: Census 2011 the number of formal dwellings in the Northern Cape is 248 358 which translates to 82,4% of the total number of households in the province and is the third highest in the country behind Limpopo at 89,8% and Mpumalaga at 83,8%. The trend over the last fifteen years has shown a significant increase of households living in formal dwellings which has improved from 78,3% in 1996 (Census 1996) to 81% (Census 2001) and 82,4% (Census 2011). This figure, however, is lower than the StatsSA: Community Survey 2007 figures that stood at 83,7%. This decrease in percentage can be attributed to the incorporation of the cross border municipalities that into the Northern Cape. The table below indicates the number of formal dwellings according to district.

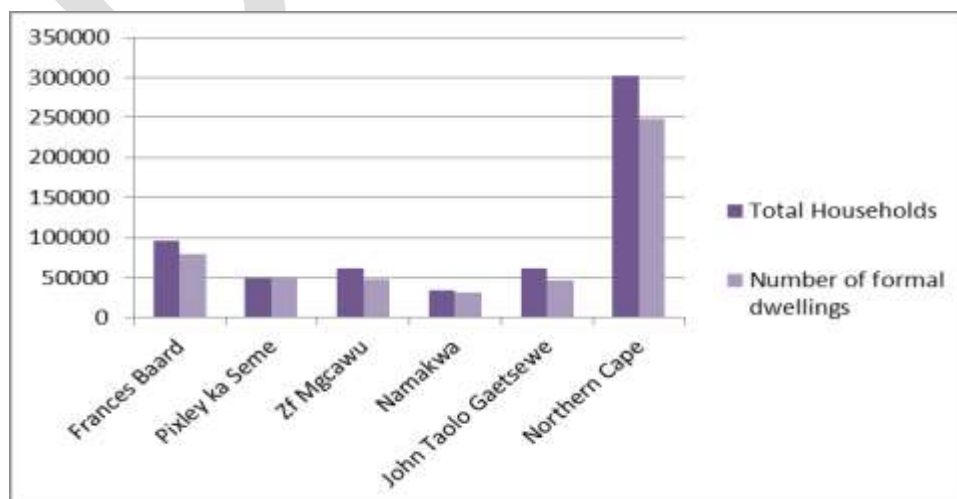
**Table 42: The number and the percentage of households in formal dwellings against the total number of households per district**

District	Total Households	Number of formal dwellings	% formal dwellings
Frances Baard	95 927	79 228	82,0
Pixley ka Seme	49 201	49 235	85,3
Zf Mgqawu	61 103	48 516	79,4
Namakwa	33 862	31 762	93,8
John Taolo Gaetsewe	61 333	46 981	76,6
Northern Cape	301 426	248 375	82,4

Source: StatsSA: Census 2011

The majority of households in the Northern Cape reside in formal dwellings with the highest proportion found in the Namakwa district at 93,8% followed by the Pixley ka Seme at 85,3%. The figure below depicts the number of formal dwellings against the total number of households according to district.

**Figure33 : The number of households in formal dwellings versus the total number of households per district**

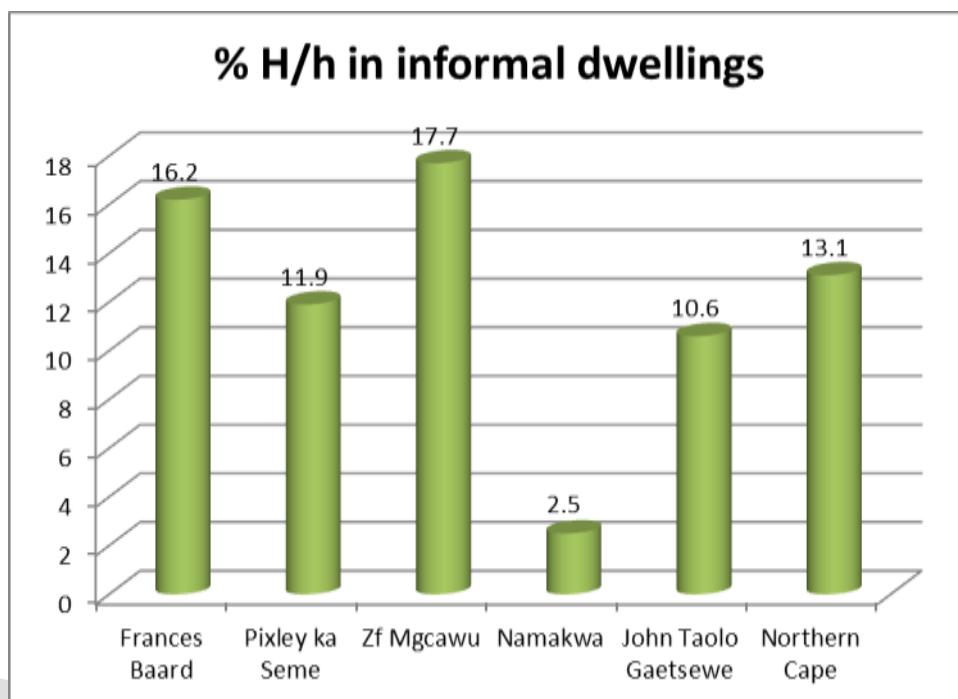


Source: StatsSA: Census 2011

### 8.1.2 Informal Dwellings

There has been an increase in the number of households living in informal dwellings from 11,3% according to 2001 Census to 13,1% in the 2011 Census. This can also be attributed to the incorporation of the cross boundary municipalities into the Northern Cape. It follows from the discussion on formal dwellings that Namakwa has the lowest percentage of households residing in informal dwellings at 2,5% and the ZF Mgcawu has the largest at 17,7%. The figure below illustrates the percentage informal dwellings in each district.

**Figure34: Percentage of households living in informal dwellings per district**



Source: StatsSA: Census 2011

The proportion of households that reside in traditional dwellings has declined significantly across the province from 7,7% in 1996 (Census 1996) to 3,2%.

### 8.1.3 Housing Delivery

Since the beginning of democracy the total number of housing units constructed in the Northern Cape is 60 239. The breakdown for each successive term of government since 1994 is indicated in the table below.

**Table 44: The no. of housing units delivered in 5 year cohorts from 1994 to 2014**

Period	Number of housing units delivered
1994/99	14 559
1999/2004	15 026
2004/2009	12 893
2009/2014	17 7 61
Total	60 239

Source: COGHSTA Annual Reports



**Figure 35: No. of housing units delivered per 5 year period between 1994 and 2014**



Source: COGHSTA Annual Reports

The total number of housing units delivered in the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14 is 17 761 and the number of houses delivered annually during the period is as follows:

- 2009/10 - 4 463
- 2010/11 - 4 620
- 2011/12 - 3 679
- 2012/13 - 2 739
- 2013/14 - 2 260

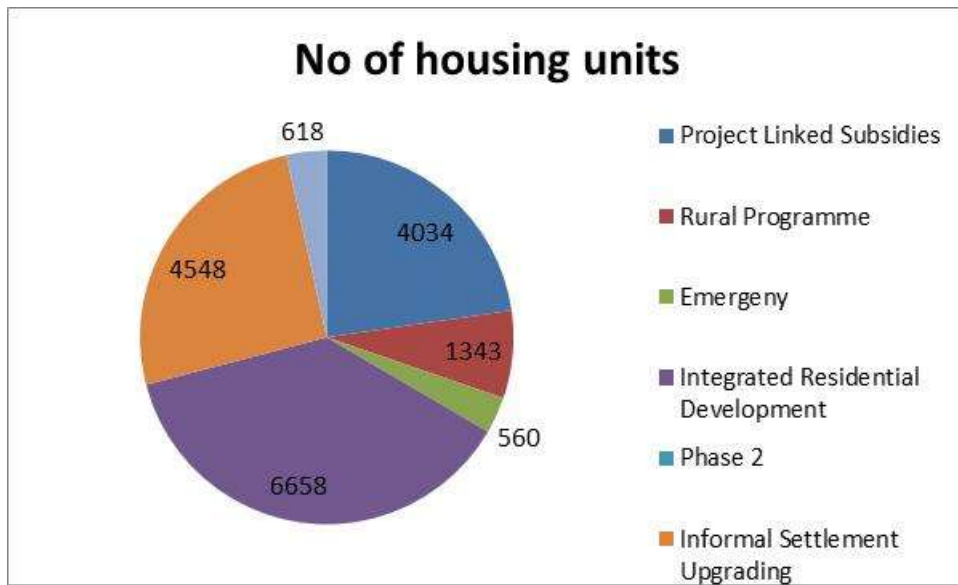
A breakdown of housing delivery according to the different programmes for the last five year period, namely 2009/10 to 2013/14, is indicated in the table below.

**Table 45: Distribution of houses built according to programme: 2009/10-2013/14**

Programme	No of housing units
Project Linked Subsidies	4 034
Rural Programme	1 343
Emergency	560
Integrated Residential Development Phase 2	6 658
Informal Settlement Upgrading	4 548
Other	618
<b>Total</b>	<b>17 761</b>

Source: COGHSTA Annual Reports

**Figure 36: Distribution of houses built according to programme: 2009/10-2013/14**



Source: COGHSTA Annual Reports

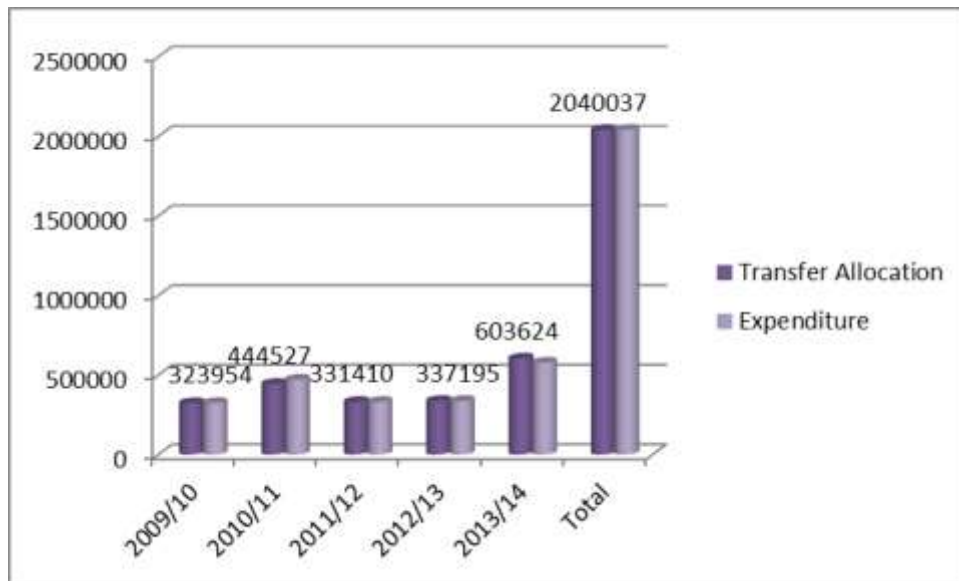
The annual housing allocation indicates no consistency with an actual decrease in the amount allocated in 2011/12 by over a R113 million with a huge increase from R337million in 2012/13 to R603m in 2013/14. On the expenditure side there has been a net minimal overspend on the five year allocation by R471 000. This has been made possible by an underspend of over R23m in the 2013/14 financial year. The annual allocation and expenditure over the last five years is indicated in the table below

**Table 46: Annual housing budget and expenditure from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Allocation R'000	Expenditure R'000
2009/10	323 281	323 954
2010/11	444 527	470 869
2011/12	331 410	330 882
2012/13	337 195	337 195
2013/14	603 624	577 608
<b>Total</b>	<b>2 040 037</b>	<b>2 040 508</b>

Source; COGHSTA Annual Reports

**Figure 37: Annual budget vs expenditure for housing from 2009/10 to 2013/14**



Source: COGHSTA Annual Reports

#### 8.1.4 Outcome 8: Sustainable Human Settlements and Improved: Quality of Household Life

##### 8.1.4.1 Sub Output 1.1: Upgrading of accommodation within informal settlements through the UISP

Under the Upgrading of Informal Settlement Programme (UISP) a total of 14 163 sites have been serviced and 8 077 units have been completed.

##### 8.1.4.2 Sub Output 1.2: National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP)

Six local municipalities have been identified for receiving support in terms of the NUSP and these are: Sol Plaatje, Phokwane, //Khara Hais, Ga-Segonyana, Gamagara and Tsantsabane. Pilot projects in Sol Plaatje, Phokwane, Gamagara and Tsantsabane have been completed and strategies and settlement plans have been submitted to the affected municipalities. A draft provincial strategy on informal settlements has been completed.

##### 8.1.4.3 Sub Output 1.3: Accreditation of Municipalities

A total of seven municipalities have been granted level 1 and level 2 accreditation and these are:

- Level 1 Accreditation
  - ❖ Emthanjeni
  - ❖ John Taolo Gaetsewe

- Level 2 Accreditation
  - ❖ Sol Plaatje
  - ❖ //Khara Hais
  - ❖ Frances Baard
  - ❖ Pixley ka Seme
  - ❖ ZF Mgcawu

#### 8.1.4.4 Sub Output 3: Acquisition of Land

Land has been acquired from Transnet/Servcon Property in Kimberley and Upington and three erfs have been purchased, two of which are in Upington with a total area of 24,25 hectares and the other in Kimberley with an area of 0,42 hectares.

#### 8.1.4.5 Sub Output 4: Increased provision of well located and affordable rental accommodation

At the end of the 2013/14 financial year 332 rental units were completed.

## 8.2 Access to Basic Services

### 8.2.1 Water

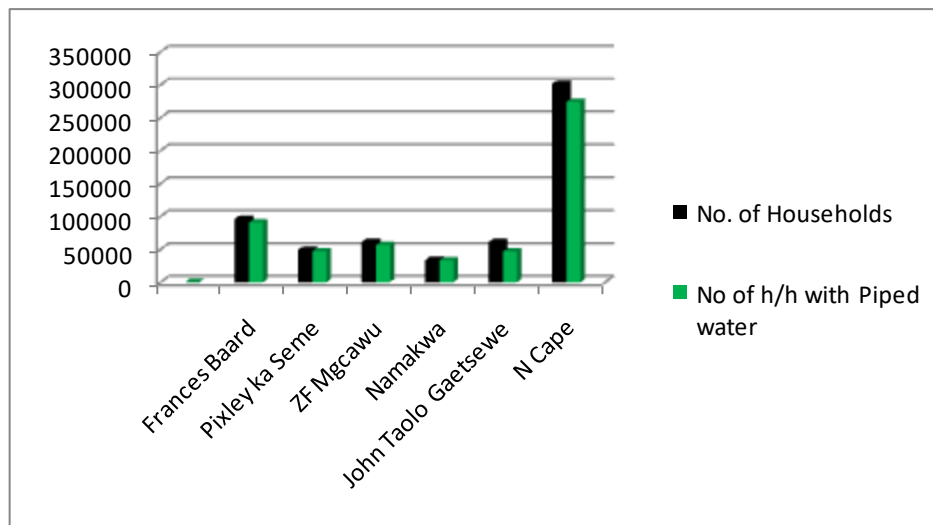
Access to piped water above or at RDP standards in the province has increased to 90,8% in 2011. In four of the five districts more than 92% of households have access to piped water with the Namakwa District having the largest percentage with 96,7% of households having access to piped water and the John Taolo Gaetsewe District with the lowest number of households at 75,8%. The table below indicates the total number of households (h/h) in each district and the number of households with piped water.

**Table 47: Total number of households and number of and % households with piped water per district**

District	No of h/h	No of h/h with piped water	% of h/h with piped water
Frances Baard	95927	90969	94,8
Pixley ka Seme	49201	46842	95,2
ZF Mgcawu	61103	56532	92,5
Namakwa	33862	32821	96,9
John Taolo Gaetsewe	61333	46480	75,8
N Cape	301426	273644	90,8

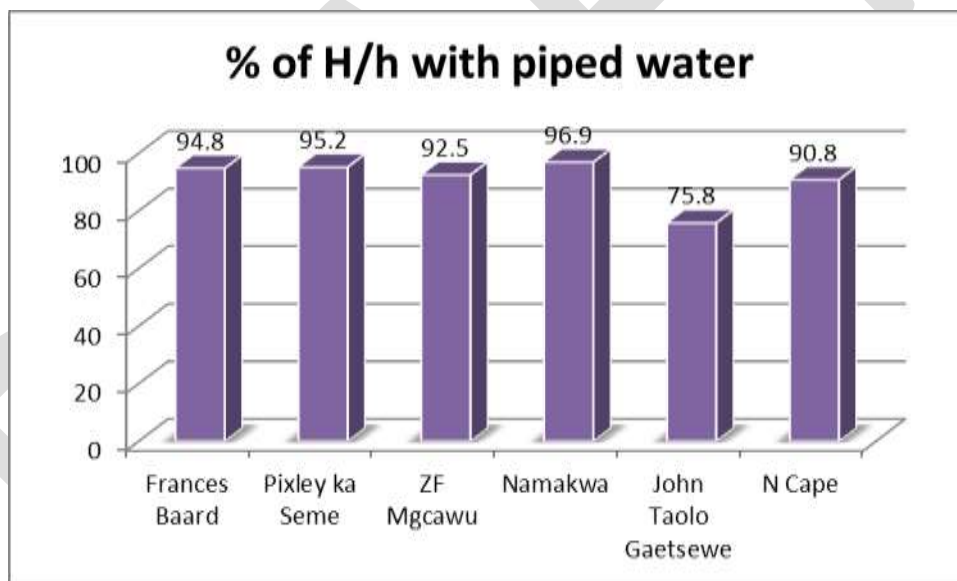
Source: MISA Report March 2013

**Figure 38: Total number of households against the number of households with piped water per district**



Source: MISA Report March 2013

**Figure 39: Percentage of households with piped water in each District**



Source: MISA Report March 2013

In seventeen of the twenty seven municipalities in the Northern Cape more than 95% of households have access to piped water with Gamagara the highest at 99% and all local municipalities in the Namakwa District have more than 95%. The local municipality with the lowest percentage of households having access to piped water is the Joe Morolong Municipality.

The total number of households having access to piped water equal to or above Reconstruction and Development standards was lower in 2011 at 90,8% than it was in 2008 where it stood at 95,6% of households in the province. This is due mainly to the fact that the cross-border municipalities straddling the Northern Cape and North West provinces that were incorporated into the Northern Cape were not accounted for in the Northern Cape in 2008.

In terms of water quality ten of local municipalities in the Northern Cape have a blue drop score of less than fifty per cent. The municipality with the highest score is Hantam at 81,64% with the Umsobomvu the lowest with a score of 15,76%. There are a number of municipalities that have failed to operate and manage drinking water quality according to set regulatory requirements and the ability of Umsobomvu, Renosterberg, Siyancuma and Mier local municipalities' ability to supply safe water continuously is a matter of great concern.

The provincial green drop score was 23% in 2011 which is also cause for concern. The assessment coverage included a total of 71 waste water systems for the Northern Cape. Whilst 20 systems obtained green drop scores of greater than 50% in 2009 only 9 systems obtained scores greater than 50% in the 2010/ 2011 Green Drop cycle. The number of systems with scores of less than 50% increased considerably to 62 systems in 2011. On average the green drop cycle scores decreased from 29% to 26,1% indicating a deterioration in waste water management in the province and confirms the above findings which places the Northern Cape amongst the lowest scores in the country.

### 8.2.2 Sanitation

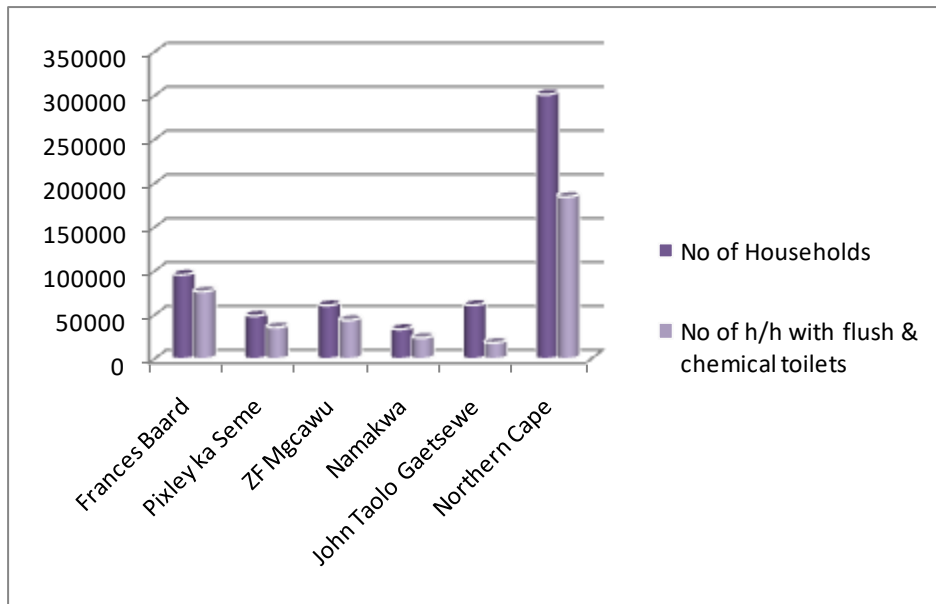
In 2011 the total number of households with access to flush/chemical toilets in all municipalities in the province was 200 593 or 66,5% of the total number of households. The district with the highest average percentage was the Frances Baard District at 80,1% which translates to 76 838 households and was followed by the Pixley ka Seme at 73,5% or 36 163 households. However, the provincial average is severely impacted upon by the John Taolo Gaetsewe district with an average of 30,9%. This is due to the fact that a large part of the district is very rural in nature with more than 160 villages spread throughout the Joe Morolong local municipality which are difficult to service because of the dispersed nature of the settlements and the scarcity of water.

**Table 48: The number of households with flush toilets and the percentage against the total number of households per district**

District	No of Households	No of Households with Flush & Chemical Toilets	% of Households with Flush & Chemical Toilets
Frances Baard	95 929	76 839	80,1
Pixley ka Seme	49 193	36 157	73,5
ZF Mgcawu	61 097	44 356	72,6
Namakwa	33 856	24 275	71,7
John Taolo Gaetsewe	61 331	18 951	30,9
Northern Cape	301 406	200 578	66,55

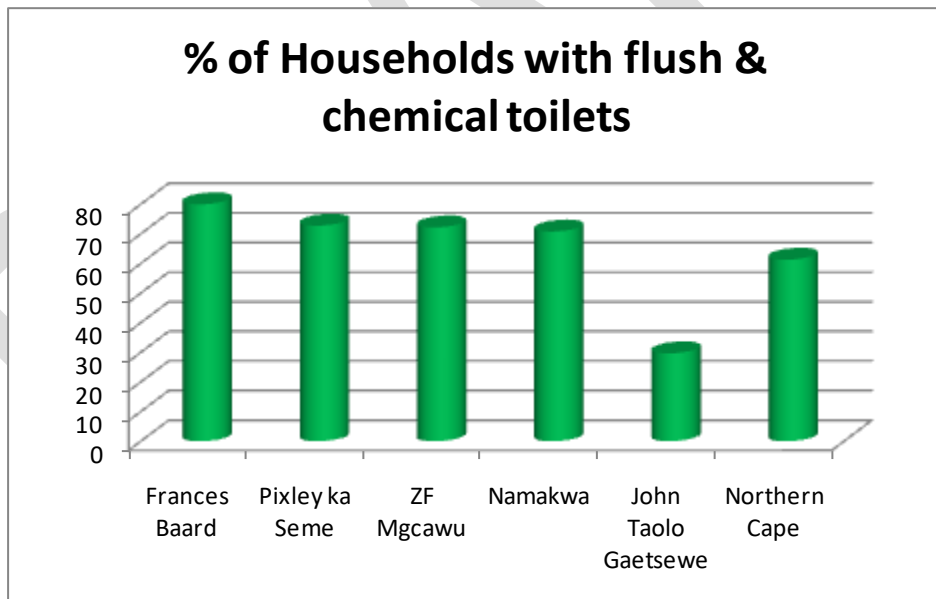
Source: StatsSA Census 2011

**Figure 40: The number of households with flush and chemical toilets versus the total number of households per district**



Source: StatsSA Census 2011

**Figure 41: Percentage of households with flush toilets per district**



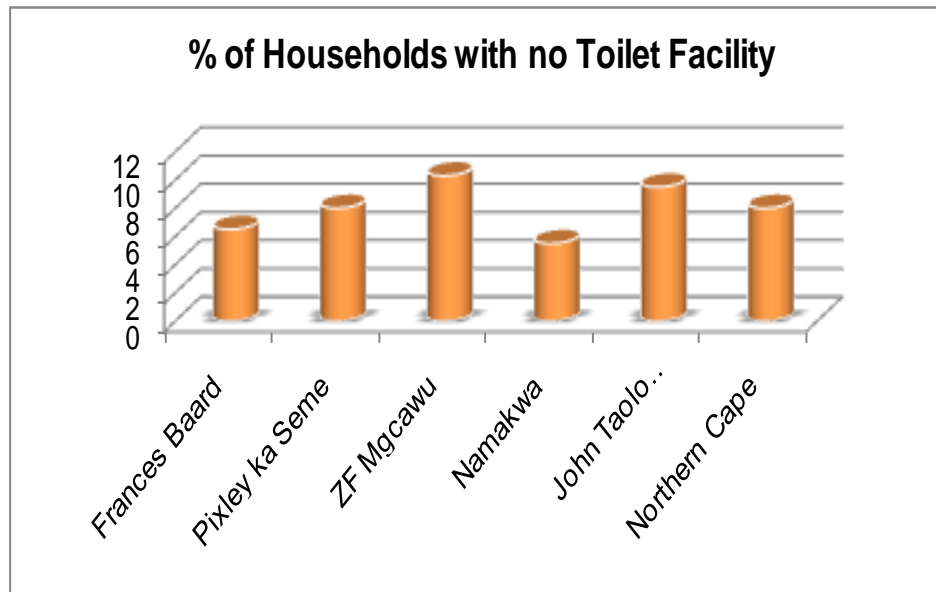
Source: StatsSA Census 2011

The Kgatelopele local municipality has the highest percentage of households with access to flush toilets which stands at 93,2%, followed by Gamagara at 87,6%, Emthanjeni at 85,1% and Sol Plaatje at 84,5%. Only 7,3% of households in the Joe Morolong local municipality have access to flush toilets.

There has been a general decrease in the proportion of households with no access to a toilet facility in all districts across the province from 13,1% in 2001 to 8,0% in 2011. The ZF Mgcawu district municipality has the largest percentage of households

with no access to a toilet facility at 10,3% and the Namakwa district municipality the lowest at 5,5%.

**Figure 42: Percentage of households with no toilets per district**



Source: StatsSA Census 2011

It is very disconcerting to record that the number of households utilising the bucket toilet system in the province has increased by almost two thousand from 6 633 in 2010 to 8 447 in 2011 (StatsSA).

### 8.2.3 Electricity

Household access to electricity has increased over the years in all municipalities reaching an average 85,4% for the province as a whole. The ZF Mgcawu district has the largest percentage of households with access to electricity with an average of 86,5% with the Frances Baard having the lowest of 83,2%.

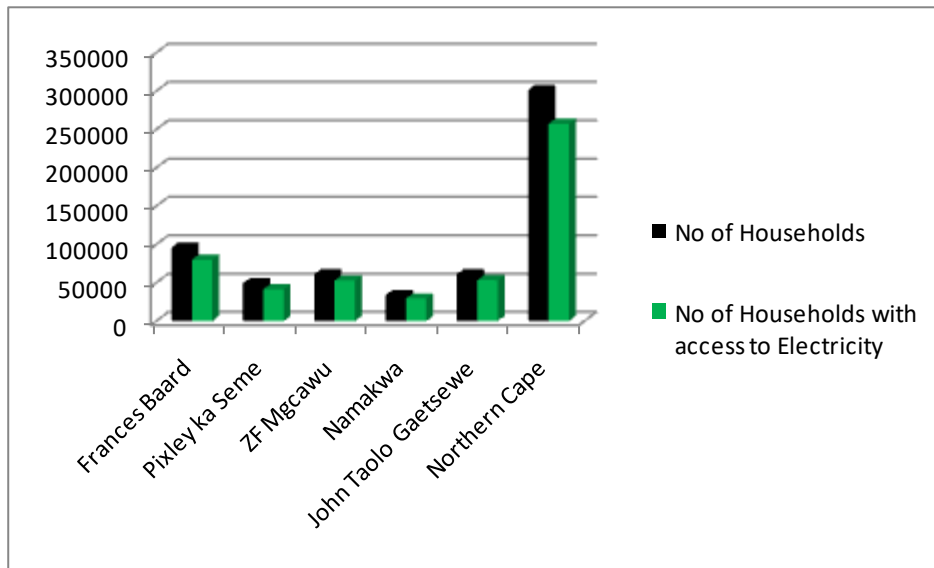
**Table 49: The number of and the percentage households with access to electricity against the total number of households per district**

District	No of Households	No of Households with access to Electricity	% Households with access to Electricity
Frances Baard	95 927	79 885	83,2
Pixley ka Seme	49 201	41 489	84,9
ZF Mgcawu	61 103	52 901	86,5
Namakwa	33 862	29 279	86,2
John Taolo Gaetsewe	61 333	53 331	86,8
Northern Cape	301 426	257 254	85,4

Source: MISA Report March 2013



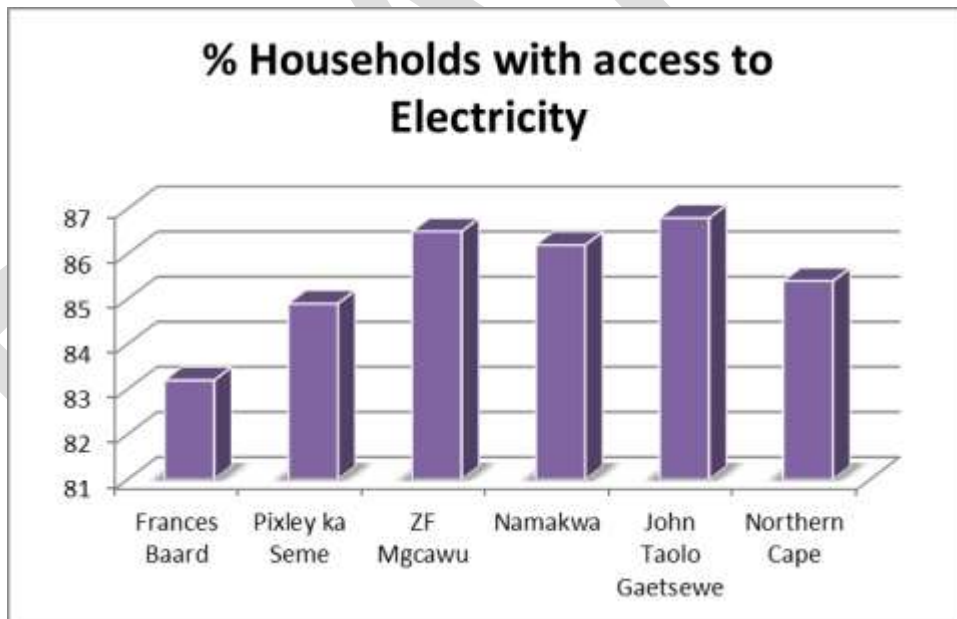
**Figure 43: The number of households with access to electricity versus the total number of households per district**



Source: MISA Report March 2013

**Figure 44: Percentage of households with access to electricity per district**

Source:  
MISA  
Report  
March  
2013



Source: MISA Report March 2013

The Richtersveld local municipality has the highest percentage of households with access to electricity with a figure of 93,4% and is followed by Nama Khoi at 93%, Emthanjeni at 91,7% and //Khara Hais at 90,8%. !Kheis and Karoo Hoogland local municipalities have the lowest percentage of households with access to electricity with 62,5% and 63,2% respectively. The backlog recorded in all municipalities regarding access to electricity is due in the main to informal settlements and new extensions.

### 8.2.4 Refuse Removal

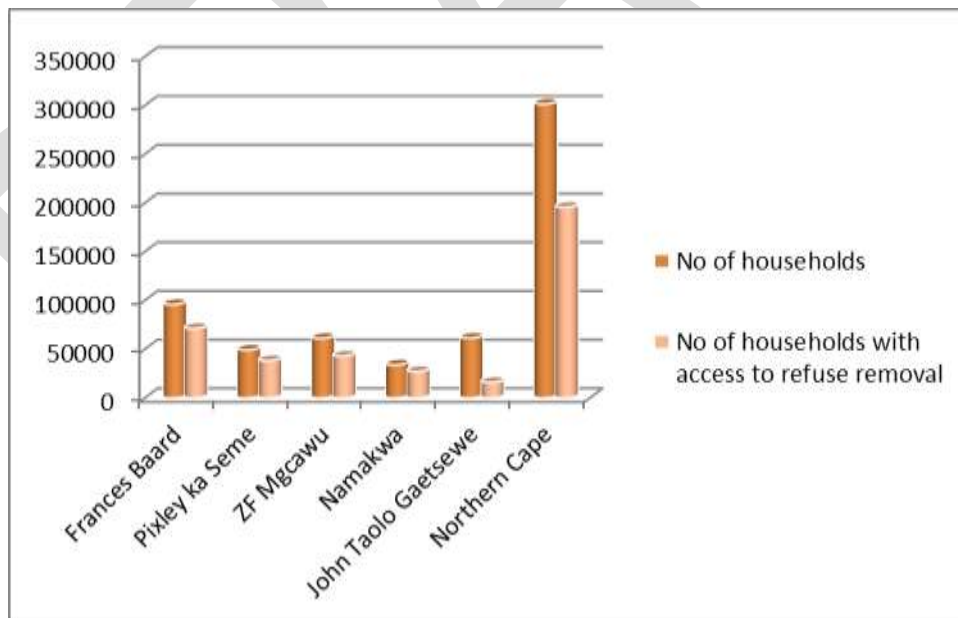
Access to refuse removal in all municipal areas in accordance with RDP levels, that is, at least once a week, is at 64,9%. At a district level, the Namakwa District has recorded the highest level of access with 80% followed by Pixley ke Seme with 77,7%. Once again the John Taolo Gaetsewe District has impacted significantly on the provincial average with a huge disparity compared with the rest of the province with an average percentage of just 26%.

**Table 50: The number of households with access to refuse removal and the percentage of households with access against the total number of households per district**

District	No of households	No of households with access to refuse removal	% of households with access to refuse removal
Frances Baard	95 927	71 279	74,3
Pixley ka Seme	49 201	38 221	77,7
Z F Mgqawu	61 103	42 949	70,3
Namakwa	33 862	27 100	80
John Taolo Gaetsewe	61 333	15 960	26
Northern Cape	301 426	195 509	64,9

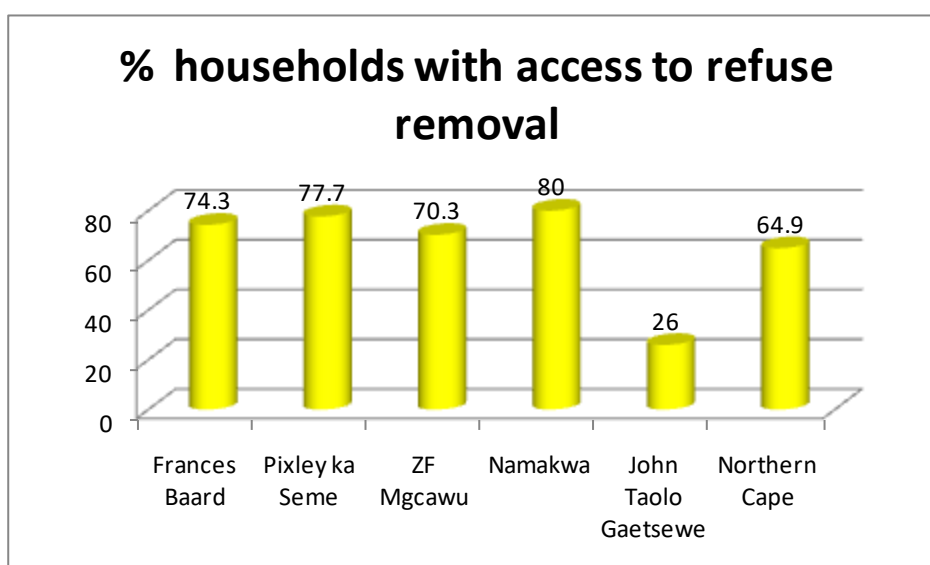
Source: MISA Report March 2013

**Figure 45: The number of households with access to refuse removal versus the total number of households per district**



Source: MISA Report March 2013

**Figure 46: Percentage of households with access to refuse removal per district**



Source: MISA Report March 2013

The proportion of households with refuse removal has increased in the province from 1996 to 2011 except for the Frances Baard District which has recorded a decrease from 79% in 1996 to 74,3% in 2011. The local municipalities with the highest percentage of households with access to refuse removal is Kgatelopele, Gamagara and Nama Khoi with 91,6%, 90,6 and 89,4% respectively. Those with the lowest are the Joe Morolong and Ga Segonyana local municipalities with 6,1% and 17,6% respectively.

### 8.3 Free Basic Services (FBS)

All municipalities in the province have indicated that they provide free basic services to indigent households. However, most municipalities do not have credible indigent policy that provide guidance on how and who is to be serviced.

#### 8.2.5 FBS Water and Sanitation

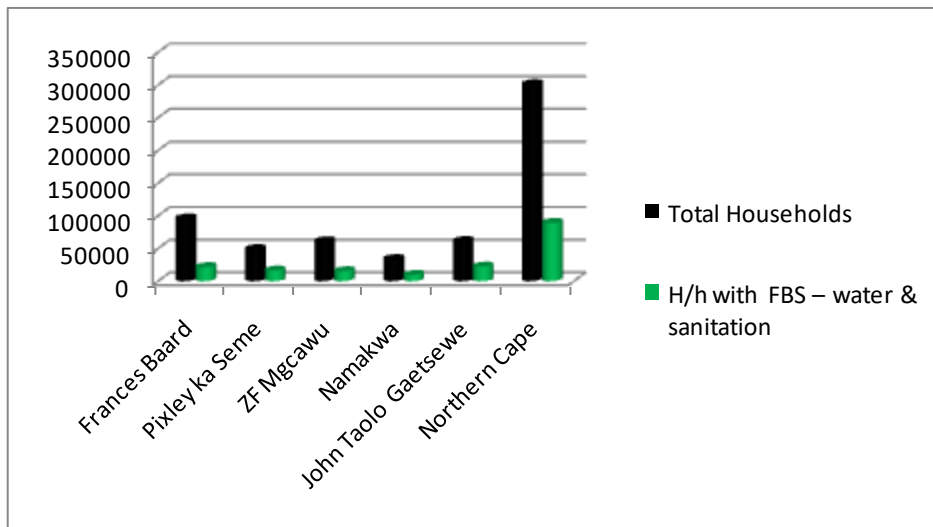
A total of 89 019 households in the Northern Cape have access to free basic water and sanitation which is less than 30% of the total households in the province. The breakdown according to district is provided in the table below.

**Table 51: The number of and the percentage of households with access to free basic water and sanitation against the total number of households per district**

District	Total Households	H/h with FBS – water & sanitation	% H/h FBS - water & sanitation
Frances Baard	95 927	21 443	22,4
Pixley ka Seme	49 201	16 324	33,2
Zf Mgcawu	61 103	15 344	25,1
Namakwa	33 862	9 584	28,3
John Taolo Gaetsewe	61 333	22 324	36,4
Northern Cape	301 426	89 019	29,5

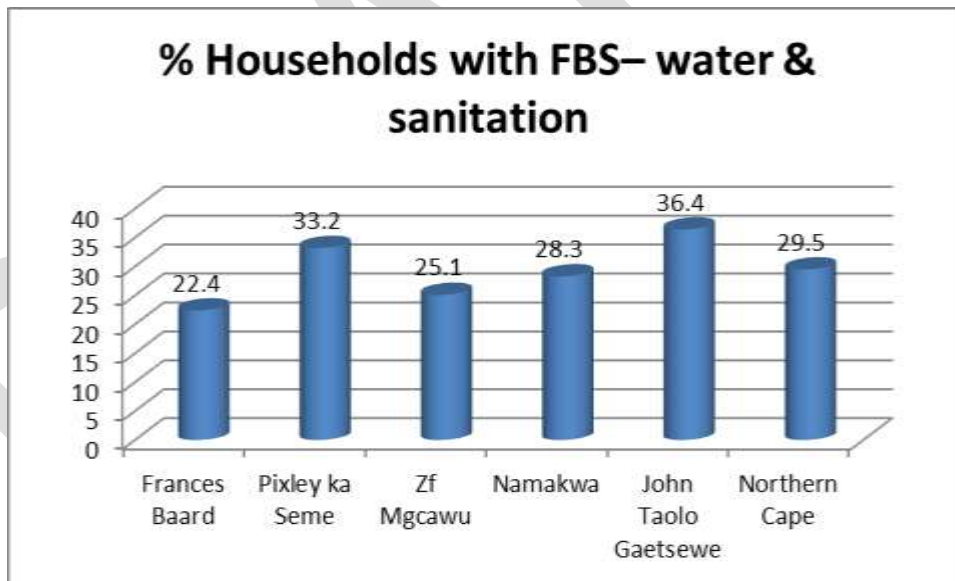
Source: MISA Report March 2013

**Figure 47: The number of households with access to free basic water and sanitation versus the total number of households per district**



Source: MISA Report March 2013

**Figure 48: Percentage of households with access to free basic water and sanitation per district**



Source: MISA Report March 2013

John Taolo Gaetsewe District has the largest percentage and number of households with access to free basic water and sanitation at 36,4% and is followed by the Pixley ka Seme at 33,2%. The district with the lowest number of households with access to free basic water and sanitation is the Frances Baard District at 22,4%. The Joe Morolong local municipality has by far the largest number of households with access to free basic water and sanitation with a total of 20 000 or 84,4%.

It should be noted that the data used above has been obtained on request from the local municipalities and as such is difficult to verify or substantiate. However, despite this shortcoming an analysis of this information illustrates that although the districts with the highest poverty levels have the most households with access to free basic

water and sanitation it is more than likely that not all indigent households in the province are benefiting from this service.

### 8.3 Municipal Infrastructure Grant

The allocations for the Municipal Infrastructure Grant are made directly to the local municipalities with COGHSTA playing a monitoring role. The allocation for each of the financial years is indicated in the table below.

**Table 52: Annual allocation for MIG from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

District	2009/10 R'000	2010/11 R'000	2011/12 R'000	2012/13 R'000	2013/14 R'000
John Taolo Gaetsewe		66 486	100 851	122 339	118 647
Namakwa		43 595	58 738	71 249	
Pixley ka Seme		67 996	88 963	107 177	
ZF Mgcawu		57 388	77 248	93 813	
Frances Baard		75 880	99 014	120 110	
Northern Cape		353 286 311 345	424 904 428 814	515 429 514 688	

Source: COGHSTA

Only 2 of the 27 local municipalities, namely, Gamagara and Kareeberg, have spent 100% of their MIG allocations over three consecutive financial years, that is, 2010/11, 2011/12 and 2012/13. The municipalities listed below have underspent on their allocations for every year of the same three year period:

- Richtersveld
- Nama Khoi
- Kamiesberg
- Siyancuma
- //Khara Hais
- Renosterberg
- Thembelihle
- Kai! Garib
- Sol Plaatje; and
- Magareng

The Kgatelopele local municipality spent only 2% in the 2011/12 and zero per cent in the 2012/13 financial years. Despite interventions by the department such as assistance with the registration of projects there has been no improvement in expenditure. In general, reasons for the under-expenditure varies from poor planning, non-registration of projects, delays by sector departments, lack of commitment by municipal officials and change of project lists.

## **8.4 Disaster Management**

Disaster management centres have been established in the Frances Baard and Namakwa District municipalities as well as the local municipalities in both districts. The disaster management centre in the ZF Mgcawu District municipality is in the process of being established.

Frances Baard, Pixley ka Seme, John Taolo Gaetsewe and Namakwa District municipalities have disaster management frameworks in place with the ZF Mgcawu in the process of developing their framework.

DRAFT

## **9. SPORTS, ARTS AND CULTURE**

The role of the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture has always been to intensify service delivery by aligning all programmes with its constitutional mandates and towards the broad transformational agenda of society. In line with this, the department has adopted as its core mandate the promotion of social cohesion and nation building to ensure an inclusive citizenry. In this regard, the Department responds to Outcome 12B which speaks to an Empowered and Fair inclusive citizenry.

### **9.1 Social Cohesion and Nation Building**

Democratic elections alone cannot guarantee unconditional participation and a united nation. For this purpose government has to implement specific programmes aimed at social cohesion and nation building. Social cohesion is defined as the “degree of social integration and inclusion in communities and society at large and the extent to which mutual solidarity finds expression among individuals and communities”. Accordingly, a society is cohesive to the extent that inequalities and exclusions based on ethnicity, gender class, disability and age, amongst other things, which engender divisions or conflict are reduced and/or eliminated in a planned and sustained manner. The ultimate goal of social cohesion is the peaceful existence of citizens who are gainfully employed and free from deprivation and discrimination.

It can be argued that the outcome of the collective sum of government’s programmes and initiatives finds expression and resonates to the extent that social cohesion is attained within the society for which these programmes and initiatives were intended. Social cohesion thus constitutes the pinnacle at which all delivery converges.

Although Sports, Arts and Culture is tasked to lead the process of promoting social cohesion and nation building, the contribution of other sectors cannot be discounted or underestimated. Various activities are conducted by the different sectors of government such as awareness campaigns on the rights of people (Justice and Constitutional Development), provision of houses (COGHSTA) and identity documents (Department of Home Affairs), singing of the national anthem (Department of Education) and many other activities by Sport, Arts and Culture, details of which are listed later in this report.

### **9.2 Cultural Affairs**

#### **9.2.1 Promotion of Arts and Culture**

The arts and culture sector has experienced a perturbing decline over the past few years as a result of little or no financial support. Areas that have been negatively affected by a lack of investment include art facilities, talent identification programmes and skills development programmes. The only infrastructure project that has been undertaken in the province in the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14 has been the upgrading of the Northern Cape Theatre which is currently still in progress.

Despite the lack of funds the department has commenced with a process of assisting with the establishment of community art centres in the province. In this regard it has established the Kapa Bokone Community Arts Centre Forum in 2013 with regional structures in all Districts.

The New Growth Path has charted a new approach for the arts and culture sector through the adoption of the "Mzansi Golden Economy" (MGE). The MGE focuses on, amongst, other things, education and skills development, establishment of a sourcing enterprise, the promotion of cultural events and information centres and the public arts programme. In response to this mandate the department has embarked on a consolidation of the Northern Cape Arts and Culture Council, the development of a comprehensive database of art practitioners and the establishment of community art centres.

Some of the more significant achievements in the period 2009/10 to 2013/14 are the following:

- Providing training opportunities to 3 511 artists and crafters.
- Providing support to one cultural entity.
- In partnership with other role-players has hosted various festivals such as the Kalahari Desert festival, the Namaqua Festival and the Diamonds and Dorings festival; the artists in schools programme and the Northern Cape has talent programme.
- Hosting of the Aluta Film festival since 2009.
- Hosting of the biennial Northern Cape has talent project that showcases exceptional talent in music, poetry, drama and art.
- A provincial craft catalogue was finalised in 2009; and
- Provided support to 5 students to study film and drama with the aim of establishing a film and drama school.

#### **9.2.1.1 Commemorative Events**

Each year the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture host 6 commemorative days in the cultural calendar. These days are designed to celebrate our cultural heritage and provide opportunities for artists and crafters from all cultural backgrounds to showcase their potential. The following commemorative days are celebrated:

- Human Rights Day
- Freedom Day
- Youth Day
- Women's Day
- Heritage Day
- Day of Reconciliation

These cultural celebrations are usually well attended and very successful. The only challenge is that representation by all population groups is not what it is hoped to



be. New strategies need to be developed to ensure all inclusive participation on a voluntary basis.

#### **9.2.1.2 Mayibuye Centre**

The Mayibuye Centre in Kimberley is the only arts and culture centre of its kind in the province. It is responsible for providing support and services to art practitioners in the Frances Baard and surrounding areas. Support is provided mainly to drama and theatre groups, sports groups, bands and dance groups. Furthermore, this centre is home of four academies, namely, music, drama, dance and visual art and craft. The main objective of these academies is to provide for skills development programmes. The demand for these services has grown to such an extent that the current waiting list far exceeds the enrolment capacity.

#### **9.2.2 Heritage Resource Services**

Heritage Services plays a fundamental role in promoting social cohesion through, amongst other things, maintenance of heritage sites. This service is responsible for the conservation of and research into the natural and cultural heritage of the Northern Cape.

##### **9.2.2.1 Honouring Heroes and Heroines**

Since 2009 the province has hosted forty three (43) events honouring the heroes and heroines of our province. These include the erection of memorials, the declaration of burial sites, the erection of commemorative plaques, hosting of memorial lectures and book launches.

Furthermore, the repatriation of the remains in 2012 of the SAN couple, Klaas and Trooi Pienaar, from Austria to their ancestral land, is noteworthy of mention. Klaas and Trooi Pienaar were unethically exhumed and taken to Austria for racial research in the early 1900's. They remained in Austrian museum collections until returned to South Africa in April 2012 and reburied in the Northern Cape in August 2012.

##### **9.2.2.2 World Heritage Site**

The declaration of the Richtersveld as a World Heritage Site in June 2007 is a notable success in preservation of the heritage of the Province. There are currently six sites in the Northern Cape that are on the SA tentative list for World Heritage nomination. These include the Wonderwerk Cave (Kuruman), Khomanisan Cultural Landscape (outside Upington), !Xam Cultural Landscape (Hantam), Big Hole (Kimberley), Namakwaland Copper Mining Landscape and the serial nomination, Succulent Karoo Biome.

##### **9.2.2.3 Name Change Process**

Social Cohesion could also be fostered through redressing derogatory names from the past. In this regard, the Name Change process was not very successful for various reasons stemming from capacity constraints to slow turnaround time by municipalities. The Department of Sport, Arts and Culture is primarily responsible for the naming and renaming of existing and new buildings. Furthermore, in conjunction with the Provincial Geographic Name Change Council, the department assists municipalities with the Name Change process. The following are some of the naming and renaming processes have been concluded since 2009:

- IK Nkoane Education House (Kimberley)
- The Mittah Seperepere Convention Centre (Kimberley)
- MO Mothibi Library (Hartswater)
- Phakamile Mabija Road (Kimberley)
- Sol Plaatje Drive (Kimberley - Council put on Hold due to family request)
- Joe Morolong Municipality (Moshaweng)
- John Taolo Gaetsewe (Kuruman)
- Dr Pixley Ka Seme Street (De Aar)
- Robert Gunda Stadion (Upington)
- Jakobus Maasdorp Sportgronde (Upington)
- Moses Links Gemeenskapsaal (Upington)
- Dr Nelson Mandela Drive (Upington)
- Anton Lubowski Road (Upington)
- Rev Aubrey Beukes Street (Upington)
- Upington 26 Avenue (Upington)
- Betty Peters Library (Nababeep)

The process of name changes continues with support to the Provincial Language Council (PLC) and Provincial Geographic Name Changes Council (PGNC). Supporting the PGNC and municipalities in effecting name changes is paramount to social cohesion.

### **9.2.3 Museum Services**

The provincial government, through the McGregor Museum Board, is responsible for the management and maintenance of thirteen museums throughout the province. Of these nine are located in the Frances Baard district, two in the Pixley KA Seme and one each in ZF Mgcawu and Namaqua.

The Department has embarked on a programme with the objective of increasing the number of visitors to the museums. This programme has had relative success in that just under 100 000 people have visited the museums over the five year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14. The most frequently visited museum is the Sanatorium Museum in Kimberley that played host to 44 828 visitors in the five year period mentioned, followed by Magersfontein with 18 887 visitors and Victoria West Museum with 13 086 visitors.

#### **9.2.3.1 Exhibitions**

There are on-going attempts to make the provincial museums representative of the people and history of the Northern Cape. The permanent exhibition of *The Journey to Democracy: History of the liberation struggle in the Northern Cape 1850-1994* at the McGregor Museum is a case in point. Other noteworthy successes of museum services are 3 publications titled "*The struggle for liberation and freedom in the Northern Cape 1850-1994*", "*Resistance in the Northern Cape in the nineteenth*

century: history and commemoration” and “The ANC in the Northern Cape from 1912\_1994: an easy to read introduction”. These books depict the role of various individuals and organisations against colonialism and apartheid in the nineteenth and twentieth century.

## 9.2.4 Language Services

### 9.2.4.1 Promoting Multilingualism

Multilingualism is promoted through specific activities such as translations, language training, interpreting services and literary exhibitions. The purpose is to promote inclusivity, in addition to promoting reading as well as the proper understanding of government documents. Source documents are translated into the three other official languages of the province.

Training programmes are held annually in sign- and additional languages. Furthermore, in collaboration with library services, book clubs are continuously established and supported throughout the province.

## 9.3 Library and Archive Services

### 9.3.1 Library Services

Although Library services is classified as an exclusive competence of provinces in terms of the Constitution this service is still a shared function. The main source of funding for library services is by way of a conditional grant. Community libraries are the only structures with an extended footprint in the province as there are no academic and special library services as well as no functioning school library system. Support is also provided to toy libraries in hospitals and Early Childhood Development centres.

Provincial libraries have been supplied with more than 270 000 library materials over the past MTSF. In order to expand access to reading material to all communities in the Northern Cape container and mobile library services have also been provided in addition to the conventional community libraries. These libraries are spread across the whole province and the table below provides a breakdown of each type of library according to District.

**Table 53: Number of libraries according to type in each district**

District	Community Libraries	Container libraries	Mobile Library	Total
Frances Baard	37	5	8	<b>50</b>
Pixley ka Seme	26	5	8	<b>39</b>
John Taolo Gaetsewe	15	26	1	<b>42</b>
ZF Mgcawu	16	5	22	<b>43</b>
Namaqua	36	9	3	<b>48</b>
<b>Total</b>	130	50	42	

Source: DSAC

The focus of library services since 2010 has been in response to the priorities of government with the emphasis on rural areas development and, in particular, the War on Poverty wards. During this period a total of nine (9) container libraries and nine (9) mobile book boxes have been established and operationalised across the

districts in the province, The table below indicates the location and establishment of container libraries in the different districts.

**Table 54: Container libraries established in WOP wards since 2010**

<b>Namakwa</b>	<b>Pixley ka Seme</b>	<b>Frances Baard</b>	<b>JTG</b>	<b>ZF Mgcawu</b>
Soebatsfontein	Keurtjieskloof	Longlands	Tsineng	nil
Spoegrivier	Pampoenpoort	Ganspan		
Paulshoek				
Rooifontein				

Source: DSAC

**Table 55: Mobile book boxes established in WOP wards since 2010**

<b>Namakwa</b>	<b>Pixley ka Seme</b>	<b>Frances Baard</b>	<b>JTG</b>	<b>ZF Mgcawu</b>
Nourivier	Vlugfontein	Sidneys Hope	nil	Rietfontein
Kamassies	Victoria West			Ashkam
Kharkhams				Welkom

Source: DSAC

### 9.3.1.1 Northern Cape Annual Writer's Festival

The Department of Sport, Arts and Culture attracted national and international attention with the launch in 2009 of the inaugural Northern Cape Writers Festival. This annual festival has grown from strength to strength and continues to promote writing, poetry, debate and art within the Province.

This festival comprises activities including a children's festival, song and dance, poetry sessions, roundtable discussions by published and upcoming authors, exhibitions showcasing natural talent, and creative writing workshops. Many learners who have participated in the creative writing workshops have had their work published.

Writers such as Don Materra, James Matthews, Marita van der Vyfer, Deon Meyer and local writer Sabata Mokae have participated in discussions at the festival and have visited local schools to inspire learners.

### 9.3.1.2 Support to Municipalities

The department allocates funding to municipalities annually for the following:

- To promote current awareness.
- Facilitate maintenance; and
- Appoint additional staff as part of job creation.

### **9.3.1.3 Reading Promotion Programme**

Funding is provided annually for the promotion of reading in the province, in support of Outcome 1. Some of the programmes funded through this initiative are the following:

- Run-to-read.
- June and December holiday programmes.
- Hosting of a library week.
- Hosting of a World Book Day; and
- The Premier's choice reading competition

### **9.3.2 Archive Services**

The Northern Cape Provincial Archives derives its mandate from the National Archives and Record Services Act, Act 43 of 1996, as amended, to ensure compliance by departments, municipalities and all statutory bodies. This service is responsible for ensuring good and clean administration through management of records enabling accountability by government in the future for past actions. The availability of data provides a body of evidence for credible decision-making in the future.

At the beginning of the 2009-2014 Medium Term Expenditure Framework the Provincial Archives unit serviced only 22 clients across the province. Through expansion of its services as well as comprehensive staff training programmes archival services are currently being provided to its entire client base that numbers 55 but excludes statutory bodies.

The province is in the process of establishing a fully fledged Provincial Archives Repository in Kimberley. The first phase of the construction of the Repository was completed in 2012 and activation of it becomes of paramount importance. A very important project will be the repatriation of archival heritage from the Western Cape to our provincial repository and negotiations with the Western Cape is in an advanced stage with the finalising of a memorandum of understanding for the repatriation of documents methodically.

The Archives Unit renders a service to both internal and external stakeholders.

## **9.4 Sport and Recreation**

Sport and recreation has as its main objective the creation of a crime-free and healthy society as well as the realisation of the slogan that "A child in sport is a child out of court". The sport programmes, in the main, are concerned with the following:

- Providing assistance to provincial sport associations and other relevant bodies to stimulate sport development.
- Capacity building programmes directed at skills development and job creation.
- Supporting the provincial sport academy that is responsible for, inter alia, a high performance programme that prepares athletes for participation at a national level.

- Contributing towards sports marketing strategies and the promotion and development of sports tourism through major events, including international events; and
- Facilitating the development of sport facilities with a view of improving the life of the disadvantaged.

#### 9.4.1 Sport Development

Some of the key achievements with regards to the abovementioned programmes include the following:

- Providing support to thirty five (35) sports federations that are affiliated to the Northern Cape Sports Council as well as other relevant bodies involved with sport.
- Supported a total of 1 287 athletes in high performance and development programmes over a five year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14.

The table below illustrates the number of learners offered high performance training (HPT) annually by the Northern Cape Sport Academy over the period 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 56: The number of learners that received HPT from 2009/10 TO 2013/14**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
No. of learners	20	241	278	260	118

*Source: DSAC*

- Conducted training programmes and trained 809 sport administrators, coaches and officials over the five year period mentioned above. The annual breakdown is as follows: 2009/10 – 173, 2010/11 – 113, 2011/12 – 68, 2012/13- 200 and 2013/14- 255.
- The hosting of an international event, the Kimberly Skate-boarding Championships, that attracts participants from all parts of the world and which is held on an annual basis.

Finally, four multi-purpose sports centres have been established in Jan Kempdorp, Postmasburg, Griekwastad and Cassel. A fifth one in Port Nolloth is still under construction and at the time of compiling this report it was 80% complete.

#### 9.4.2 Recreation

The main purpose of recreation is to manage, promote and present development programmes that encourage healthy lifestyles. One such programme is the Siyadlala Mass Participation programme that attracts over 3 000 participants each year and has been held annually since 2009.

Since 2012 youth camps have been hosted with the aim of promoting social dialogue between different races as well as different cultural groups. More than 300 youth from across the province have participated in these camps.

Various recreational events are hosted to promote social cohesion and nation building. These include the following:

- Annual youth camps where participants from different races are invited and cross cultural interaction is promoted.
- Hosting the “Big Walk” annually to promote healthy lifestyles
- Aerobic programmes for old and young persons.
- Recreational activities and indigenous games on a daily basis
- Diversion programmes during school holidays; and
- ‘Recrehab’ consisting of rehabilitation programmes for inmates and youth at risk in secure care centres.

### 9.4.3 School Sport

It must be noted that school sport is dogged by the uncertainty of the roles and responsibilities of the Departments of Sport, Arts and Culture and Education. This problem is compounded by the fact that while Education is responsible for sport at the school level DSAC is responsible for supporting learners that participate at provincial and national levels. Despite this DSAC has been able to assist learners participating at provincial and national levels and the number of learners supported annually is provided in the table that follows.

**Table 57: No. of learners assisted in provincial & national tournaments 2009/10-2013/14**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
No of Learners	2 114	4 218	209	2 120	669

*Source: DSAC*

## **10. SAFETY AND SECURITY**

### **10.1 Background**

Although significant progress has been made in the fight against crime and corruption in the last twenty years in the Northern Cape Province the crime rate remains relatively high. The reduction of the high crime levels is one of the key priorities of government in its quest to ensure a safer and more secure environment for all communities.

In accordance with this, the provincial government adopted a Northern Cape Crime Prevention Strategy, the implementation of which commenced in the 2012/2013 financial year. In its endeavour to further intensify the fight against crime the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison has forged partnerships with other sector departments and external stakeholders, including Community Police Forums, Women against Crime, Youth against Crime, the Business Sector, all religious formations and Traditional Leaders.

The province has become known for the violent nature of the crimes that occur and the main focus is therefore on contact crimes and crimes against women and children. These crimes remain the biggest challenge as 80% of these crimes take place within a circle of domestic related members or friends. The response from government to address this violence against women and children include a more effective criminal justice system, strict law enforcement, restorative justice, reintegration programmes for ex-offenders, and public education and awareness campaigns.

In ensuring a safe and secure community in the province, government is furthermore faced with a challenge of addressing the social factors, such as dysfunctional families, child-headed households, unemployment, poverty and substance abuse, that directly impact on crime. Addressing these factors that contribute in a major way towards crime will ensure that crime is addressed in a sustainable manner in the long-term.

### **10.2 Crime Rates**

#### **10.2.1 Serious Crimes 2009-2013**

The main focus of the province in the fight against crime is to address what is classified as serious crimes as well as the contributing factors that lead to serious crime. Serious crimes comprise of seven broad categories and the table below indicates the crimes reported to SAPS according to the seven categories for the five year period 2008/2009 to 2012/2013.



**Table 58: No. of serious crimes reported to SAPS from 2008/09 to 2012/2013**

Priority Crimes	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	% of Total
Contact crimes	21 148	20426	19027	18084	18 696	38.9%
Contact related crimes	3 439	3273	2973	2997	3 316	6.5%
Property related crimes	11 457	11665	10977	11173	12 626	24.1%
Police initiated crimes	3 251	3706	3532	3596	3 755	7.7%
Other serious crime	11 113	10782	9185	9351	9 225	20.1%
Trio-crimes*	173	225	216	313	347	0.7%
Other crimes	1318	1286	1227	1237	1254	2.7%
Grand total	51 899	51138	46921	46438	49 219	100%

*Source: SAPS Annual Release of Crime Statistics*

Of all the serious crimes, contact crimes has the highest incidence and over the five year period 2008/09 to 2012/13 averaged slightly less than 40% of all crimes committed in that period. However, between the 2008/2009 and 2011/2012 financial years there was a significant drop in the rate of contact crimes and it decreased by 14.5%. The rate of attempted murder experienced the highest decrease of 25,7% and this was followed by common robbery which decreased by 17,7% over the same five year period.

It must be noted that the province embarked on an integrated approach involving national and provincial government departments to address the high prevalence of contact crimes. The decrease in the contact crimes for the above mentioned period is a direct result of the integrated approach which specifically focused on the social issues that contributed to this category of crime.

#### **10.2.1.1 Contact Crimes**

As mentioned in the section above almost two out of every five serious crimes committed in the Northern Cape are contact crimes which are loosely defined as a crime against a person.

**Table 59: Crime statistics related to contact crimes for the period 2008/09-2012/13**

Contact Crimes	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	% of Total
Murder	411	381	342	368	412	2.0%
Total Sexual Offences	1 917	1845	1868	1738	1 844	9.6%
Attempted murder	731	711	649	549	543	3.0%
Assault GBH	9 961	9533	9002	8432	8679	46.6%
Common assault	5 606	5574	5099	5077	4 905	28.1%

Robbery with aggravating circumstances	1 219	1037	891	970	1 241	5.4%
Robbery common	1 303	1345	1176	950	1 072	5.3%
Grand Total	21 148	20426	19027	18084	18 696	100.0%

*Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics*

The contact crimes reported for the period 2008/09 to 2012/13, shows an overall decrease in crimes reported with an average decrease of 11,5% over the same period. In the 2012/2013 financial year the number of reported crimes in all categories increased compared to the 2011/2012 year except for common assault and attempted murder which showed minimal decreases. Over the five years covered in Table 59 above, of the 7 crimes classified under contact crimes assault with intent to inflict grievous bodily harm (Assault GBH) has the highest incidence rate at 46.62%, common assault is next at 28,1% and third highest is total sexual offences at 9,6%.

Despite the unacceptably high prevalence rate of sexual offences some progress was made with the implementation of the Provincial Anti-Rape Strategy in the past three years. One of the main challenges contributing towards the occurrence of rape is substance abuse, and more specifically alcohol abuse. The majority of the crimes take place in a domestic relationship or between people that are familiar with each other. According to the SAPS Crime Information Analysis Centre (CIAC), in the majority of the cases, the victim or the perpetrator or both were under the influence of alcohol when the crime was committed.

The anti-rape strategy focuses on three pillars:

- Pillar I: Prevention
- Pillar II: Reactive Response to the occurrence of rape
- Pillar III: Victim Support

The following successes were achieved in relation to the implementation of the strategy;-

***Pillar I: Prevention of rape***

Pillar I focuses on public information, education and awareness of rape and sexual offences. Annually the following national commemorative events are celebrated as part of the focus:

- Child Protection Week: May/June
- Youth Month: June
- Women's Month: August
- 16 Days of Activism: November/ December

The focus of law enforcement agencies was on the illegal selling of alcohol and the following successes were achieved the past four years:

<b>Actions</b>	<b>2009/2010</b>	<b>2010/2011</b>	<b>2011/2012</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>
Owners of liquor outlets charged	34	35	32	53
Legal liquor outlets closed	53	98	31	39
Fines issued to owners for offences w.r.t minors	6	25	34	52

*Source: DTSL*

The following integrated educational programmes were also implemented since the re-establishment of the Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences Units in June 2010:

<b>2010/2011</b>	<b>2011/2012</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Child protection week</li> <li>• Women's month</li> <li>• 16 Days of Activism for crimes against women and children</li> <li>• Rights in terms of domestic violence</li> <li>• Door to door campaigns on sexual offences</li> <li>• Radio awareness programmes</li> <li>• Advice to victims on protection orders</li> <li>• Visits to schools to inform children of their rights</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 16 Days of activism for crimes against women and children</li> <li>• Radio shows to sensitise women to report crime</li> <li>• Distribute pamphlets on safety tips to victims</li> <li>• Awareness on alcohol abuse</li> <li>• Pamphlets on hot spot areas</li> <li>• Fund day – plays for children to make them aware of sexual abuse</li> <li>• Awareness campaigns on child neglect, rape and abuse of children</li> <li>• Building of relationships with FCS personnel and children</li> <li>• Motivational speeches to victims of domestic violence</li> <li>• Church services – 16 days of activism crime against women and children</li> <li>• Visits to elderly to sensitize them about abuse</li> <li>• Moral support campaigns to victims of rape</li> <li>• Self-defence classes to</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Radio talk show – Crimes against children</li> <li>• Visit schools to sensitise children about sexual abuse</li> <li>• Door to door campaigns on sexual offences</li> <li>• Visits to crèche's for safety hints</li> <li>• Distribute food parcels to disadvantaged children</li> <li>• Radio shows to discuss teen pregnancies, sexual abuse, drug and alcohol abuse</li> <li>• Awareness on child trafficking at schools</li> <li>• Colouring and drawing of pictures to educate children on safety hints</li> <li>• Visit rural schools to sensitise children on sexual abuse, rights etc.</li> </ul>

	victims <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sensitise women about Domestic Violence Act and Protection order</li> <li>• Visit schools to inform children about child help line</li> </ul>	
--	--	--

## Pillar II: Reactive Response to the occurrence of rape

The investigation of all rape and sexual offences reported are given priority and dealt with by the specialised FCS units established in the Province. The table below indicates the successes that were achieved with the investigation of rape and sexual offences cases.

**Table 60: Detection Rate (% of cases reported in which suspects arrested):**

Offence	2010/2011	2011/2012	2012/2013
Rape	92,77%	72,71%	69,09%
Sexual Offences	97,82%	74,82%	72,62%
Attempted Rape	96,85%	79,35%	72,25%
Other Sexual Offences	97,47%	79,57%	85,71%

*Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics*

One of the main challenges in securing a conviction in these cases is the very high withdrawal rate of sexual offence cases like rape which nullifies the efforts to increase the prosecution in such cases.

Conviction Rate (number of cases successfully trialled in court with a guilty verdict):

- Crime against Women: 75,34%
- Crime against Children: 75,34%
- Contact Crime Sexual offences: 71,70%

## Pillar III: Victim Support

Currently 64% of all police stations are having victim friendly facilities. The reasons why some police stations do not have these types of facilities are due to:

- Lack of office accommodation;
- Electricity and sanitation;
- A total of five Thuthuzela Care Centres have been established, where victims are taken for medical examination, treatment and counselling. These are located in the following towns or cities:

- ❖ Galeshewe in Kimberley
- ❖ Kuruman
- ❖ De Aar
- ❖ Kakamas; and
- ❖ Springbok

However, only four of the centres are currently operational with the centre in Kakamas having closed down due to a shortage of staff. The busiest operational centre in the province is the one located in Galeshewe which has dealt with 247 victims in the last nine months of 2013.

#### 10.2.1.2 Contact Related Crimes

**Table 61: Crime Statistics for Contact Related Crimes 2008/09-2012/13**

	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	% of Total
Arson	178	168	178	186	195	5,7
Malicious damage to property	3 261	3 105	2 795	2 811	3 121	94,3
Total	3 439	3 273	2 973	2 997	3 316	100

*Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics*

From 2009/10 to 2012/13 the number of arson cases reported reflects a year on year increase of 16,1% over this period . On the other hand, the crime of malicious damage to property has shown a steady decline over the first 4 years of the period under review with an increase of more than 300 reported cases in 2012/2013. In this category of crime almost 95% of the cases reported are of the crime of malicious damage to property.

#### 10.2.1.3 Property Related Crimes

The category of property related crimes include burglary at non-residential premises, burglary at residential premises, theft of motor vehicles and motor cycles, theft out of motor vehicles and stock theft.

**Table 62: Number of Property Related Crimes for the Period 2009-2012**

<b>Property Related Crimes</b>	<b>2008/09</b>	<b>2009/10</b>	<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/13</b>	<b>% of Total</b>
Burglary at non-residential premises	2 058	2237	2036	2253	2 362	18,9%
Burglary at residential premises	5 416	5550	4995	4866	5 723	45,9%
Theft of M/V & M/C	269	242	246	301	314	2,4%
Theft out of/from M/V	2 114	1867	2111	2268	2 576	18,9%
Stock Theft	1 600	1769	1589	1485	1 651	14,0%
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>11 457</b>	<b>11 665</b>	<b>10 977</b>	<b>11 173</b>	<b>12 626</b>	<b>100.0%</b>

*Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics*

Of the property related crimes burglary at residential premises has the highest prevalence rate and comprises 45,9% of all crimes committed under this category over the five year period. This is followed by burglary at non-residential premises and theft out off or from motor vehicles both at 18,9%.

The overall increase in Property Related Crimes can be attributed to the following contributory factors:

- Financial gain and/or greed; and
- Migration of crime from other provinces, in particular, Gauteng and the North West Province.

With regards to theft out off or from motor vehicles, the majority of victims are visitors from neighbouring towns who are often targeted in the CBD as they are oblivious to the circumstances or are simply negligent i.e. in the majority of cases valuable items are left unattended and in plain sight inside vehicles and homeless children in the CBD steal these items to satisfy their habits of glue sniffing or other drugs.

Organised crime, cross border crimes (Lesotho and other provinces) have had a major impact on the theft of motor vehicles and motor cycles. Vehicles are not sufficiently safeguarded by owners.

#### **10.2.1.4 Police Detected Crimes**

The category of police detected crimes are those crimes in which the police are proactively involved in the apprehension of criminals and include drug-related crimes, driving under the influence of alcohol and/or drugs and the illegal possession of firearms and ammunition

**Table 63: Crime Dependent on Police detection for the period 2009-2012**

<b>Police Detected Crimes</b>	<b>2008/09</b>	<b>2009/10</b>	<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/13</b>	<b>% of Total</b>
Drug related crimes	1 933	2371	2418	2672	2 861	<b>68,7</b>
Driving under Influence of alcohol or drugs	1 244	1285	1053	868	829	<b>29,6</b>
Illegal Possession of fire arms and ammunition	74	50	61	56	65	<b>1,7</b>
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>3 251</b>	<b>3706</b>	<b>3532</b>	<b>3596</b>	<b>3 755</b>	<b>100</b>

*Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics*

During the period under review, there was a consistent increase in the detection of drug related crimes by the law enforcement agencies and it made up 68, 7% of all crimes detected under this category. This has had a direct impact on the decrease in contact crimes as this is as one of the main contributing factors to contact crimes in the province. On the other hand, the crime of driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs has decreased significantly and consistently year on year and over the five year period the number of crimes detected have decreased by over a third from 1 244 to 829.

#### **10.2.1.5 Other Serious Crimes**

The most commonly reported cases under this category of serious crime are the following crimes, namely, the types of theft not mentioned elsewhere in this report, commercial crime and shoplifting. The table below reflects the number of these crimes reported annually from 2008/09 to 2012/13.

**Table 64: Other serious crimes reported for the period 2008/10 to 2012/13**

	<b>2008/09</b>	<b>2009/10</b>	<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/13</b>	<b>% of Total</b>
Theft not mentioned elsewhere	8 100	7 434	6 404	6 736	7 017	<b>71,9</b>
Commercial crime	995	1 144	1 141	1 134	890	<b>10,7</b>
Shoplifting	2 018	2 204	1 640	1 481	1 318	<b>17,4</b>
<b>Total</b>	<b>11 113</b>	<b>10 782</b>	<b>9 185</b>	<b>9 351</b>	<b>9 225</b>	<b>100</b>

*Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics*

The incidence of the crime of all theft not mentioned elsewhere is the highest of all the other serious crimes at 71,9% although for the first 3 years of the period reported on this crime has been on the decrease. The figures for 2012/13 is slightly above the figures of 2010/11 and 2011/12 but still significantly lower than that of 2008/09. Commercial crime and the crime of shoplifting were at their lowest in 2012/13.

### 10.2.1.6 Trio-Crimes

Another category of serious crimes are the so-called Trio-Crimes that comprise of a list of six crimes, namely, carjacking, truck hijacking, cash-in-transit robberies, bank robbery, robbery of residential premises and robbery of non-residential premises (i.e. businesses).

**Table 65: No of crimes categorised as trio-crimes reported from 2009/10 to 2012/13**

Trio-Crimes*	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	% of Total
Carjacking	7	13	14	9	28	5,5
Truck hijacking	0	1	4	4	4	1,0
Robbery of cash-In-transit	2	2	1	2	1	0,6
Bank robbery	1	0	1	0	0	0,2
Robbery of residential premises	45	64	41	89	104	26,6
Robbery of non-residential premises	121	147	157	211	215	66,1
Total No. of Trio-crimes	176	227	218	315	352	100

Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics

There is a year on year increase in the reported cases of business and house robbery. The contributing factor to high percentage of business robberies, i.e. more than 60% of the crimes in this category, is the large quantities of cash kept on the business premises, mostly by foreign nationals. They are easy targets due to the fact that they are undocumented, cannot open bank accounts for their businesses, as well as their unusual operating times. Most of these businesses are operating within the informal sector, mainly as tuck-shops.

### 10.2.1.7 Other Crimes reported for the period 2009-2012

Other crimes that are commonly reported include *crimen injuria*, culpable homicide, child abuse, kidnapping and public violence.

**Table 66: The number of other crimes reported from 2009 to 2012**

Crime Category	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	% of Total
Crimen Injuria	751	758	742	761	810	61.5%
Culpable Homicide	264	281	292	303	342	24.5%
Child Abuse	213	197	128	93	103	7.5%
Kidnapping	29	21	36	43	25	3.5%
Public Violence	24	29	29	37	68	3.0%
Grand Total	1281	1286	1227	1237	1 348	100.0%

Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics

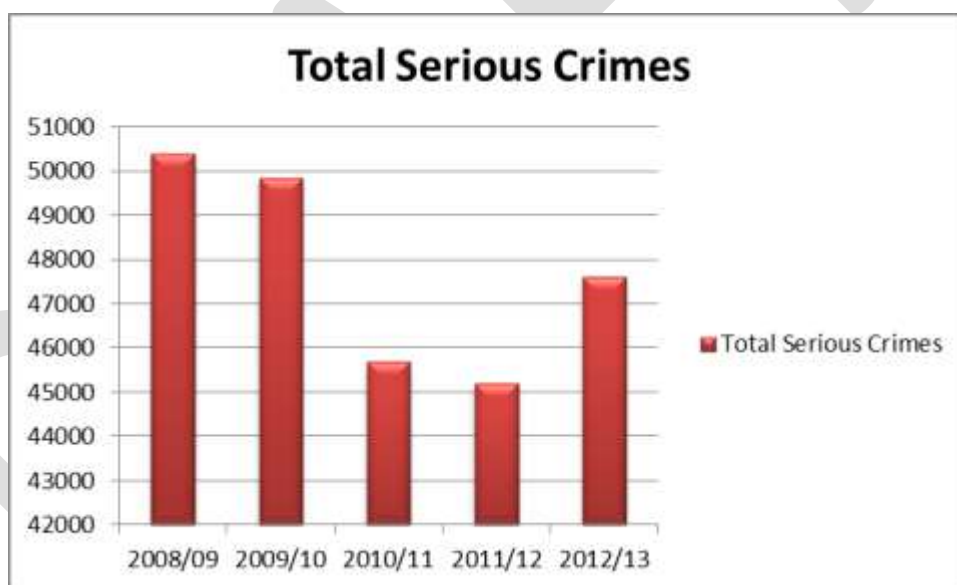


The reported cases of culpable homicide and public violence has increased consistently for every year over the period 2008/09 to 2012/13 while the crime of *crimen injuria* increased annually except for 2010/11 where there was a slight decrease. The increase in public violence crimes can be attributed to the service delivery protests in the areas such as Olifantshoek, Windsorton and Danielskuil. The crime with the highest prevalence rate in this category is *crimen injuria* which constitutes 61,5% of all the crimes reported in this category. This is followed by the crime of culpable homicide with a prevalence rate of 24,5% and together they constitute 86% of all crimes in this category for the five year period.

### 10.2.1.8 Twenty (20) Serious Crimes

Figure 49 below illustrates the total number of the 20 most serious crimes that are committed in the province. The trends in the prevalence of these crimes follow a similar pattern to that of the categories mentioned above in that from 2008/09 to 2011/12 there is a general decrease in the total number of crimes committed whilst the 2012/2013 financial year sees an increase to that of the previous two financial years.

**Figure 49: Total number of serious crimes committed from 2008/09 to 2012/13**



Source: SAPS Annual Released Crime Statistics

### 10.3 Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy

In response to the high prevalence of crime in the Northern Cape the provincial government developed and approved of the Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy in March 2012. The Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy (PCPS) addresses the unique safety challenges of the Northern Cape which commonly relates to violence caused by the excessive abuse of alcohol and drugs. This strategy provides an opportunity to do even more than what has already achieved in improving peoples quality of life.

The Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy should be seen as a vehicle offering the best quality of life to inhabitants of the province. Most of the residents in the province feel safe in the area where they live and the province aims to build upon this to encourage more people to choose to live, work and learn in this province – and to be able to do so without fear of crime. The Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy therefore tackles crime and fear of crime, including drug and alcohol misuse; addresses domestic abuse; strives to improve road safety; supports rural safety; promotes equalities and value diversity; and engages with young people.

The Provincial Crime Prevention Strategy will not provide new responses to current crime challenges but will provide a tool to establish improved multi-agency co-operation in crime-prevention matters in order to improve service delivery and the perception of safety. Therefore, the strategy will focus more on strengthening intergovernmental cooperation and integration in strengthening government's approach to deal with issues of rape, sexual offences, contact crime and property related crime as well as other crimes

The Provincial Anti-Rape Strategy that was approved in 2006 and is in process of being revised and the reviewed strategy will be finalised in 2014.

Property related crime is on the increase in the province over the past few years details of which are listed above. The fact that improved policing in the bigger provinces are forcing the criminals to go to areas that they deem to be “softer” targets will be addressed in the Northern Cape Integrated Aggravated Robbery Strategy.

Sustenance of community policing and the related emphasis on partnerships and collaboration among police, residents, government departments and community organizations to prevent crime, needs to focus more on changing attitudes and paradigms between police and communities in attempting to explain involvement in integrated crime prevention. Funding of Community Police Forums that leads to the implementation of community mobilisation and social crime prevention at local level is critical.

## **10.4 Crime Prevention**

### **10.4.1 Children in Conflict with the law**

As part of an effort to rehabilitate child-offenders, to enable young people in conflict with the law not to re-offend and to prevent young people from committing crimes, the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison has engaged with the Department of Social Development who have to date spent an amount of R77 million on crime prevention initiatives, including the establishment of secure care centres (3 that are state owned and 2 privately owned) and one Place of Safety as well as community based crime prevention programmes.

### **10.4.2 Protecting Victims of Violence**

DSD programmes aimed at violence against women and children has increased from 72 in 2009 to 264 in 2012 which includes programmes targeting boys and men reaching a total of 11 163 persons for the same period.

The department intensified its efforts to provide and/or facilitate access to suitable, supportive services for victims of abuse and violence, because of their particular

vulnerability and specialised needs, especially those services rendered through the four Victim Empowerment Centres and Court Support Programme.

#### **10.4.3 Transformation of South African Police Services**

One of the main challenges of government is transforming the police service into a professional, representative, efficient and effective, impartial, transparent and accountable service which would uphold and protect the fundamental rights of all people, and which would carry out its mission in accordance with the needs of the community. The province has succeeded in promoting police accountability through conducting frequent accountability meetings between the community and the police to address issues of transparent and accountable policing.

SAPS are monitored on the transformation of the service with regard to equitable resource allocation. Police conduct is also monitored and complaints against members of the service at all police stations and components in the province are handled professionally to protect the rights of all citizens. Community surveys and research are conducted in order to improve on policing policies and strategies within the province.

DRAFT

## 11. ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

### 11.1 Introduction

As reported in the fifteen year review report, prior to the international financial crisis of 2008 and 2009, South Africa was undergoing a period of robust economic growth that was grounded on sound macro-economic policies and a well managed monetary policy, amongst other things. However, since 2009 the recovery in the South African economy has been slow from a real GDP growth of -1,5% in 2009 to 2,2% in 2013 compared to the growth of 5,6% in 2006.

### 11.2 The National Economy

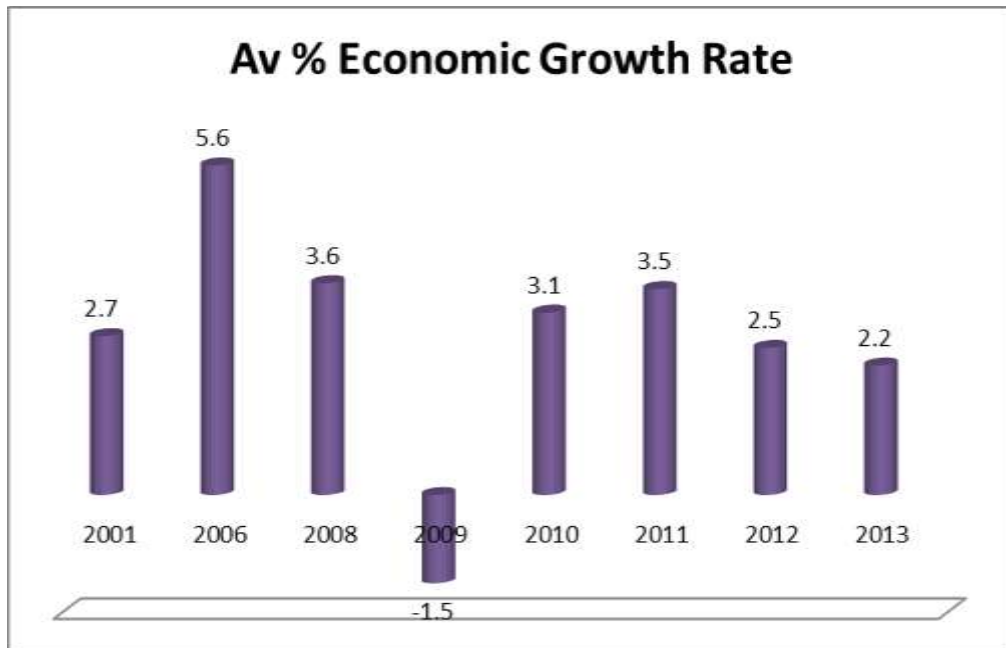
Since 2000 the South African economic growth rate was at its lowest in 2001 at 2,7% and peaked at 5,6% in 2006. However, the global financial crisis from 2007 onwards resulted in a drastic slow down in the international economy which also impacted negatively on the South African economy. As a result the economic growth for the country in 2009 was at its lowest at -1,5%. This was followed by a gradual recovery with the economic growth reaching an average rate of 3,5% in 2011. South Africa posted a moderate growth of 2,2% in 2012 which was down from that of 2011. Table 67 and figure 50 that follow below indicate the average economic growth rates for 2001, 2006 and the period 2008 to 2013.

**Table 67: Economic growth rates for South Africa: 2001, 2006 and 2008 to 2013**

Year	Economic growth rate Av %
2001	2,7
2006	5,6
2008	3,2
2009	-1,5
2010	3,0
2011	3,5
2012	2,2
2013	2,2

Source; StatisticsSA

**Figure 50: Economic growth rates for South Africa: 2001, 2006 and 2008 to 2013**

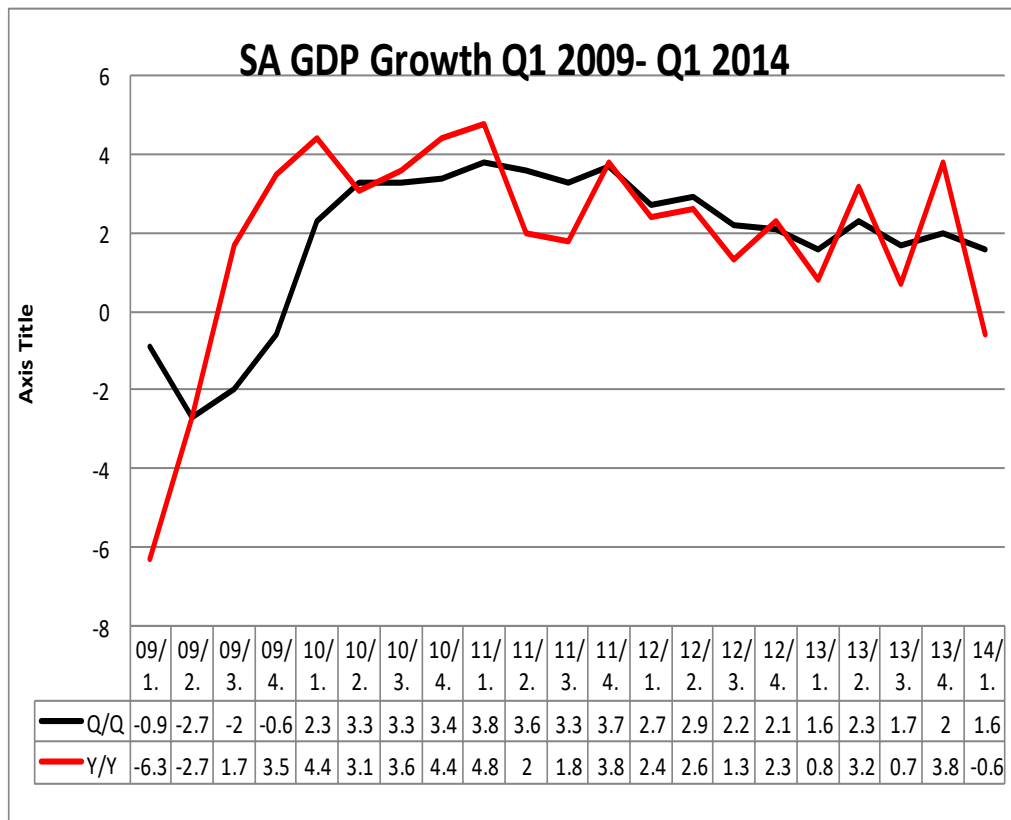


Source; StatisticsSA

Between 2004 and 2007 South Africa experienced an average growth rate of approximately 5% in real terms. However, for the period 2008 to 2013 due to the global economic crisis South Africa experienced a deceleration in the rate of economic growth and recorded an average growth rate of just above 2%.

The service industries have been the main driver of growth since the recession in 2008/09 growing at a rate that exceeded the GDP. Despite its decline, the manufacturing sector continues to occupy a significant share of the South African economy at about 13,2% in 2013 compared to its contribution of 21,4% in 1995. On the other hand the finance, real estate and business services sector has grown from 15,3% in 1995 to 20,3% in 2013. The figure below depicts the growth in gross domestic product (GDP) year on year and quarter on quarter for the five year period 2009 to the first quarter of 2014.

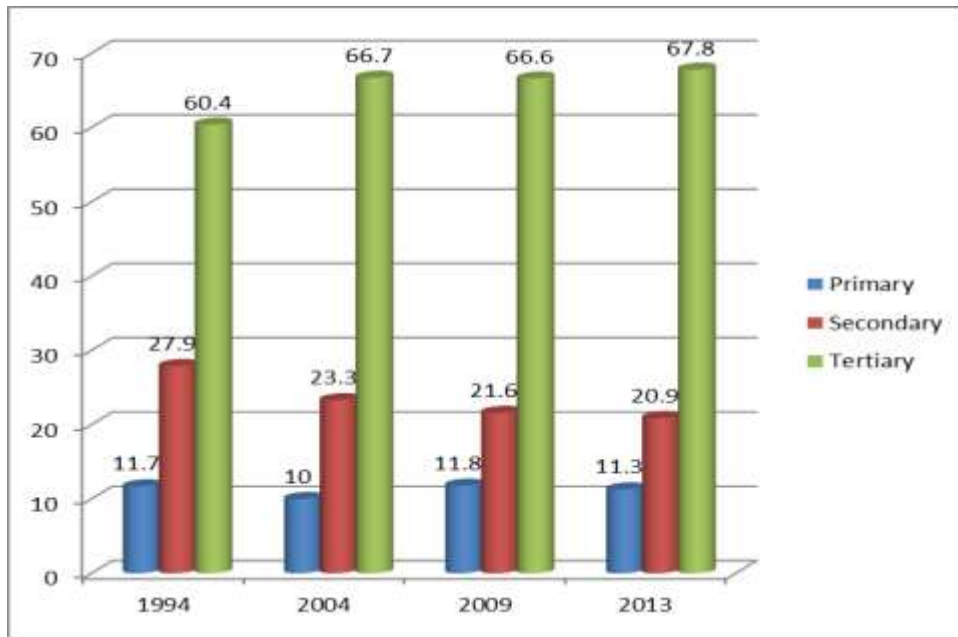
**Figure 51: GDP Growth in South Africa quarter on quarter from 2009 to 2014**



Source: Stats SA

Over the past five years (2009 to 2013) the tertiary industries have consistently contributed over two thirds to the gross domestic product and has increased by 7,4% from 60,4% in 1994 to 67,8% in 2013. The contribution of the secondary industries has decreased significantly from 28,1% in 1994 to 20,9% in 2013 with a twenty year low of 20,3% in 2011 and the manufacturing sector's contribution to the GDP has decreased by just under 8% from 21,0% in 1994 to 13,2% in 2013. The tertiary industries show little change from 11,6 % in 1994 to 11,3% in 2013. The figure below indicates the contribution of the primary, secondary and tertiary sectors to the GDP for 1994, 2004, 2009 and 2013.

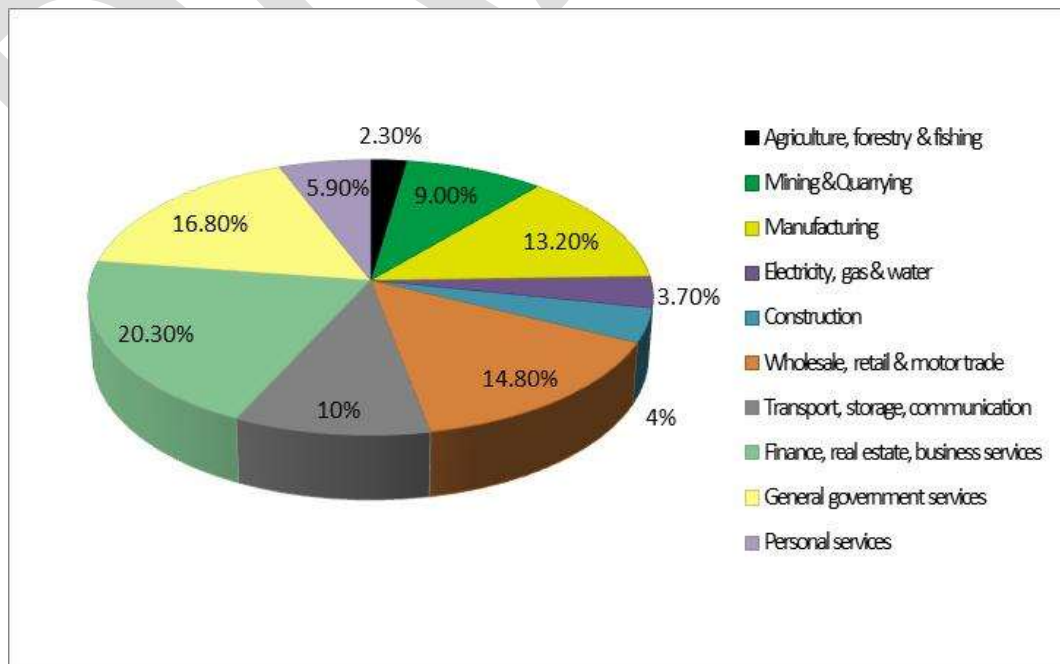
**Figure 52: % contribution to GDP by primary, secondary and tertiary industries**



Source: Stats SA

The finance, real estate and business services sector was the largest contributor to the nation's economy in 2013 with this sector contributing 20,3% to the GDP growth. It was followed by general government services with 16,8% , the wholesale, retail and motor trade, catering and accommodation with 14,8% and the manufacturing sector with 13,2%. The smallest contributor to the GDP in the same year was the agriculture with 2,0%, followed by electricity, gas and water sector with a contribution of 3,7% and the construction sector with 4,0%. The figure below depicts the contribution of South Africa's key sectors to GDP growth in 2013.

**Figure 53: Sector contribution to SA's GDP growth in 2013**



Source: Statistics South Africa GDP

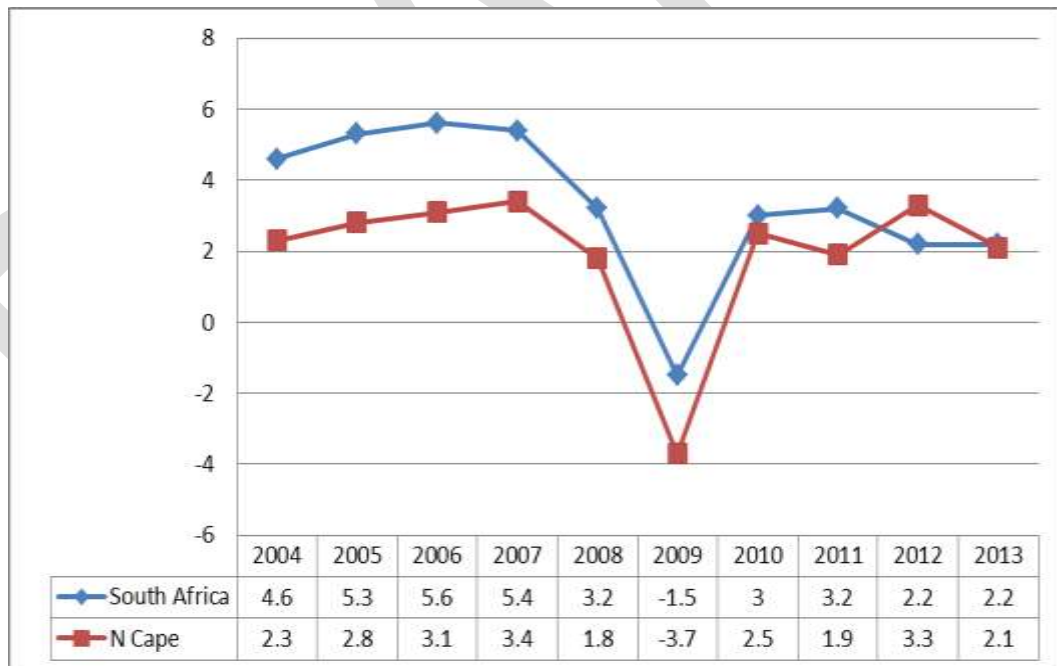
### 11.3 The Northern Cape Economy

The Northern Cape Province's contribution to the national GDP is the lowest of all nine provinces and averaged 2,16% in the ten year period between 2004 and 2013. The maximum contribution during this period was 2,3% in both 2007 and 2008 and the lowest was 2,0% in 2013.

The Northern Cape economy is still to a very large extent dependant on the primary and tertiary sectors and together, in the past decade (2004-2013) they have contributed on the average more than 80% to the provincial economy. The secondary sector, on the other hand, contributes less than an average of 7%. The main contributors in the primary sector continue to be mining and agriculture whilst the main contributors in the tertiary sector are finance, real estate and business services and general government services. The secondary sector continues to contribute minimally to provincial economy with manufacturing still performing poorly with its contribution having decreased from 4,3% in 1996 to 3,2% in 2013.

The global economic crisis during 2008/09 has also impacted negatively on the economic growth in the Northern Cape and the province recorded an average economic growth rate of negative 3,7% in 2009, down by 5,5% on the 2008 average growth rate of 1,8% The figure 54 below depicts the Northern Cape average economic growth rate against that of the country for the period 2004 to 2013.

**Figure 54: Comparison of South African and Northern Cape economic growth rates (2004-2013)**



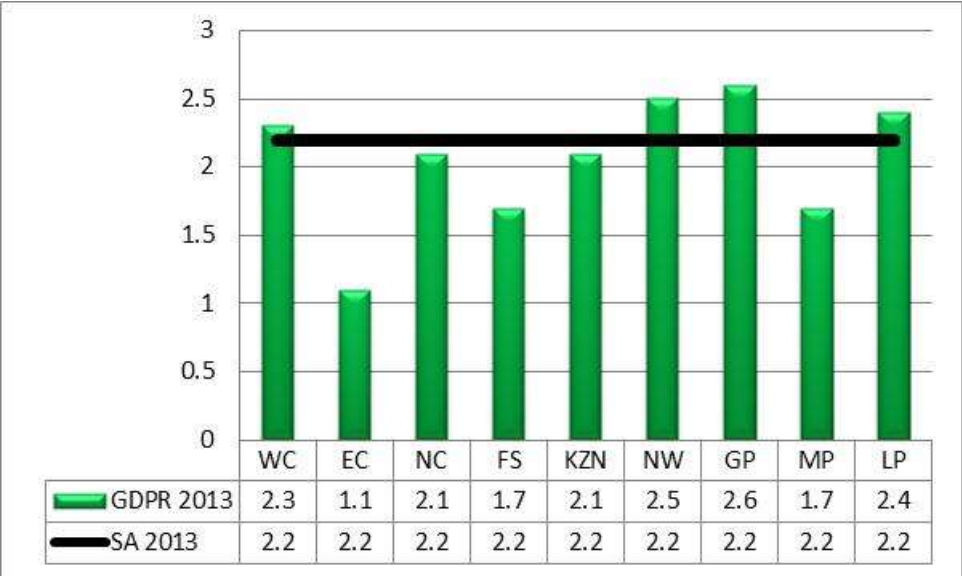
Source: Statistics South Africa GDP

It is evident from the graph above that the growth rate of the provincial economy for the period 2004 to 2013 is lower than the national growth rate except for 2012 when the province experienced a growth rate of 3,3% and exceeded the country's economic growth rate of 2,2% for that year. The average real annual economic growth rate for the Northern Cape for the period 2004 to 2013 was 1,94%, compared to the national average real annual economic growth rate of 3,3% for the same period. The real annual economic growth rate of the Northern Cape (2,1%) is



very close to the average real annual economic growth rate of the Northern Cape for 2004 to 2013. Furthermore, whereas there was an upward trend in the national growth rate from 2010 (3.0%) to 2011 (3.2%) the provincial economic growth experienced a decline from 2010 (2.5%) to 2011 (2%). The figure below compares the economic growth rates of the nine provinces and South Africa for 2013.

**Figure 55: Real annual economic growth rate per province and SA (2013)**

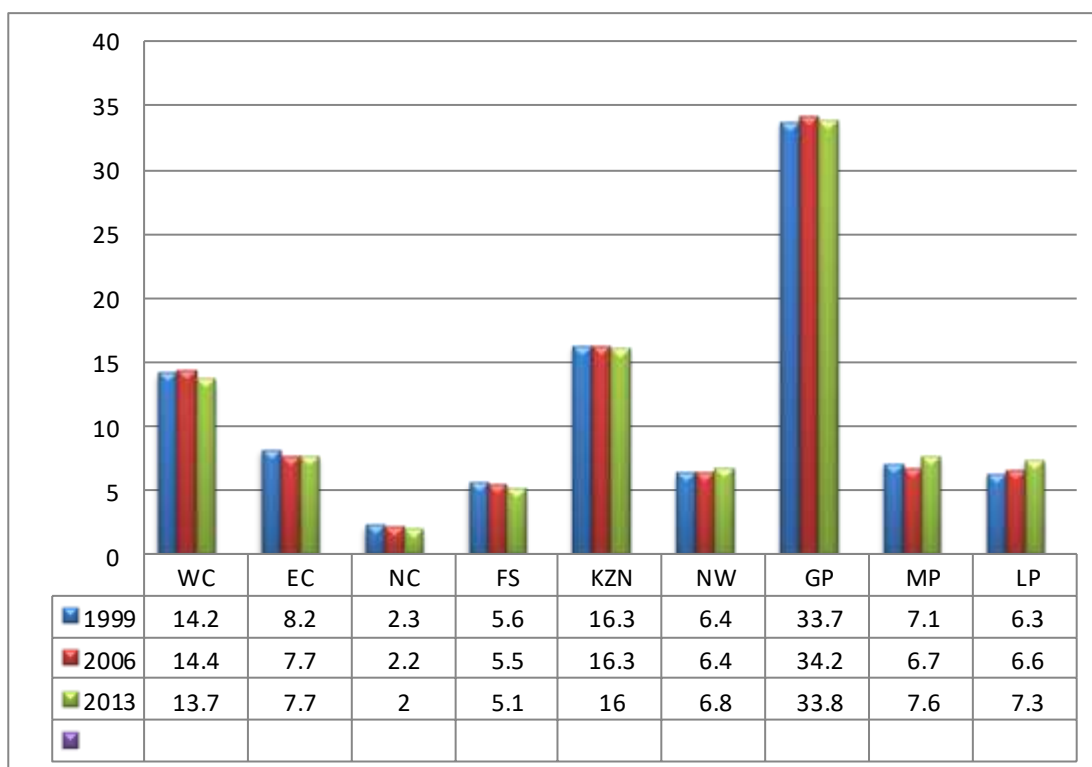


Source: Statistics South Africa GDP

From the **Figure** above it is evident that Gauteng recorded the highest real annual economic growth rate of 2,6% in 2013 followed by the North West with 2,5% and Limpopo the third highest with 2,4% each. The Northern Cape economy grew by 2,1% in 2013 which was down by 1,2% compared to the previous year and slightly more than the 1,9% recorded in 2011. Gauteng, North West, Limpopo and the Western Cape are the only provinces that outperformed the national economic growth rate of 2,2% in 2013, whilst the rest of the provinces performed below the national average. The Northern Cape economy is consistently underperforming when viewed against the reviewed target of 3-4,5% it has set for itself in the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy.

When considering the provincial contributions to the South African economy, Gauteng remains the largest contributor. Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and Western Cape collectively contribute to nearly two thirds of the national economy. The national economy demonstrated a growth rate of about 3.5% in 2011 following a growth rate of 3.1% in 2005. The Northern Cape contributed 2,0% to national economic output in 2013. Figure 56 below illustrates the contribution of each province to the national economy for the years 1999, 2006 and 2013.

**Figure 56: Provincial contribution to the South African economy in 1999, 2006 and 2013**



Source: Statistics South Africa GDP

The figure above clearly indicates that Gauteng is by far the largest contributor to the South African economy with over a third of the national output followed by KwaZulu Natal and the Western Cape. The contribution of the Northern Cape is the smallest in all three years under consideration.

### 11.3.1 Sector contribution to the Northern Cape Economy

Sectoral contribution to the economy is a good indicator of the level of diversification or concentration of a region's economy. The table below indicates the contribution of the key sectors to the provincial GDP for 1996, 2006 and 2013.

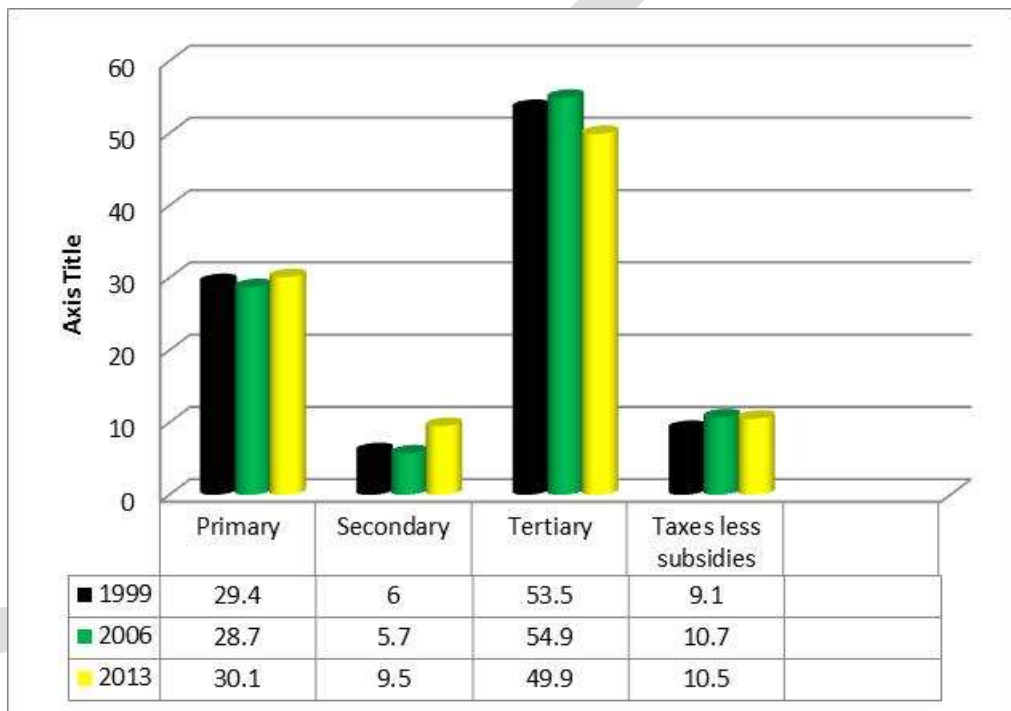
**Table 68: Sector contribution to the Northern Cape GDP for 1996, 2001 and 2006**

Sectors	1996	2006	2013
<b>Primary Sectors</b>	<b>29,4</b>	<b>28,7</b>	<b>30,1</b>
Agriculture, Forestry and Fishing	5,5	6,4	6,6
Mining, Quarrying	23,9	22,3	23,4
<b>Secondary Sectors</b>	<b>8,0</b>	<b>5,7</b>	<b>9,5</b>
Manufacturing	3,3	2,2	3,2
Electricity and water	2,8	1,7	3,7
Construction	1,9	1,7	2,6
<b>Tertiary Sector</b>	<b>53,5</b>	<b>54,9</b>	<b>49,9</b>

Sectors	1996	2006	2013
Wholesale and retail sale	10.3	12,5	10,2
Transport and communication	10,0	11,1	10,9
Finance, business services	12,0	12,5	8,6
Community, social and personal services	7.9	8,1	4,7
General government services	13,2	10,7	15,4
Taxes less subsidies on Products	9,1	11.5	10,5

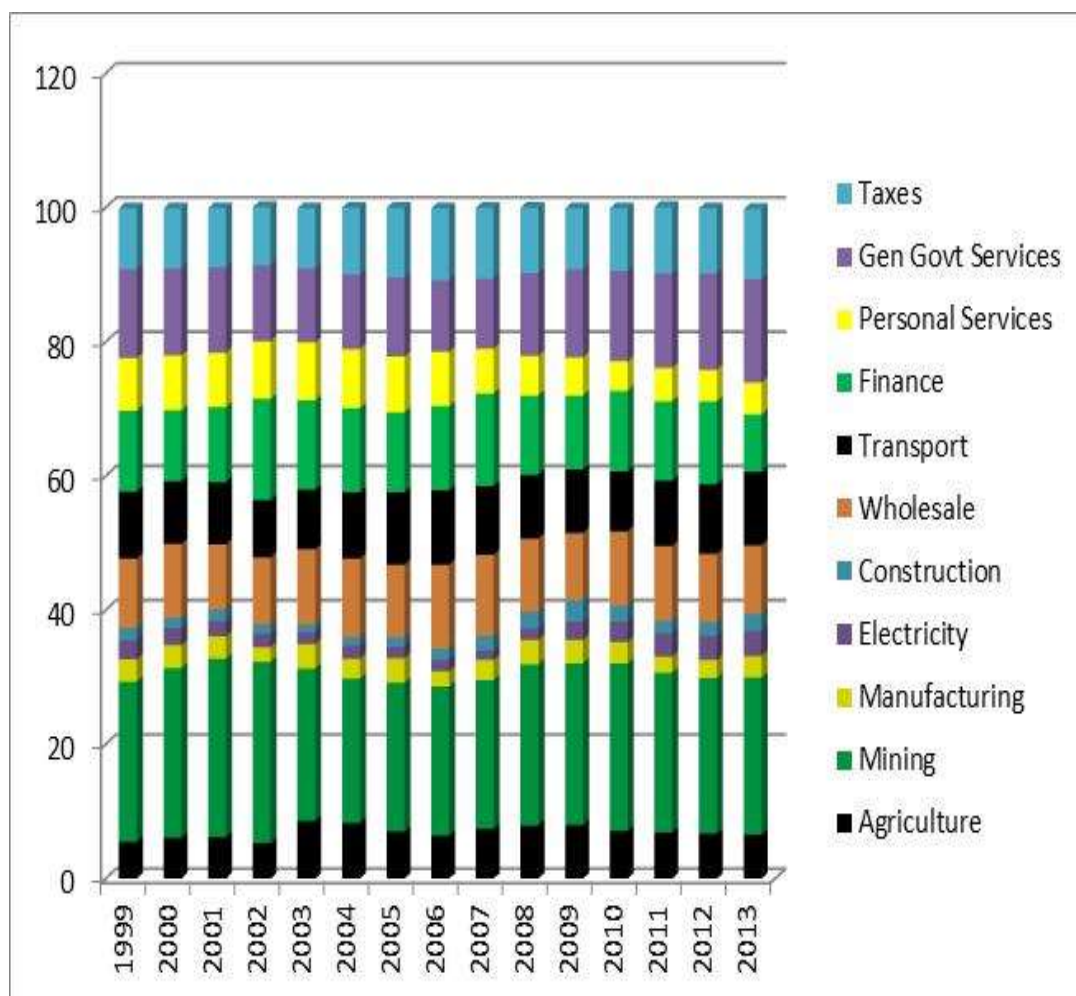
Source: Statistics South Africa GDP

**Figure 57: Sector contribution to the Northern Cape GDP for 1996, 2001 and 2006**



Source: Statistics South Africa GDP

**Figure 58: Sector contributions by industry to the Northern Cape provincial GDP (1999-2013)**



Source: Statistics South Africa GDP

The above figures and table illustrate the main contributors to the provincial GDP. The structure of the Northern Cape economy has remained fairly unchanged and is still driven by the tertiary sector which in 2013 contributed 49,9% which was 5% lower than the 54,9% of 2006; it is followed by the primary sector at 30,1% and secondary sector at 9,5%. The main contributors under the tertiary sector are: general government services and finance and business at 12,8% and 11,6% respectively, with the smallest contributor being transport, storage and communication at 7.8%. Under the primary sector, mining and quarrying remained the biggest mainstay of the provincial economy and is the major contributor of this sector at 26,7% followed by agriculture at 6.0%. With the mining expansions in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District, it is expected that this sector will continue to be the biggest economic driver in the province.

However, despite being the stronghold of the economy, mining does not absorb as much labour as the agriculture sector. This is mainly due to the limited life span of mines and high production costs.

Despite being the smallest contributor to the provincial economy the secondary sector has shown significant growth and has increased to 10,5% in 2013 compared to 5,7% in 2006. Although there has been significant growth in consumer demand for semi durable and durable goods in the last few years nationally, the Northern

Cape has not benefited from this. The manufacturing industry and construction, which falls under the secondary sector, contributed only 3,2% and 2,6% respectively to the provincial GDP in 2013.. Electricity, gas and water was the largest contributor in this sector with a contribution of 3,7% more than double the 1,7% of 2006. The Northern Cape is, therefore, faced with challenges of being able to take full advantage of infrastructure development projects in the country. Sustainable and increased growth rates in the province rely further on broadening the economic activities to include agro-processing, manufacturing, tourism and SMME (Small and Medium sized Enterprise) development.

#### 11.4 Foreign Direct Investment (FDI)

During the period of January 2007 to October 2011 a total of thirteen (13) companies invested in nineteen (19) projects in the Northern Cape with a total of R25 373,6 million in capital investments. It is further estimated that almost 3 900 jobs were created during this period. The majority of these companies have invested in renewable energy and the mining industries in the province.

**Table 69: Companies investing in the Northern Cape between January 2007 and October 2012 (by industry Sector)**

Industry Sector	Projects	Capex in R'000	Av. Capex R'000	Jobs Created	Av. Jobs	No. of Companies
Metals	7	8 778,8	1 254,0	2 875	410	3
Alternative/Renewable Energy	6	14 447,5	2 407,9	391	65	4
Minerals	3	1 808,6	602,6	323	107	3
Industrial Machinery, Equipment and Tools	2	66,1	33,1	51	25	2
Chemicals	1	273,6	273,6	259	259	1
Total	19	25 373,6	1 335,8	3 899	205	13

Source: Financial Times 2012

**Table 70: Companies investing in the Northern Cape between January 2007 and October 2012**

Investing Company	Projects	Capex in R'000	Av. Capex in R'000	Jobs Created	Av. Jobs
Powerway Renewable Energy	4	48,8	12,2	1 062	265
ABB	2	4 267,0	2 133,5	70	35
KimCor Diamonds Plc	2	462,9	231,5	97	48
Mainstream Renewable Power	2	5 333,3	2 666,2	190	95
Solar Reserve	1	2 666,6	2 666,6	95	95
Jupiter Mines	1	1 653,2	1 653,2	283	283
Diana Group	1	273,6	273,6	259	259
David Brown Group	1	43,0	43,0	24	24
Anglo American	1	8 266,1	8 266,1	1716	1716

	1	23,1	23,1	27	27
	1	101,7	101,7	31	31
Rockwell Diamonds	1	53,7	53,7	9	9
Scatec Solar	1	2 180,6	2 180,6	36	36
<b>Total</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>25 373,6</b>	<b>1 335,8</b>	<b>3 899</b>	<b>205</b>

Source: Financial Times 2012

According to The Financial Times report Anglo American was the largest investor in the Northern Cape with a capital expenditure of R8 266,1 million with an estimated 1 716 jobs created. The second largest investor was a company called Mainstream Renewable Power with a capital expenditure of R5 333,3 million but it is estimated that only 190 jobs will be created. During this period the sectors drawing the most investment include metals (base metals such as iron ore, copper, lead and zinc) followed by renewable energy and other minerals.

### 11.5 Trade and Development Promotion

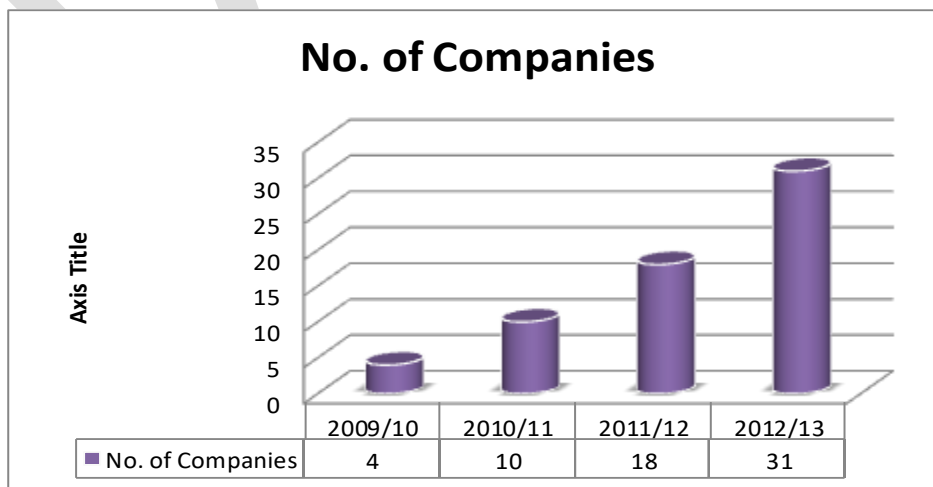
In the period from the 2009/10 financial year to 2012/13 financial year a total of 63 companies were assisted with export readiness and exports and the total value of investment attracted was R954 million. Companies that benefited from the exports and investments come from various sectors including agriculture and agro-processing, manufacturing, retail and services, mining and arts and crafts. The table below shows the annual breakdown for the five year period mentioned.

**Table 71: The number of companies assisted with export in N Cape 2009/10 to 2012/13**

Financial Year	No. of Companies	Value of Investment
2009/10	4	R2m
2010/11	10	R6m
2011/12	18	R87m
2012/13	31	R859m

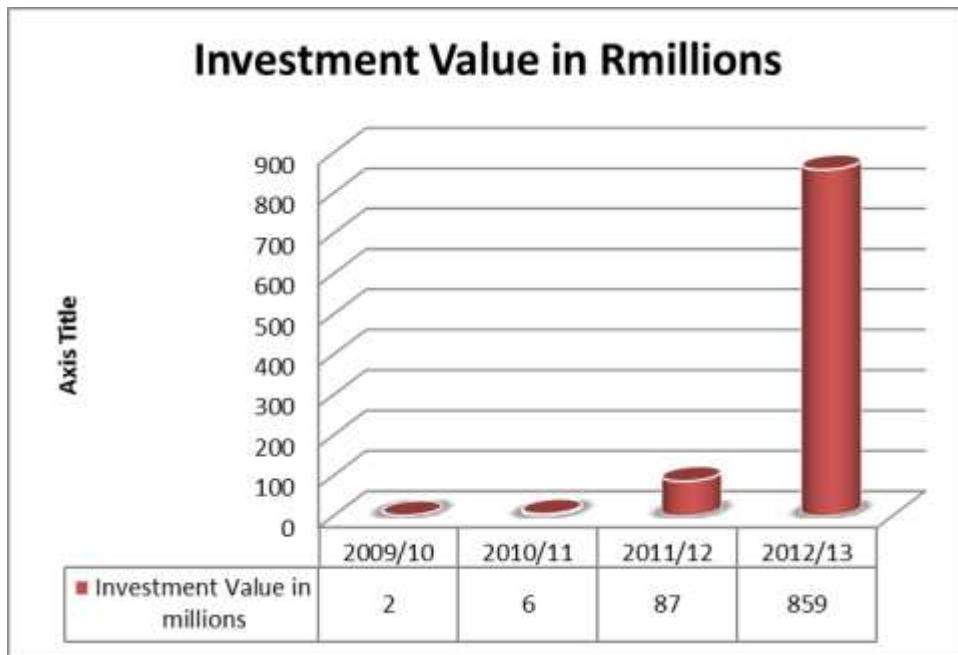
Source: DEDaT

**Figure 59: The number of companies assisted with export in N Cape 2009/10 to 2012/13**



Source: DEDaT

**Figure 60: The value of investment of companies assisted with export**



Source: DEDaT

The Northern Cape Province has also entered into trade agreements with the following countries/provinces /cities:

- A twinning agreement with Huang province in China focussing on trade, culture and tourism.
- An agreement with Sweden regarding support for municipalities relating to local economic development.
- An agreement with Finland relating to information, communication and technology (ICT) support for the INSPIRE Project.
- City to city twinning with Jwaneng in Botswana; and
- Twinning agreement between the Southern Region of Namibia and the Northern region of the Northern Cape involving mainly the towns of Upington and Springbok and focussing on the transport corridor and tourism.

## 11.6 Manufacturing Sector Prioritisation and Promotion

Since 1994 little attention, if any, was paid to the manufacturing sector and this is borne out by the fact that in 2009 the contribution of this sector to the provincial economy was only 2,2%. However, because of the industrialisation drive that has become the pillar for economic development and job creation in the country the manufacturing sector has been given prominence. To this effect the provincial government of the Northern Cape developed a Provincial Manufacturing Strategy in 2012 which was followed by the completion of feasibility studies for three manufacturing clusters, namely, clothing and textiles, mineral beneficiation with the focus on steel manufacturing and agro-processing. In driving the manufacturing sector in the province the following key projects have been supported

- A feasibility study on the establishing of a food processing plant has been completed and the business plan in this regard has been developed.
- Assistance with the acquisition of funds for the construction of the Wildeklawer bridge for R32m, the completion of which will see the creation of a further 500 permanent jobs.
- The pre-feasibility study for a meat processing plant has been completed with a potential of creating 2 300 jobs.
- The facilitation of the establishment of a malt plant in 2012 with an investment value of R850 million.

### 11.6.1 Northern Cape Diamond Strategy

The Northern Cape Diamond Strategy was developed with the intention of advancing beneficiation in terms of diamonds and jewellery. The principle aim of this strategy is to transform and diversify the provincial economy by developing scarce industry skills, creating job opportunities and capacitating potential entrepreneurs in the diamond and jewellery industry.

The core objective of this strategy is to develop Kimberley as a Centre of Excellence with regard to:

- Diamond beneficiation.
- Jewellery manufacturing; and
- Industry specific services.

The diamond strategy has prioritised the following projects:

#### 11.6.1.1 Kimberley International Diamond and Jewellery Academy (KIDJA)

KIDJA is part of a broader industry development strategy that aims to provide a facility for the development, transfer and upgrading of rare skills that will lead to a more competitive and profitable diamond and jewellery sector within the SADC region. The academy focuses on three main areas of training and development within this industry, that is, diamond processing, diamond design and valuation and jewellery manufacturing. The academy also offers training to instructors in diamond processing and valuation sector.

The academy, which was launched in November 2011, has trained a total of 184 students including 24 disabled students from the date of launch to the end of the 2013/14 financial year. The table below indicates the number of students trained from the 2011/12 financial year to 2013/14.

**Table 73: No. of students trained at KIDJA from 2011/12 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	No of Students	No of Disabled Students
2011/12	50	nil
2012/13	60	nil
2013/14	50	24
Total	160	24

*Source: DEDaT*



### **11.6.1.2 Kimberley Diamond and Jewellery Hub**

The Kimberley Diamond and Jewellery Hub provide an incentivised and secure infrastructure to position the South African diamond and jewellery industry to be globally competitive. The phase one renovation of the hub to world class standards has been completed and it is expected to house diamond cutting and polishing and jewellery manufacturing concerns. The hub project is being funded by an amount of R26 million by the Department of Trade and Industry.

### **11.6.1.3 Relocation of the Diamond State Trader**

Although a formal announcement has been made with regard to the relocation of the State Diamond Trader to Kimberley the transfer process has been put on hold. Nevertheless, discussions with the management of the State Diamond Trader on the relocation of the entity are on-going.

### **11.6.1.4 Jewellery Manufacturing**

An Italian jewellery manufacturing company has been relocated to Kimberley and has set up a factory for the manufacture of gold and silver jewellery. The factory has imported in excess of R80 million worth of equipment and will be able, when in full production, produce over five tons of gold and silver jewellery per annum. It is also estimated that this enterprise will create over 400 permanent job opportunities.

### **11.6.1.5 Diamond and Jewellery Incubation**

A business plan for a diamond and jewellery incubation centre has been developed and approved and SEDA has committed R4,2 million to this project. This centre is for the purpose of housing KIDJA students that want to become entrepreneurs as well as those students who have completed their jewellery training at Moremogolo FET College.

## **11.7 Green Economy**

The New Growth Path that was adopted by national government in 2010 identified the green economy as a new economic sector that will be key to the creation of jobs. The focus of the green economy is on renewable energy and the Northern Cape was identified as the solar hub of the country with a number of solar plants being established across the province.

## **11.8 Knowledge Economy**

In moving towards a knowledge based economy the provincial government developed a Northern Cape Information Society Strategy. This ultimately led to the implementation of the INSPIRE (Information Society Strategy Programme in RSA) programme in the Northern Cape and Limpopo provinces. This programme was the result of a cooperation agreement between the governments of Finland and South Africa.

## **11.8.1 Provincial Information Society Strategy Programme**

### **11.8.1.1 Background**

The Provincial Information Society Strategy Programme (INSPIRE) was initiated in 2007 for a three year period between the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Finland and the Ministry of Communications in South Africa, under the 2001 Development Cooperation Agreement between the two countries. The programme was administered by the Department of Communications, Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD) and implemented in the provinces of Limpopo and the Northern Cape, under the respective provincial Offices of the Premier. The programme concluded in June 2012, with the first Northern Cape Information Society Strategy (NCISS) being adopted.

### **11.8.1.2 Introduction**

Technical expertise for the NCISS came from Finland and provided a methodological approach to developing the NCISS. The focus was on the following five programme components:

1. Technical Assistance.
2. Strategy Process.
3. Capacity Building.
4. Technical Infrastructure; and
5. Strategy Induced Initiatives.

The NCISS was developed using a user-centric approach. Working groups represented by business, university, government and citizens determined the pilot projects and developed the NCISS through the lessons learned.

### **11.8.1.3 Progress**

#### **1. Technical Assistance**

An institutional mechanism to drive information society development and in particular the implementation of the NCISS is being established at the Department of Economic Development and Tourism (DEDaT). This mechanism is a sub-programme of Economic Planning, called the Knowledge Economy and Innovation unit.

#### **2. Strategy Process**

The first Northern Cape Information Society Strategy has been presented to the HOD's Technical Forum, the Governance and Administration Cluster and the Economic cluster, which supported the establishment of an institutional mechanism. In addition, a video was produced to support awareness and fund raising for the implementation of the NCISS.

#### **3. Capacity Building**

The capacity building Programme was concerned mainly with processes to address the Information Society human resource issues and challenges in the

province. Capacity building included study missions to Finland along with participation in various Information Society fora, such as the International Telecommunications Union (ITU), World Summit on Information Society (WSIS). Several local SMMEs were also trained on the opportunities ICT presents for development.

With the establishment of Sol Plaatje University (SPU), relationships have been developed to consider processes and programmes for the knowledge economy and innovation, to be explored and developed.

#### 4. Technical Infrastructure

Work under this component, has led to the implementation of a wireless mesh network (WMN) connecting 55 schools in the John Taolo Gaetsewe (JTG) District. The Universal Services and Access Agency South Africa (USAASA), has since targeted JTG and appointed a service provider to provide broadband connectivity to over 300 government sites.

#### 5. Strategy Induced Initiatives

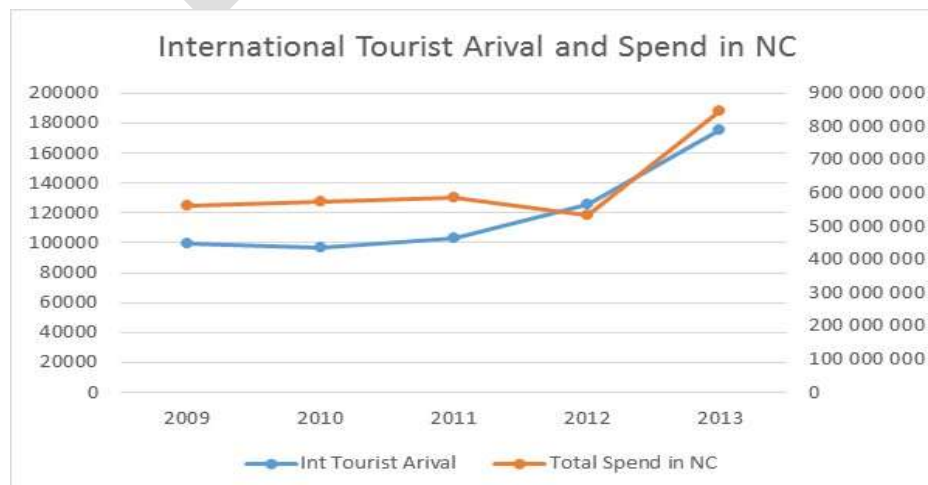
Pilot projects implemented under Component 5, have served to reinforce and catalyse greater appreciation for increased information and communications technology uptake and usage in the province. Specific results are the following:

- The WMN and USAASA project are exploring how communities and businesses, particularly SMMEs, in rural areas, will be able to benefit from broadband telecommunications access.
- Operators, Vodacom, iBurst, Telkom, Broadband Infracore, etc have heightened interest in the Province, because the NCISS cannot succeed if it does not have a broadband telecommunications infrastructure.

### 11.9 Tourism

Tourism is one of the fastest growing economic sectors in the country as well as the Northern Cape. It has the potential not only to grow the economy but to contribute significantly to the realisation of governments priorities of job creation and poverty alleviation. The figure below depicts the number of international tourists visiting the Northern Cape and their total spend over the five year period 2009 to 2013.

**Figure 61: Number of Tourists visiting N Cape and total spend annually 2009-2013**



The above figure confirms the fact that the tourism sector in the Northern Cape is growing at a rapid rate and that the total number of international tourists visiting the province has increased from 100 000 in 2009 to about 175 000 in 2013 while the total spend by these tourists has increased from R550 million to about R850 million over the same period.

In its effort to promote and support the tourism sector provincial government has conducted research in various areas in order to evaluate and strengthen the contribution of tourism to the provincial economy. This has given rise to the following:

- The development of the Northern Cape Tourism Master Plan with an important milestone being a marketing strategy that positions the province as an extreme nature, culture and sport destination, products, that are unique to the Northern Cape.
- The development of an air passenger strategy that addresses the challenges and shortcomings of visitor movement in the province.
- An Events Management Strategy that coordinates the development and management of events that attracts local and international visitors and ensure its positive contribution to the provincial economy; and
- The development of a Rural Tourism Strategy that seeks to ensure a developmental approach to packaging rural tourism products and opportunities. Projects in the strategy include the Riemvasmaak and Mier Kalahari farms in the Siyanda and the Ai Ais-Richtersveld.

The development of Small Tourism Enterprises (STE's) owned by historically disadvantaged individuals has been slow in the Northern Cape. This situation has been compounded to some extent by the lack of desire to transform the tourism industry in the province. In addition, most of the HDI-owned STE's are lacking in competitiveness to be significant players in the mainstream of the industry. In an effort to address these challenges the following interventions were embarked upon:

- A number of workshops were held to develop tourism enterprise skills and these were attended by 595 enterprises between 2009 and 2013.
- The STE New Venture Creation competition has been opened to youth and 15 youth tourism entrepreneurs received grants as start-up capital.
- Support to enhance market access for STE's.

"Green Tourism" and Fair Trade Practices were incorporated in the tourism awareness programmes since 2011, where tourism product owners and businesses were encouraged to participate in the global fight against climate change. These outreach programmes were conducted in partnership with the national Department of Tourism and the initial programmes were held in Kimberley and Upington. These were later rolled out to the other districts.

### **11.10 Regulatory Services**

The 2010/11 financial year has been highlighted by the operationalisation and/or establishment of four public entities, namely, the Liquor Board, the Gambling Board,

the Northern Cape Tourism Agency and the Northern Cape Economic Development Agency.

The table below indicates some of the key achievements from 2009/10 to 2013/14 with the establishment of the Liquor Board.

**Table 74: KPA's of the Liquor Board from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
Number of awareness campaigns conducted	55	43	31	39	9
Number of people reached through awareness campaigns	-	<u>1 142</u>	-	-	-
Number of inspections of licensed outlets	<u>1 891</u>	<u>1 332</u>	<u>1 937</u>	<u>1 428</u>	<u>1 902</u>

Source: DEDaT

The table below indicates some of the key achievements from 2009/10 to 2013/14 with the establishment of the Liquor Board.

**Table 75: KPA's of the Gambling Board from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
Number of licenses issued	122	177	181	72	
Number of awareness campaigns conducted		13			
Number of people reached through awareness campaigns		2 618			
Number of inspections of licensed outlets		14			
Number of social responsibility programmes		1			

Source: DEDaT

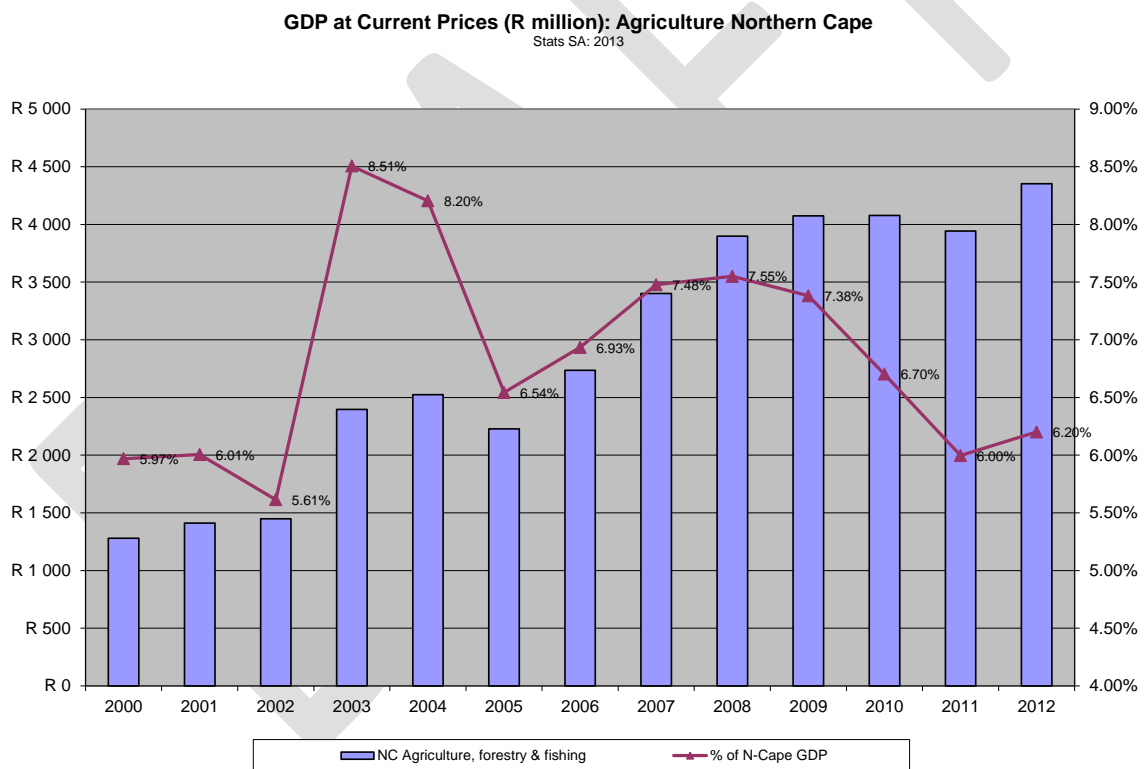
## 12. AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

### 12.1 Contribution of the Agricultural Sector to the Economy of the Northern Cape

The Northern Cape's contribution to the national GDP was R31,08 billion in 2000 and increased to R38,40 billion in 2012, which translated to an average growth rate of 2,0% per annum. The agricultural sector in the Northern Cape amounted to R1,62 billion in 2000 and increased to R2,14 billion in 2012, which represented an average growth rate of 2,7% per annum. The agricultural sector in the Northern Cape at an average growth rate of 2,7% per annum grew faster than national agriculture (1,8% per annum) during the same period.

The contribution of agriculture in 2000 was 5,97% to the provincial GDP and this increased to 6,20% by 2012, indicating that the rest of the provincial economy grew slower than the average rate of 7% per annum of provincial agriculture. Provincial agriculture contributed more than 5,5% per annum each year for the period 2000 to 2012 (see graph below)

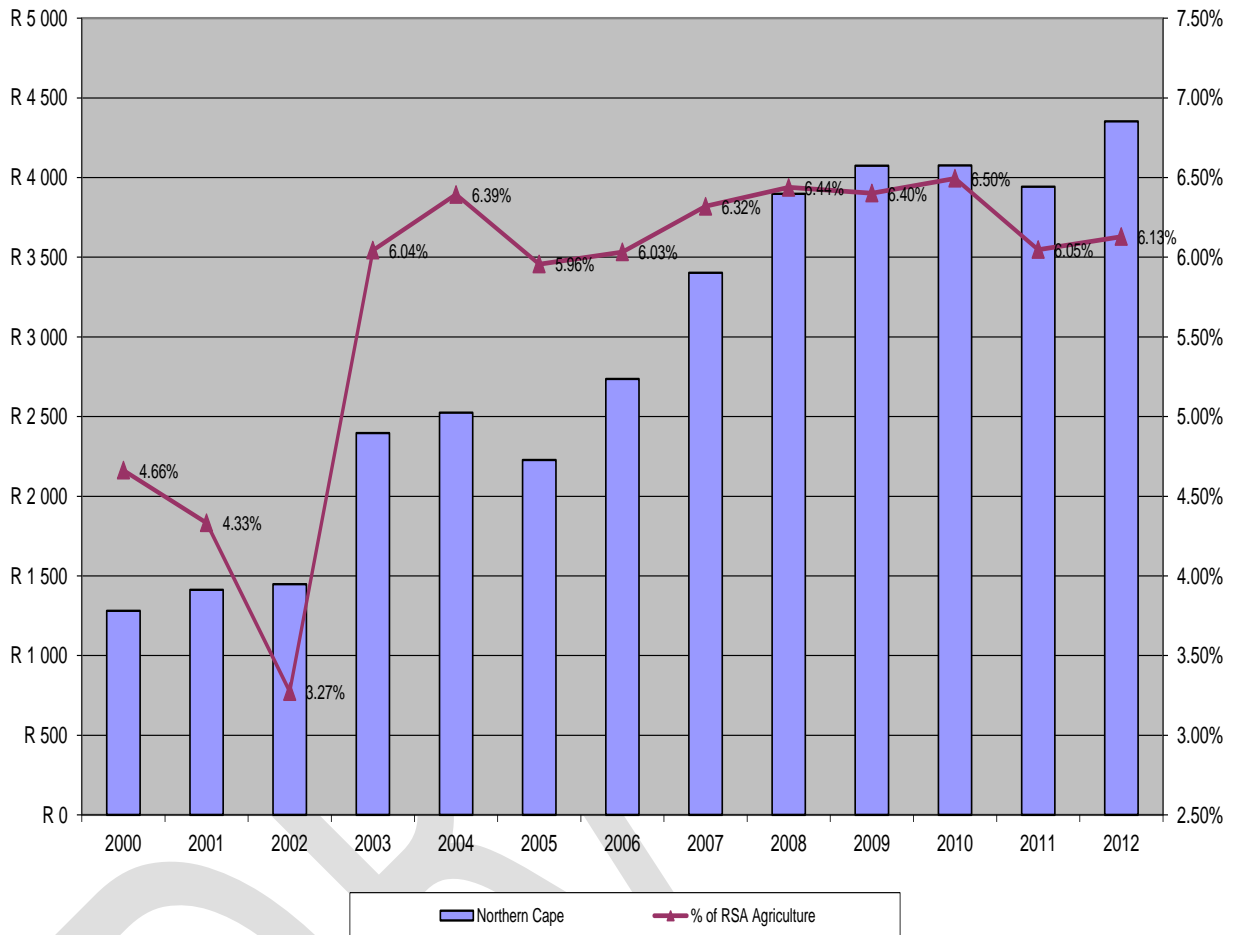
**Figure 62: GDP at current prices (R'000) in the N Cape for Agriculture- 2000 to 2012**



The fact that the agricultural sector in the Northern Cape grew faster than national agriculture for this period also means that the provincial agriculture is gaining in its overall contribution to national agriculture. In 2000, the contribution from the Northern Cape agriculture to national agriculture was 4,66% and this increased to 6,13% by 2012 (see graph below).

**Figure 63: GDP at current prices (R'000) in the N Cape vs RSA for Agriculture - 2000 to 2012**

**GDP at Current Prices (R million): N-Cape Agriculture and RSA Agriculture**  
Stats SA: 2013



It is a global trend that agriculture’s contribution to an economy tends to decline as industrial development increases. The agricultural sector is also subject to huge annual fluctuations.

Agriculture’s real value to the economy is embedded in several other less obvious economic functions that include:

- Agriculture’s forward and backward linkages.
- Its ability to earn foreign exchange.
- Employment creation; and
- As a provider of food and food security.

The agricultural sector in Northern Cape is increasing when measured at constant 2000 prices. The contribution of agriculture towards GDP of the province was fairly stable between 6% and 6,5% since 2003 whereas the Northern Cape’s contribution to the country’s GDP is most of the time between 1% and 3%.

Linking it with the rest of the economy, approximately 70 per cent of agricultural output is used as intermediary products in other sectors. The GDP multiplier for agriculture is 1,51 as compared with 1,58 for total average economy. (R1 in the production by the agriculture sector will result in an R 1,51 increase in the GDP of the country). The agriculture sector outweighs all other sectors with a labour multiplier of 24,17 as opposed to 8,16 for the total economy.

## **12.2 Land reform**

### **12.2.1 Land redistribution**

Since 1994 a total of 1 057 109 ha of land has been redistributed to 6 310 beneficiaries in the province. This was through SLAG, LRAD (Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development) and PLAS programmes.

### **12.2.2 Land Restitution**

In the Northern Cape around 2 750 land claims were lodged with the Land Claims Commission of which the majority are urban (1 892 claims) with the rural claims numbering 858. Whilst in the rural claims most have opted for land restoration the majority of urban claimants have opted for financial compensation. To date 758 893 hectares have been restored to 98 613 beneficiaries in the province.

## **12.3 Agricultural Development, Support and Transformation**

### **12.3.1 Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP)**

The Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP) was initiated in 2004 with the objective of providing effective agricultural support services and promoting and facilitating agricultural development by targeting the beneficiaries of land restitution and redistribution as well as other disadvantaged producers who acquired land through private means and are engaged in value adding enterprises domestically or are involved in export.

The support services are provided within the framework of the following six pillars:

- Information and knowledge management.
- Technical, advisory and regulatory services.
- Training and capacity building.
- Marketing and business development.
- On and off farm infrastructure; and
- Financial Services (branded as MAFISA).

When the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme was first implemented support was focused mainly on on-farm infrastructure development. This was due to agricultural infrastructure backlog at the time and the huge demand which already existed, particularly for infrastructure development on land reform projects. The table below shows the number of projects from 2004/05 to 2013/14.



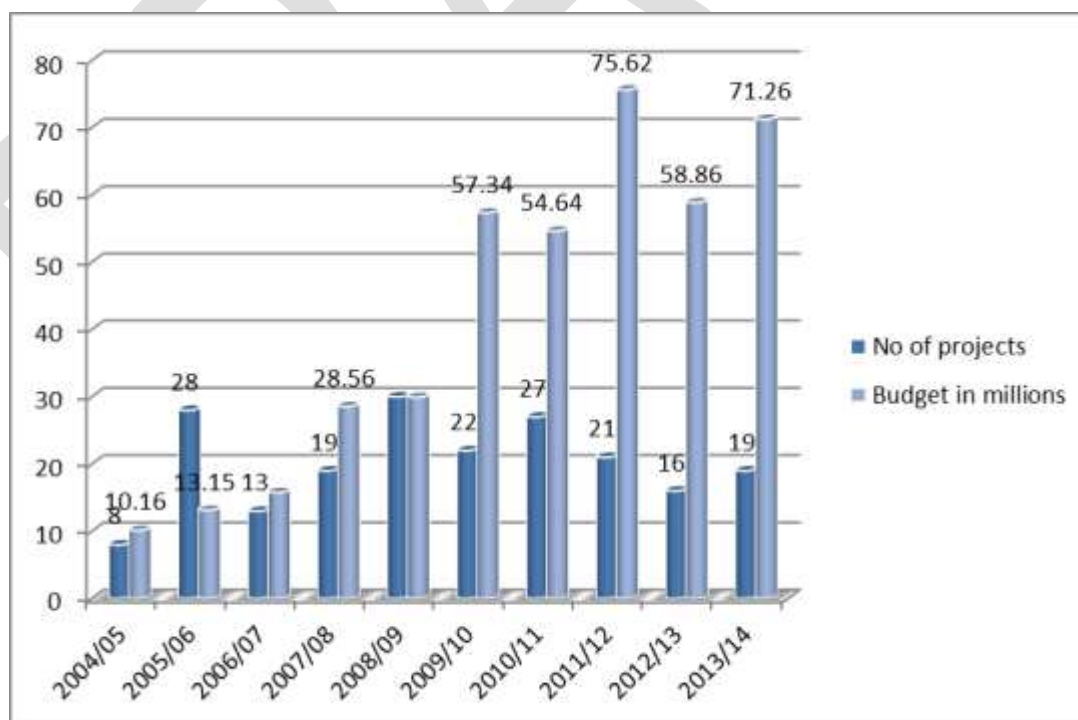
**Table 75: No. of projects, annual allocation and number of beneficiaries in CASP from 2004/05 to 2013/14**

Financial year	Number of projects	Funding R'000	Number of beneficiaries
2004/05	8	10 158	202
2005/06	28	13 148	719
2006/07	13	15 777	1 524
2007/08	19	28 555	897
2008/09	30	29 926	13 134
2009/10	22	57 359	2 173
2010/11	27	54 641	2 385
2011/12	21	75 620	778
2012/13	16	58 859	1 375
2013/14	19	71 261	929
<b>Total</b>	<b>203</b>	<b>415 043</b>	<b>24 116</b>

Source: DALR

To date over R415 million has been spent on the programme on two hundred and three (203) projects have been implemented and a total of 24 116 recipients have benefited.

**Figure 64: No. of projects and annual allocation for CASP from 2004/05 to 2013/4**



Source: DALR

Most of the support provided by this programme is biased towards on-farm infrastructure that includes, inter alia, upgrading of infrastructure to improve livestock management, installation of solar pumps, fencing, stock water systems,

storage facilities, sub-surface drainage systems, irrigation infrastructure and drilling, testing and equipping of boreholes. Funding was also used to assist farmers with the purchasing of machinery, production inputs and labour cost.

### 12.3.2 Ilima/Letsema

Ilima/Letsema grant funding was established in 2008/09 financial year as a complementary programme to the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme. The key objective of this programme is to fight poverty by increasing food production in South Africa through farming. The programme also focuses on unlocking agricultural production potential by investing in other strategic programmes, in particular, investment in infrastructure that includes the rehabilitation of the irrigation schemes, and other value adding projects.

The table below indicates the number of projects, the total expenditure and the total number of beneficiaries for each year since the inception of the Ilima/Letsema programme.

**Table 76: No of projects funded, budget allocation and no. of beneficiaries for the Ilima/ Letsema from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

<b>Financial year</b>	<b>Number of projects</b>	<b>Allocation R'000</b>	<b>Expenditure R'000</b>	<b>Number of beneficiaries</b>
2008/09	1	30 000	31 535	84
2009/10	2	20 835	20 835	133
2010/11	3	30 000	29 832	201
2011/12	26	60 000	60 153	664
2012/13	12	63 000	48 651	3 130
2013/14	13	84 393	81 633	6 149
<b>Total</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>288 213</b>	<b>272 639</b>	<b>10 361</b>

Source: DALR

Since 2008 until the end of the 2013/14 financial year a total of fifty seven projects have been funded through this programme across all five districts in the province. The total expenditure to date (end March 2014) is over R272 million which represents 90% of the funds allocated and the total number of beneficiaries are 10361. Projects funded under this programme include construction of storage facilities, upgrading of irrigation infrastructure, construction of reservoirs, funding for production inputs and development of vineyards.

Despite the many challenges, the support through both the CASP and Ilima/Letsema programmes have brought about a significant change in terms of improved ways and methods of farming to most smallholder and emerging farmers in the province, consequently resulting in better yields in production. Agro-processing infrastructure funded through the programme has also contributed to a significant number of jobs created by the agricultural sector.

### 12.3.3 Orange River Emerging Farmer Settlement and Development Programme (OREFSDP)

This programme is aimed at broadening access to agriculture through the settlement and development of small farmers along the Orange River by allocating 4000 hectares of water rights and providing support for irrigation development,

mechanization and production inputs and market linkages. This water rights allocation also seeks to increase agricultural output, job creation and to create an enabling environment for public-private partnership. The allocation of water rights is founded on the following principles:

- Efficient use of water
- Environmental sustainability
- Social sustainability
- Institutional sustainability
- Economic and financial sustainability
- Job creation
- Agro-processing; and
- Skills development

A total of 16 projects have been funded through this programme and a total of 3 178 hectares of water rights have been allocated thus far. The table below lists the projects under the OREFSDP, the water rights allocation for each, the number of beneficiaries and the status of each project.

**Table 77: OREFSDP projects that have been allocated water rights**

Local Municipality	Project Name	No of Ha Allocated	No. of Beneficiaries	Status
Kai! Garib	Augrabies Falls	100	73	Development to start in 2015
Kai! Garib	Bakenrant	240	15	5 ha Grapes developed
Kai! Garib	Berekisanang	500	58	187,5 ha citrus and 50ha table grapes developed
Kai! Garib	Blocuso	216	466	Infrastructure for water for 216 ha developed; 18ha wine grapes and 9 ha raisins planted
Khara Hais	Dea Gloria	560		40 ha olives planted
Kai! Garib	Ebenaeser	40	30	Development to start in 2015
Kai! Garib	Itereleng	40	33	10 ha table grapes planted
Nama Khoi	Kabis	300	2	Development to start
Kai! Garib	Karstens Women Workers Trust	400	60	Main water supply completed; 95ha table grapes , 5ha pastures & 15 ha watermelons
Thembelihle	Little River Trading	260	6	
Khai-Ma	Pella-Pelsan	85	Community	55 ha developed for

				essential oils; Bulk water supply for 33 ha of grapes completed
Pixley ka Seme	Reggie Sibley	27	1	
Kai! Garib	Rekathusana Dev of Citrus	100	63	20 ha citrus established
Khara Hais	Sanddraai Arbeidsgenot	60	58	60 ha vineyards established
Kai! Garib	Sosa Rona	200	30	20 ha raisins established
Kai! Garib	Thusano	150	26	15 ha raisins and 10 ha table grapes developed
<b>Total</b>		<b>3 728</b>	<b>921</b>	

*Source: DALR*

An analysis of the information in the above table indicates that the majority of the projects, namely fourteen projects, are in the ZF Mgcawu district where a total of 3056 ha of water rights have been allocated. Of the remaining two projects each are in the Namakwa and Pixle ka Seme. There are 921 beneficiaries in fourteen projects and for the Pella-Pelsan project the entire community are the beneficiaries.

## **12.4 Food security**

Food security in the Northern Cape remains a challenge that is further compounded by the ever escalating prices of basic foods. Furthermore, the high unemployment rates and the lack of job opportunities exacerbate the food security of many households which results in many families not being able to access quality food. A number of food security initiatives including the Integrated Food Security Strategy and the Fetsa Tlala project have been implemented by government to address these problems.

### **12.4.1 Integrated Food Security Strategy**

Food security has remained one of government's key priorities since 1994 but the unprecedented rise in food prices in 2008 throughout the world resulted in an increase in the number of poor and vulnerable people becoming food insecure and also saw poverty deepening in many of our communities. Although the implementation of the Integrated Food Security Strategy of South Africa has given more impetus to an integrated approach at an intergovernmental level and with other role players outside government, to address these challenges a broader approach was required to assist communities as well as providing mitigating strategies to complement their livelihoods.

An integrated approach continues to be critical to strengthen government's efforts in its fight against poverty and food insecurity and the Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme (IFSNP) was established to coordinate activities that are aimed at addressing the problems through thorough planning and implementation. To this end a number of food security interventions have been implemented through a collaborative process.

Achievements in the past five years through the implementation of this programme include the following:

- A total of 1 912 households were provided with either garden starter packs or poultry starter packs for their own food production. Most of these households were identified through the Balelapa Project and the War on Poverty Programme.
- In the same period 38 community gardens were established throughout the province with production inputs provided.
- Support was provided to 391 schools (both primary and high schools in the province) to maintain food gardens to supplement the school feeding scheme with fresh vegetables.
- Five income generating projects were established through this programme
- In collaboration with the national department seventeen small holder farmers were supported to plant 954 ha of maize in Frances Baard District. The produce harvested will contribute towards the national target of reducing food insecurity at household level.

#### 12.4.2 Fetsa Tlala

The National Development Plan sets out various methods and targets to eradicate poverty and identifies food and nutrition security as a key element to address poverty and inequality. Fetsa Tlala is one such programme and is an integrated government intervention that seeks to promote food security and address the structural causes of food insecurity that continue to perpetuate inequality and social exclusion. It aims to create more than a food secure country for all South Africans but to also eradicate hunger. It is therefore an overarching framework that maximises synergy between the different strategies and programmes of government and civil society. In line with the framework a set of targeted policy responses is being implemented and is intended to, amongst others, support subsistence and smallholder farmers. One of these responses is the One Million Hectare Food Production Programme.

This programme sets out a national target of 1 million hectares to be put under crop production of which 550 000 ha will come from land reform beneficiaries and 450 000 from communal farmers. This initiative is expected to put the 1 million hectares under production within five years (by 2018/19) with 350 000 hectares under production in the first year (2013). The benefactors of this programme will in the main be the vulnerable and indigent communities of society.

The Northern Cape Province has been allocated a target of 1 500 hectares and in the first year of implementation the province has established 12 projects under white maize production. A break down according to district of projects together with the number of hectares per project is shown in the table below.

**Table 78: Projects in the Northern Cape of 1 million Ha food production programme**

District	Project Name	Hectares Planted
Frances Baard	Rooibult	40
	Smith's Mine	40
	Witfontein	20

	Diatla Tshwaraganang	17
	Vh 1	17
	Ganspan	150
	Katlego Farm	50
	Kilarney	52
	Vaalboshoek	40
	Dipitseng	20
	Orapeleng	44
Namakwa	Beauvallon (Richtersveld)	120
	<b>Total</b>	<b>610</b>

*Source: DALR*

As at December 2013 a total of 610 hectares was under maize production and if this progress is evaluated against the national targets assigned over the five year period then the province is way ahead and will achieve its target of 1 500 hectares inside of three years.

## **12.5 Rural Development**

The Department of Agriculture developed both short term and long term strategies and launched the Broadening Access to Agriculture Thrust (BATAT) as an implementation programme, which is aimed at transforming the government's services and re-orienting the budget in agriculture in order that the provisions of the national constitution as well as the requirements of the Reconstruction and Development Programme are met. BATAT is embedded in the White Paper on Agriculture and was interwoven with the budget reprioritisation process that was undertaken in the province.

The objectives of BATAT were to design and establish mechanisms for broadening access to agriculture for previously excluded farmers in terms of their needs for financial services, human resource development, technology development, delivery systems and marketing services.

### **12.5.1 Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP)**

In 2009 the SA Government adopted a 'renewed and focused attempt to facilitate and promote rural development in order to create vibrant, sustainable and equitable rural communities. The key objectives of this programme as it linked to agriculture was the implementation of a comprehensive rural development strategy linked to land and agrarian reform and food security and the management and use of natural resources in a sustainable manner.

The Comprehensive Rural Development Strategy (CRDP) was first piloted in Riemvasmaak in the same year as the adoption of this programme. This pilot project provided many valuable lessons, particularly the successes achieved as a result of an integrated service delivery approach. The lessons learnt from the Riemvasmaak project formed the basis of the expansion of the CRDP into other areas in the province, namely, Heuningsvlei, Schmidtsdrift, Renosterberg, Magareng and Ganap Village in Kuruman.

#### **12.5.1.1 Riemvasmaak**

Significant progress has been achieved thus far in the Riemvasmaak project. This includes the establishment of community gardens with the construction of the

nursery and irrigation system at a cost of R500 000, construction of a livestock handling facility (R500 000), provision of equipment for the maintenance of boreholes on communal land, surveying of grazing camps and stock water system of 46 000 hectares and the distribution of seedlings to 45 households for backyard gardening.

Other initiatives are 20 hectares of lucerne development in Vaaldrift, upgrading of 233km of border fencing on new farms in Riemvasmaak and irrigation development in Vredesvallei.

Non-agricultural development included the installation of bulk water pipeline, 100 solar panels, computers for the public, water tanks at 2 schools, the construction of 100 houses, a clinic, an oxidation pond and 48 VIP toilets, upgrading of school infrastructure, sports field, 2 community halls and internal roads and the purchase of equipment.

#### **12.5.1.2 Heuningsvlei**

A number of agricultural projects have been initiated that comprise of the expansion of a stock water scheme at Morale Ranch, stock water and handling facilities in 3 villages and stock water and fencing at Madibeng.

Other projects include the construction of 66 houses and a community hall, upgrading of the primary school and access road to the Makhubung Village, paving of roads and the development of another cemetery. The following have also been completed or have commenced:

- Social profiling in Wards 1, 2 in Joe Morolong and Ward 13 in Gasegonyana
- The 1st phase of the Bulk water infrastructure project completed and the 2nd phase has commenced in 2013; and
- Implementation of the national fencing scheme has commenced, with the construction of 143km for 2013/14 financial year.

#### **12.5.1.3 Schmidtsdrift**

The following are the agricultural development projects, some of which have been completed whilst others are currently in progress:

- A total of 119 km of border fencing has been completed.
- A stock watering system has been installed at a cost of R2,68 million and the reticulation includes 11 solar panels, 78 water tanks, 96 drinking troughs and 21km of pipeline.
- Mobile livestock handling facilities have been constructed.
- Soil investigation for irrigation development completed.
- Provision of ten households with poultry starter packs; and
- The establishment of a community garden in Schmidtsdrift Number 3 for ten beneficiaries with an irrigation system, tanks, borehole with solar pump, fencing and shade netting.

Other projects include the construction of 100 houses and 100 flush toilets, upgrading of the water system, the completion of sewage network and the installation of solar panels

#### **12.5.1.4 Renosterberg**

Two job creation projects were initiated, one an Expanded Public Works Programme that employed 125 people and the other a Community Workers Programme project that employed 1 050 people. Two (2) community food gardens and Eighty (80) household gardens have been established, livestock census was conducted and vaccinations were done, six youths were trained on windmill repairing and two piggeries established.

The construction of additional classrooms at a primary school and the construction of 100 houses are underway and the construction of a new primary school in Phillipsvale has begun.

#### **12.5.1.5 Magareng**

The first phase of Magareng Revitalization project has been completed with

- 56km of fencing erected; and
- 8 handling facilities constructed.

Revitalization of Warrenton Superchicken

- Upgrading of the abattoir and 9 chicken houses have been completed.
- Slaughtering of chickens commenced in May 2012.
- Upgrading of the market stall and a storage shed have been completed; and
- An electrified border fence was constructed.

### **12.6 Agro-processing**

The Provincial Growth and Development Strategy recognised that a key driver for promoting the growth, diversification and transformation of the provincial economy in general, and for the expansion and diversification of the agricultural sector in particular is the promotion of agro-industrial processing. The NCPGDS states that “adding value through vertically or horizontally integrating primary production and agro-processing systems present the best opportunity to increase the viability, profitability and sustainability of agricultural production systems.”

The benefits of agro-processing are multi -fold and are realised in:

- Increasing the provincial value chain
- Bringing jobs into rural areas
- Acting as a driver of rural economies and therefore job creation
- Bringing the market closer to primary producers; and
- Creating economic opportunities for BBBEE.

Subsequent to the adoption of the NCPGDS the department developed an agro-processing strategy for the Northern Cape in 2005, which formed the basis of



several agro-processing initiatives. Both the Vineyard Development Scheme and the Revitalisation of the Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation Scheme have subsequently become anchor programmes in the Strategic Integrated Project Number 11 (SIP 11): Agro-logistics and Rural Infrastructure. The aim of SIP 11 is to improve investment in infrastructure that supports the expansion of agricultural production, small-scale farming and rural development while at the same time creating employment.

### **12.6.1 Vineyard Development Scheme**

The Vineyard Development Scheme was initiated as the Wine Development Programme in 2007 in collaboration between the department of Agriculture and Land Reform, the Northern Cape Wine Development Trust and the National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC). This initiative is in response to the need to increase the production of wine in South Africa which is currently in short supply and cannot meet the local demand resulting in the importation of wine.

The need to produce grapes locally for the production of wines was identified, which in turn also provided an opportunity for smallholder farmers to participate in the wine industry and become meaningful players in the industry through acquisition of shares in the wine cellars. This initiative also extends to other grape industries, such as raisins and grape juice production.

To date, a total of 90 hectares of new vineyard has been established along the Orange River. Emerging farmers and projects participating are: Blocuso, Realeboga, Sanddraai Arbeidsgenot, Riemvasmaak, Esksteenskuil and Eiland Women project. Existing projects that are supported include Valley Junction and Middle Eiland. BLOCUSO had their first harvest in 2010, of approximately 150 tons of wine grapes.

The wine development programme has been built into and forms part of the Orange River Emerging Farmer Settlement and Development Programme (OREFSDP).

### **12.6.2 Rooibos Tea Processing and Marketing**

The Rooibos project is an initiative of the Rooibos Tea producers in the Nieuwoudtville and Suid-Bokkeveld area of the Namakwa District which currently produces approximately 17% of the national Rooibos yield. Most of this crop is, however, transported and sold in the Western Cape Province where most of the processing of the product takes place. The vast distances and poor support systems available to producers created an environment where producers in the Northern Cape found themselves in a less competitive situation than their neighbours in the Western Cape. A need for a Northern Cape based Rooibos processing plant became necessary if production was to be more cost effective.

With marketing opportunities opening up in the eastern countries which are big consumers of herbal teas, the primary aim of the Rooibos development project at Nieuwoudtville centres on economic growth, the development of the community and economic empowerment, through the development of a Rooibos industry for the Northern Cape.

Support is also being provided to the smallholder farmers to expand their tea fields and increase the yields.

- 85 smallholder and 33 commercial farmers are participating in this project.
- Pasteurisation of tea started in May 2011 and created 20 permanent jobs.
- On average, 23 seasonal jobs are created annually during tea intake season.

## 12.7 Livestock Production and Development Programme

The Livestock Production and Development Programme (LPDP) was developed as part of the department's implementation of the customised commodity sector strategy in line with the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy and within the national context of livestock massification country-wide. The department has provided various support packages to the beneficiaries of this programme to enable them to participate meaningfully in the programme.

### 12.7.1 Nguni project

The Nguni project is a joint venture between the Northern Cape DALR, the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and the Free State University whereby Nguni breeding material is distributed to qualifying smallholder farmers. These animals are made available to smallholder farmers on a loan agreement, requiring the return of the same number of Ngunis over a five year period to the Trust. The main objectives of this initiative are:

- To upgrade cattle in communal and rural areas of the Northern Cape to Nguni status through procurement, propagation and distribution of Nguni bloodstock
- To promote systematic grazing systems that will provide feed for livestock during critical periods
- To develop the skills and capacities necessary to establish a genre of future black commercial livestock farmers; and
- To introduce affirmative steps to eradicate bovine venereal disease within the targeted areas

Since the start of the project in 2007, 64 farms have to date been provided with Nguni cattle with each farm receiving 2 bulls and 10 heifers. Breakdown of the farms according to District is as follows:

**Table 79: Distribution of Nguni cattle to the number of farms per district**

District	Number of farms
Siyanda	29
Namakwa	9
John Taolo Gaetsewe	12
Pixley Ka Seme	10
Frances Baard	4
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>64</b>

Source: DALR

### **12.7.2 Commercialization of goats**

The provincial Department of Agriculture and the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) conducted studies which, inter alia, investigated the development of goat production on a commercial basis. This led to the establishing of the Kgalagadi Dipudi Enterprise as a nodal project as part of the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy. This later led to the formation of the Kalahari Kid Corporation thus formalising the commercialisation of goats industry in the province and to later become an anchor project of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy.

By the end of the 2013/14 fiscal year 187 goat producing legal entities were established of which 146 are cooperatives registered in terms of the Agricultural Cooperative Act of 1981 and the remaining 41 are close corporations. The majority of the registered cooperatives have entered into supplier agreements with the Kalahari Kid Corporation.

The department continues to support small-scale and emerging goat farmers and cooperatives and has implemented various activities that have to date resulted in the following:

- Purchasing and establishing a production farm for the continuous production and supply of breeding stock for the emerging farmers.
- Development of a data base on the number of registered cooperatives, land used by the cooperatives, number of goats and future requirements related to animals and infrastructure.
- Assessment of the infrastructure requirements for the goat cooperatives.
- Development of training manuals and the provisioning of accredited training to goat farmers belonging to the cooperatives.
- Providing emerging farmers with starter-packs that include medication, ear tag applicators and weighing scales; and
- Supplying seed stock i.e. breeding stock, of 100 does and 3 rams for emerging goat farming cooperatives.

### **12.8 Sustainable use of natural resources**

It has long been accepted that there is a need to change the way we manage and use our land and water resources so that the long term potential of these natural resources are sustained and optimised. In the light of this the province has embarked on two major programmes, namely, the Revitalisation of the Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation Scheme and the Land Care Programme.

#### **12.8.1 Revitalisation of Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation Scheme**

The Northern Cape has approximately 140 000 ha that are being irrigated from the Vaal, Harts, Riet and Orange Rivers. Efficient use of irrigation water is therefore critical in order to sustain this natural resource. The Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation scheme is the largest irrigation water scheme of its kind in South Africa with approximately 33 500 ha of land under irrigation. The geographical area of the

scheme crosses the Northern Cape and North West provincial borders. Over the past few years, the condition of the water supply infrastructure has deteriorated rapidly and the effect of waterlogging has increased to such an extent that continued agricultural production on the land has been severely affected. Currently, approximately a third of all irrigation plots on the Vaalharts are experiencing problems with waterlogging.

To ensure the future viability of this scheme the Revitalisation of the Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation Scheme is a programme developed with a view to rehabilitating the irrigation infrastructure by upgrading the canals, addressing the waterlogging and salination problems and putting in measures for the efficient and sustainable use of water. A feasibility study was conducted in 2011 and recommended an infrastructure replacement and /or upgrading programme to be implemented over a 20 year period at a cost of just under R4 billion.

Work on the refurbishment of this irrigation scheme, however, began in 2007/08 and by the end of the 2013/14 financial year the total expenditure amounted to over R54 million. Progress to date includes the following:

- Sub-surface drainage systems totalling 43 714 metres have been installed covering an area of 438 hectares..
- Twenty four overnight storage dams were constructed.
- A total of 11 171 metres of communal drainage lines were installed servicing 699 hectares.

More than 404 jobs have been created from various activities which include sub-surface drainage systems and overnight dams.

### **12.8.2 Land Care Programme**

The Land Care Programme was launched in 1997 when the need was identified to change the way land and water resources were managed in order that the long term potential of these natural resources are sustained and optimised. . Since the origins of modern agriculture, poor farming practices have led to land degradation, for example, soil erosion, overgrazing, wetland and watercourse destruction and bush encroachment. These land degradation problems have been, to some extent, at the cost of achieving a highly productive agricultural sector.

They are also due to a large extent to inadequate information being available to land-users regarding the consequences of their land management decisions and also the off-site effects of some land-users' actions on others. Continued deterioration of our land resource base is likely to result in further costs to the people of South Africa through the loss of economic production, loss of ecological processes and biological diversity, decline in economic opportunities for rural communities, and the degradation of other related resources such as freshwater. These costs may impose a burden on future generations and restrict their capacity to choose how their land and related resources are utilised. Under this programme, the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development implemented fifty five projects at a total cost of R42,54m over a 5 year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14. A breakdown of the budget and the number of projects implemented from 2009/10- 2013/14 is given in the table below.

**Table 80: Budget and no. of projects implemented annually in the Land Care Programme from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

<b>Financial Year</b>	<b>No of projects Implemented</b>	<b>Expenditure in R'000</b>
2009/10	18	5 656
2010/11	13	5 995
2011/12	9	6 110
2012/13	10	12 724
2013/14	5	12 055
<b>Total</b>	<b>55</b>	<b>R42 540</b>

*Source: DALR*

The most significant achievements over the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14 were as follows:

- A total of 143 825 hectares of farm land was rehabilitated.
- A total of 816 green jobs were created.
- Nineteen capacity building initiatives were held; and
- Nine land care awareness campaigns were conducted.

## **12.9 Agricultural Credit for Small Farmers**

The Micro Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (MAFISA) programme was developed to address financial challenges experienced by the previously disadvantaged in the agricultural sector, particularly smallholder farmers and agricultural entrepreneurs. The provincial launch took place in July 2007. The number of applications that followed showed a high level of interest from the targeted beneficiaries. To date, 469 farmers have applied for MAFISA loans and 119 applications were approved, for a total of R 9,175 million.

The overall performance of the programme has been hampered severely by a variety of challenges which, among others relate chiefly to the requirements of the National Credit Act. However, for those farmers that were able to access the loans, they were able to pursue their various agricultural production needs and the success has been shown by their ability to repay their loans.

## **12.10 Other High Impact Agricultural Projects**

### **12.10.1 Tshwaraganang Hydroponics**

The project is situated in the town of Windsorton in the Magareng municipality. The department funded the establishment of a greenhouse and the packing facility. Cucumbers are produced and these are in turn packaged and sold to Shoprite and Checkers through Fresh Mark. This project has created 18 permanent jobs.

### 12.10.2 Warrenton Super Chicken

The department funded the renovation of 9 chicken houses and the abattoir, fencing of the farm, renovation of the roadside market stall and purchasing of production inputs in the form of day old chickens and feed for the first 2 production cycles.

A total of 29 employment opportunities (22 permanent and 7 temporary) were created with the commencement of slaughtering and packaging of birds during 2011.

### 12.10.3 Ramskop Abattoir Joint Venture

Smallholder farmers and workers of the Calvinia KLK Abattoir (Ramskop) were assisted to acquire ownership equity in the abattoir as part of government objective to facilitate the ownership of market channels by HDIs. A total of R1,5 million was contributed by the department towards the expansion of the abattoir throughput. This also contributed to the creation of an additional six permanent jobs and 50 temporary jobs.

### 12.10.4 Emthanjeni Hydroponics

This project was a failed project that was revived by DALR in 2011. This project produces cocktail and plum tomatoes supplied to Freshmark. The Department has funded this project out of CASP funds and an annual breakdown of funding is given in the table below.

**Table 81: Annual allocation for the Emthanjeni Hydroponics project from 2011/12 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Allocation R'000	
2011/12	2 400	Construction of 15m x 30m tunnel and installation of an irrigation system
2012/13	3 700	Installation of a solar screen, back-up generator,
2013/14	5 600	Provision of mobile office space, EIA completed, purchase of cooler truck, production inputs and electric fence

*Source: DALR*

A total of 17 job opportunities, 13 permanent and 4 temporary, have been created since 2011.

## 12.11 Training, Skills Development and Research

### 12.11.1 Training and Skills Development

The Department has developed several programmes to improve the capacity and skills of farmers, with a particular emphasis on emerging farmers and the beneficiaries of land reform. These initiatives involved collaborating with various institutions, among others, Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute (GADI), Taung Agricultural College, and Agri-Seta.

For the period 2002 to 2014 approximately 15 140 farmers received training on various aspects of farming which included veld management, animal disease control, financial management, crop production, animal husbandry, export readiness and various other soft skills.

The Agricultural Education and Training Strategy was developed in 2005 to address the skills gap in the agricultural sector. In response to this, the Provincial Agricultural Education and Training Forum was launched in the Northern Cape in 2008 to guide and advice on the implementation of the strategy in the province.

Furthermore, the department established a Training Sub-Directorate dedicated to coordinate the training programmes and streamline resources. A total of R 73, 892 million was allocated for the Extension Recovery Plan from 2008/09 to 2012/13 and the funds were used for the recruitment of extension officers, training and upgrading of their qualifications and for the procurement of the necessary information and technology equipment. Some of the things achieved through the use of the funds were the following:

- 25 new Extension officers were recruited.
- 35 officials enrolled for the Post Graduate Degree Programme; and
- 61 officials also received training on various technical skills.

#### **12.11.2 Research**

The Department also contributes significantly to the agricultural scientific knowledge base of the country through the research done at the seven research stations in the province which are managed as outdoor laboratories for agricultural scientists and farmers. Although significantly constrained due to limited human resources and a general lack of scientists through the years, the department has through linkages with tertiary institutes, commodity organisation (e.g, Cotton SA, South African Dried Fruit, national emerging red meat producers organisation etc ), government owned organisations (ARC, HSRC, etc), farmer's organisations and international partners such as International Union for the Conservation of Nature (IUCN) supported research in crop and animal production and natural resource management.

There are seven research stations that are distributed across the province and these are: Eiland, Vaalharts, Rietrivier, Koopmansfontein, Carnarvon, Karakul and Wesselsvlei. They provide specialist support services to the farmers with regard to resource utilisation technology, crop production technology, animal production technology and rendering of farm support services.

## **13.ROADS AND PUBLIC WORKS**

### **13.1 Introduction**

Some of the key deliverables that Roads and Public Works have set for the department, include, amongst other things, the following:

- Enhancing job creation through infrastructure investment.
- Implementation and coordination of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) to address poverty and unemployment.
- The development and strengthening of SMME's targeting previously disadvantaged individuals and communities.
- Development of skills; and
- Ensure that Broad Based Black Economic empowerment is realised.

The Department has further, committed itself to the achievement of the following Outcomes:

#### ***Outcome 4: Decent employment through inclusive economic growth..***

The key output identified with regard to Outcome 4 is to ensure the maintenance and strategic expansion of the provincial road and rail network and the operational efficiency, capacity and competitiveness of the sea ports.

#### ***Outcome 6: An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.***

The following outputs have been identified regarding Outcome 6:

- Implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme; and
- Improved support to small business and cooperatives.

### **13.2 Road Infrastructure**

The Northern Cape road network provides the dominant mode of freight and passenger transport and plays a vital role in the economy of the province. The provincial government is responsible for the proclaimed road network that comprises of 3 489 kilometres (13,4%) of paved roads and 22 510 kilometres (86,6%) of unpaved roads.

#### **13.2.1 The Road Network**

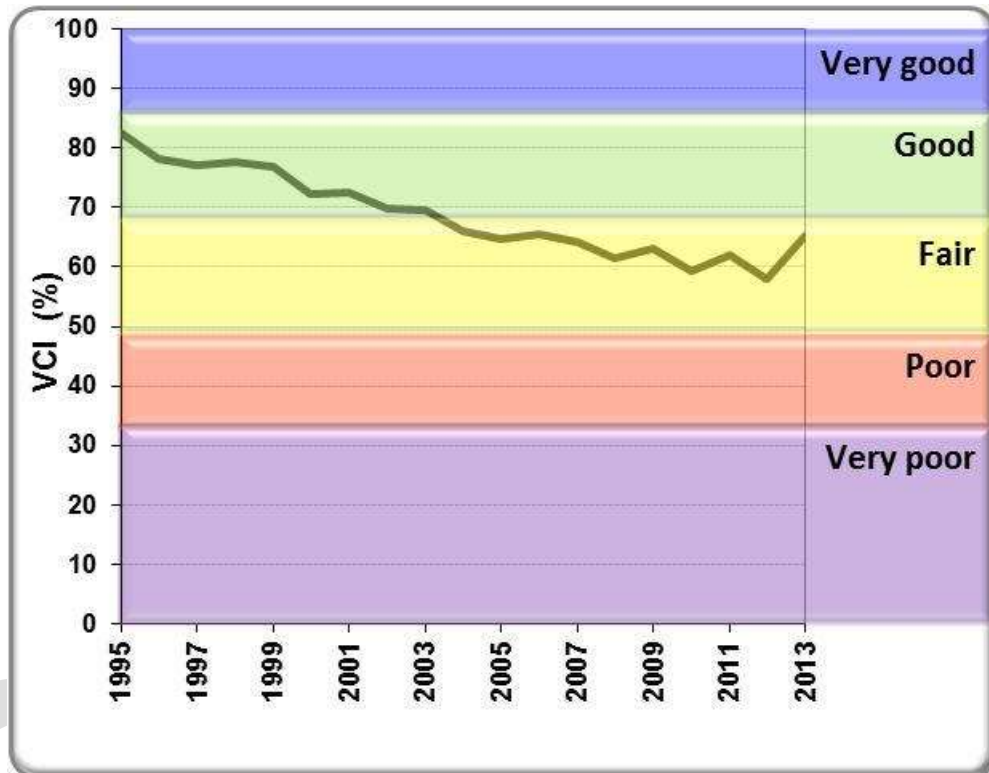
The condition of roads is measured in terms of the visual condition index (VCI) that describes the surface as well as the structural and functional condition of paved roads. The VCI is measured between 0 (indicating very poor conditions) to 100 (indicating very good conditions).



### 13.2.1.1 Paved Road Network

The overall condition of provincial paved roads has deteriorated from an average VCI of 91% in 1991 to an average VCI of 58% in 2012. However, in 2013 the average VCI improved by 7% to 65%. This can be attributed to the increase in spend on the maintenance of the paved roads. Nevertheless, despite this improvement in the visual condition index this is still 10% less than the national standard according to the 2012 RAMP. The figure below indicates the average VCI trend for paved roads in the Northern Cape from 1995 to 2013.

**Figure 65: The average paved road VCI from 1995 to 2013**



Source: DRPW

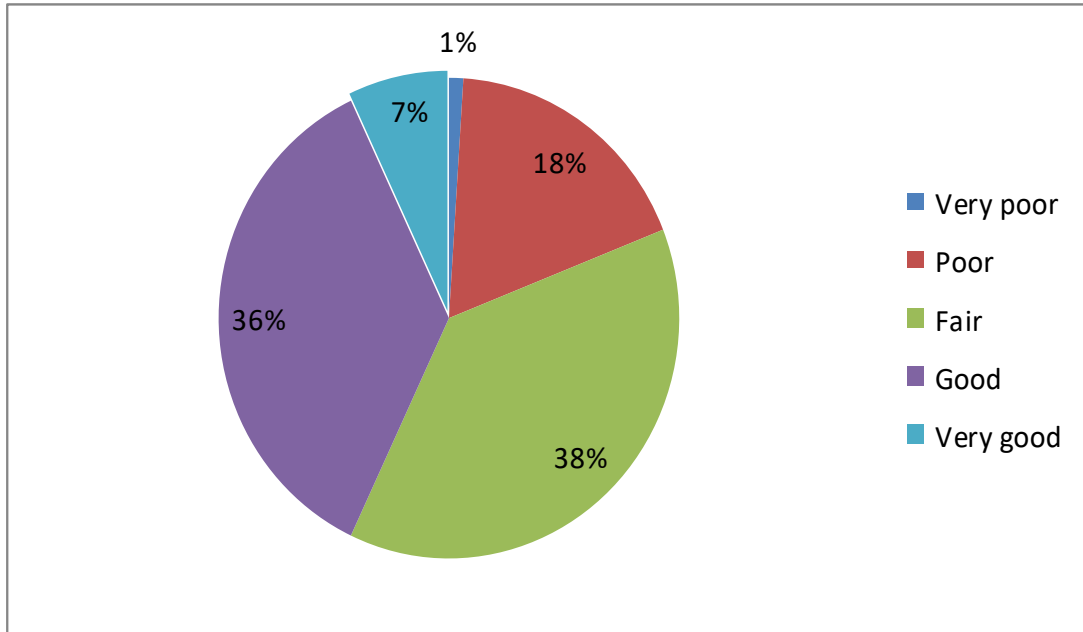
Figure 65 above clearly indicates that the general downward trend in the VCI has been arrested and turned around.

From 2012 to 2013 the following changes in the condition of paved roads have occurred:

- The proportion of very good roads has increased from 3% to 7%.
- Roads classified as good has increased from 24% to 36%.
- The proportion of roads considered in a fair condition has decreased from 40% to 38%; and
- The net effect of all these changes has seen the poor and very poor categories decrease by 14%.

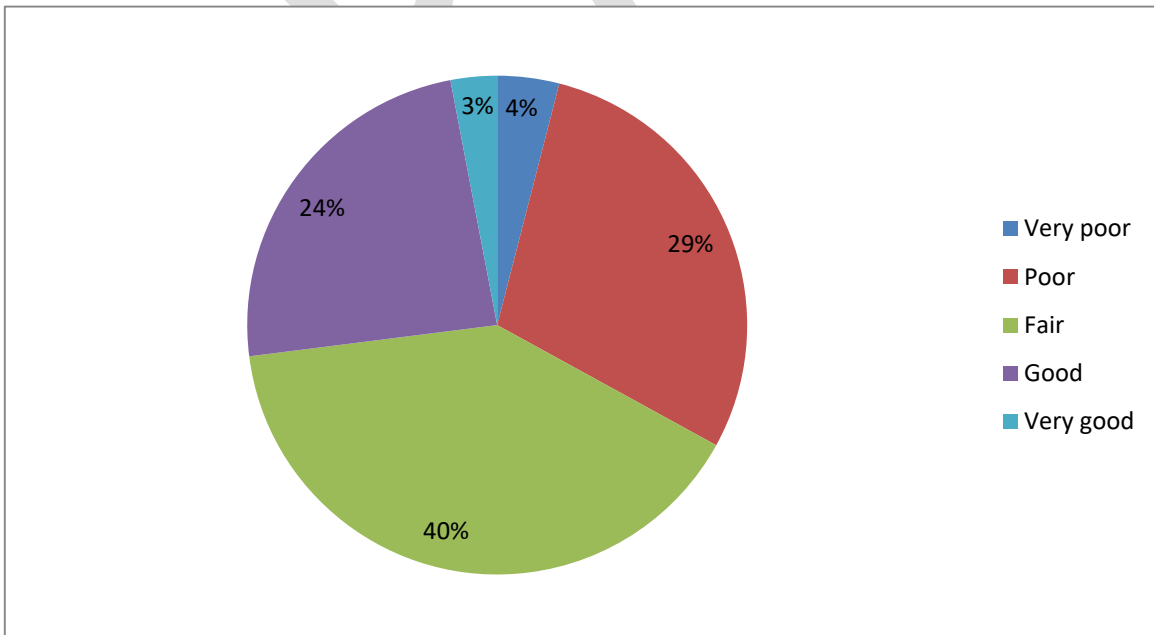
The figures below depict a breakdown of the condition of roads in terms of the overall VCI in 2012 and 2013.

**Figure 66: Overall VCI for paved roads in N Cape in 2012**



Source: DRPW

**Figure 67: Overall VCI for paved roads in N Cape in 2013**

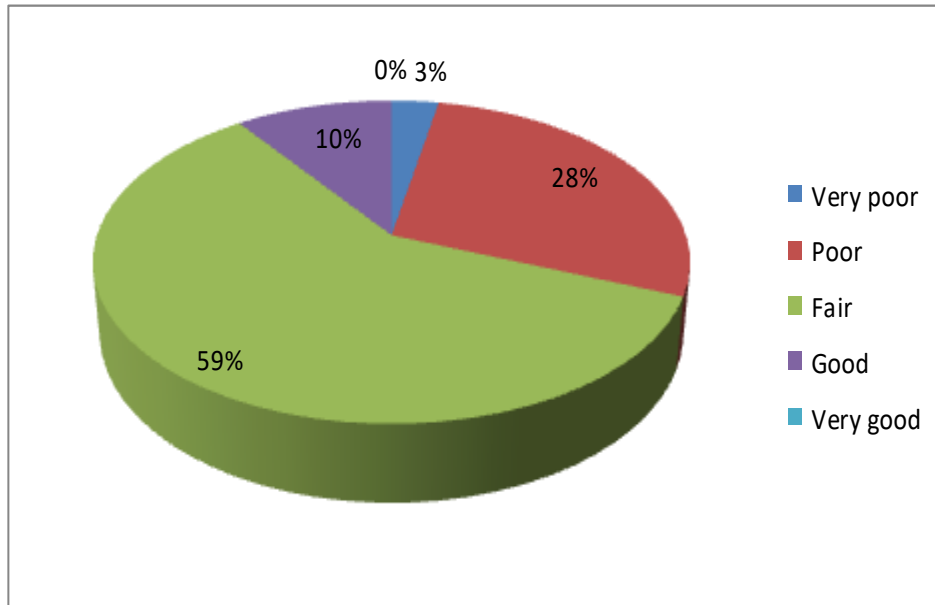


Source: DRPW

### 13.2.1.2 Unpaved Road Network

None of the unpaved roads in Northern Cape have been classified as being in a very good condition and only 10% of the road network in the province has been classified as being in good condition. The figure below illustrates the unpaved road network condition in 2012 and 2013. (Assessment of 50% of unpaved road network was done in 2012 and the remaining 50% in 2013)

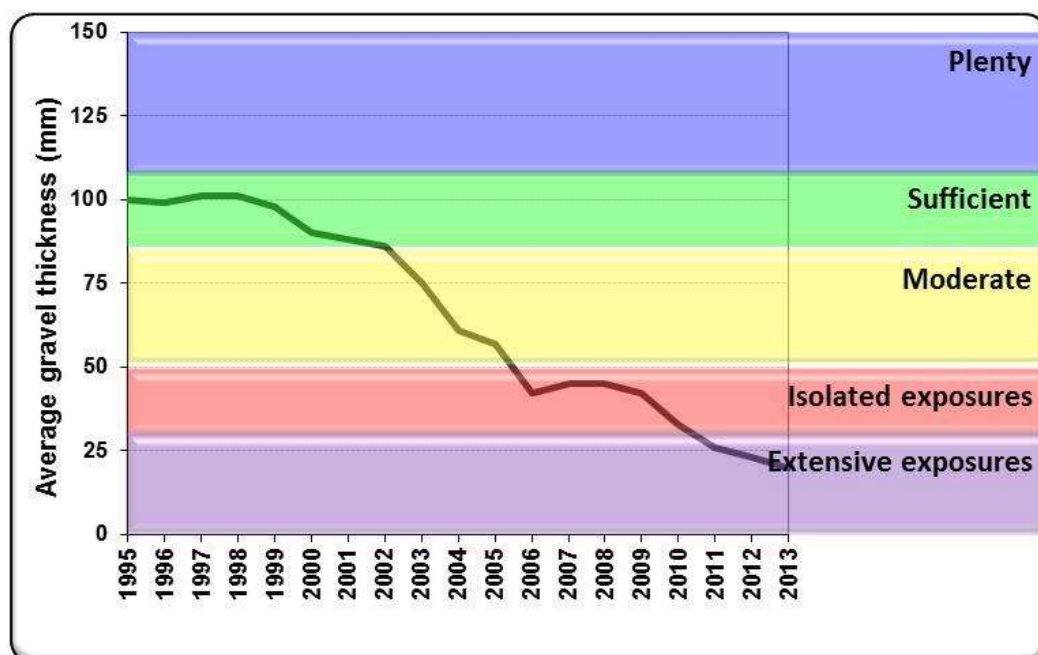
**Figure 68: Unpaved road network condition in N Cape in 2012-2013**



Source; DRPW

Furthermore, in all districts more than 20% of their unpaved roads are in a poor or very poor condition. The lack of investment in the past fourteen years has led to a decline in the average gravel thickness and the majority of the unpaved roads operate with little or no gravel left. The historic average gravel thickness of the unpaved roads in the Northern Cape is illustrated in Figure 69 below.

**Figure 69: Average gravel thickness of unpaved roads in N Cape from 1995 to 2013**



Source: DRPW

The 2012-2013 visual assessment indicated that only 165 kilometres of the unpaved network has a gravel wearing course of 150 mm or more which represents less than 2% of the total unpaved road network of the province. The percentage of the road network with no gravel material is 35% or 7 834 kilometres and the total length of road operating with gravel material less than 50 mm is 11 155 kilometres. In total 84% of the unpaved roads can potentially have serious passability problems due to insufficient gravel thickness.

The downward trend in the gravel thickness in the past nineteen years as indicated in Figure 69 above has resulted in an average gravel thickness of only 20mm for the province as at 2013. The Pixley ka Seme District has the lowest average of less than 12mm and the Siyanda District has the highest at 36mm.

### 13.2.2 Investment in Road Network

In the first decade of our democratic dispensation a total of twenty seven (27) roads have been upgraded and repaired or have undergone maintenance. In the next five years, that is, from 2004/05 to 2008/09 sixteen projects were completed. From 2009/10 to 2013/14 a total of 26 roads were upgraded, maintained or rehabilitated. The table below indicates the projects completed in the latter period as well as the cost of each project.

**Table 82: Road Infrastructure projects completed from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

No.	Project Name	Description	Amount Spent
1.	Hotazel to Van Zylsrus	Phase 1: upgrading of 40 km (of 106Km)	R12m
2.	Mothibistad to Cross Junction	Upgrading of 13,8 km	R22,239m
3.	Steinkopf TR 8201 road	Repair of base layer and	R7,57m

		drainage maintenance	
4.	Postmasburg N14	Repair of base layer and surface	R7,99m
5.	Colesberg-Norvalspont road	Maintenance of road	R6,91m
6.	Prieska-Spitskop road	Repair of base layer and surface	R5,89m
7.	Road MR 950 (N14 to Dithakong)	Repair of base layer and surface	R2,96m
8.	Hanover-Philipstown	Repair of base layer and surface	R7,13m
9.	Baltharos-Maphinik	Repair of base layer and surface	R2,57
10.	Ricmmond & E Cape border	Repair of base layer and resealing	R2,96m
11.	Colesberg-Phillipolis	Repair of base layer and resealing	R7,30m
12.	Calvinia-Williston	Special maintenance- repair & reseal	R12,10m
13.	Sections of Road J9 and DR3440	Emergency road works	R3,99
14.	Section of DR3991	Emergency road works	R3,77m
15.	Sections of DR3487 and MR950	Regravelling of sections	R7,80m
16.	Sections of DR3300	Regravelling of sections	R4,38m
17.	Ntsweng-Tsineng	Construction of new surfaced road	R61m
18.	Churchill-Bendell	A new surfaced road constructed	R94m
19.	Prieska-Douglas	Resealing	R38,28m
20.	Upington-Ashkam	Resealing	R6,03m
21.	Bulletrap Access road	Upgrading of 1,1 km of access road	R3,29m
22.	Uap Road		R23,2m
23.	Jooste-Eilland	Upgrading of 6,9 km access road	R22,6m
23.	Karakoel Research Centre	Upgrading 5,5 km of road connecting Upington to the research centre	R15,7m
24.	Longlands access road	Upgrading of 2km of gravel road	R4m
25.	Vosburg Carnavon	Upgrading of gravel road	R183m
26.	Tsineng-Hotazel	Upgrading of 8,5 km of gravel road	R46m

Source: DRPW

The total budget allocated over the five year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14 is R3,305 billion. The table below illustrate the annual breakdown of the budget and expenditure over the period mentioned.

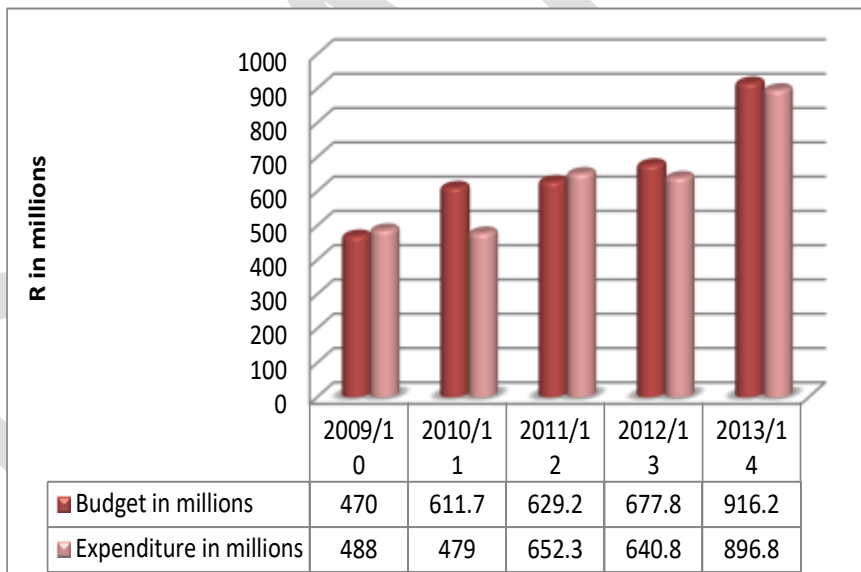
**Table 83: Budget and expenditure on road infrastructure 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial year	Budget in R'000	Expenditure in R'000	% Deviation
2009/10	470,0	488,1	+3,85
2010/11	611,7	479,0	-22,3
2011/12	629,2	652,3	+3,7
2012/13	677,8	640,8	-5,5
2013/14	916,3	896,8	-2,1
<b>Total</b>	<b>3 305</b>	<b>3 157</b>	<b>-4,5</b>

Source: DRPW Annual Reports

The total expenditure for the five years from 2009/10 to 2013/14 period amounted to R3,157 billion which represents 95,5% of the final appropriation and an underspending of just below 4,5%. The major portion, that is, R2,824 billion or 85,4% was spent on existing infrastructure that included upgrades, additions, rehabilitation, renovations, refurbishments and maintenance and repairs. An amount of R264,9 million or 8% was spent on new and replacement assets while transfers amounted to R170,2 million. The figure below depicts the budget against expenditure from 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Figure 70: Annual Budget vs expenditure on road infrastructure from 2009/10 to 2013/14**



Source: DRPW Annual Reports

### 13.3 Public Works

Public Works is responsible for the management of most of the capital projects of all the other departments in the province. Because details of these have been given elsewhere in the report a summary is given below for the sake of completeness. Various projects have been managed for the in the period 2009/10 to 2013/14 and these are listed under the relevant departments below:

- *Department of Education*
  - ❖ Twenty seven (27) ablution blocks.
  - ❖ Fifteen (15) additional classroom blocks
  - ❖ Forty eight (48) Early Childhood Development classrooms.
  - ❖ Four (4) conversions.
  - ❖ Nine (9) media centres.
  - ❖ Seven (7) new schools.
  - ❖ Seven (7) administration blocks.
  - ❖ Three (3) science laboratories.
  - ❖ Thirty six (36) schools have been refurbished; and
  - ❖ One computer classroom.
  
- *Department of Health*
  - ❖ One (1) hospital.
  - ❖ One (1) community health care centre
  - ❖ Staff accommodation (3)
  - ❖ Two roads, one external and the other internal.
  
- *Department of Sports, Arts and Culture*
  - ❖ One archives repository.
  - ❖ Seven Libraries.
  
- *Department of Roads and Public Works*
  - ❖ One Skate Park.
  - ❖ One conference centre.

### **13.3.1 Police Infrastructure (Police Stations)**

The SAPS implemented the following capital work projects from 2009/10 to 2012/13;

<b>2009/2010</b>	<b>2010/2011</b>	<b>2011/2012</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>
Construction of Springbok Auxiliary Garage: finalised	Kimberley (Eysel Court) Married quarters: finalised	Kimberley Archives finalised	Keimoes construction of new police station: 34% complete
Maintenance Kakamas Police complex and quarters: finalised	Purchase of 2 mobile units for quarters in Aggenys: finalised	Marydale police station construction of fence: finalised	Tsineng construction of additional offices and repairs to the station: 40% complete
Maintenance Mothibistad – 8 quarters: finalised	Refurbishment of CCTV Room at Kimberley Police	Construction of Springbok Auxiliary Garage:	Tsineng police complex and houses: 40%

	Station: finalised	finalised	complete
Maintenance Williston Police Station and quarters: finalised		R & R at Kakamas and Barkley West police stations: finalised	Repair old Commando offices at Springbok: 13% complete
		Severn complex and houses: finalised	Bathlaros Fencing 50% complete
		Postmasburg R & R: finalised	
		Upgrading of CCTV: finalised	
		Jan Kempdorp 5 houses (R & R): finalised	

### 13.4 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The second phase of the Expanded Public Works Programme began in 2009/10 with the aim of creating 4,5 million jobs nationally over the five year MTEF period. The Northern Cape provincial target was set at 135 296 with provincial departments responsible for the creation of 106 193 job opportunities and municipalities responsible for 29 102. The key sectors that contribute to the creation of job opportunities are the following;

- The infrastructure sector.
- The social sector; and
- The environmental sector

Under the Community Based Public Works Programme, a number of activities such as cleaning and upgrading of rest areas, maintenance of the roads, hawk road markings, cleaning road reserves, cleaning of closed drainage structures, shoulder repairs, pothole repairs, widening of the roads as well as construction were undertaken. The table below indicates the total number of job opportunities created by provincial departments through the EPWP Programme by all sectors since 2009/10 financial year.

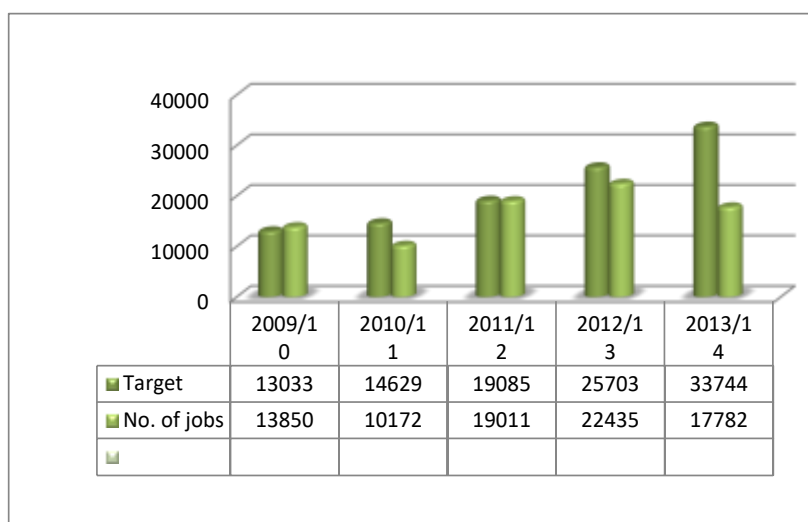
**Table 84: No of Job opportunities created by Provincial Departments through the EPWP Programme from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Target	Actual No of Jobs	%
2009/10	13 033	13 850	106,3
2010/11	14 629	10 172	69,5
2011/12	19 085	19 011	99,6
2012/13	25 703	22 435	87,3
2013/14	33 744	17 782	52,7
<b>Total</b>	<b>106 192</b>	<b>83 250</b>	<b>78,4</b>

Source: DTRW Annual Reports



**Figure 71: No of EPWP job opportunities created by Provincial Departments from 2009/10 to 2013/14**



**Source: DTRW Annual Reports**

Both the table and the figure above indicate that the total number of job opportunities created by provincial departments in the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14 was 83 250 or 78,4% of the target that was set. The best results in this period against targets set was achieved in the 2009/10 financial year when 13 850 job opportunities were created and the target for that year was exceeded by 6,3%. In the period under review the worst performance was in the 2013/14 financial year when only 17 782 jobs were created and only 57,7% of the target for that year was achieved.

In terms of their targets municipalities fared significantly better than their provincial counterparts. Their combined achievements over the period 2009/10 to 2013/14 was 99,9% of the target which translates into the creation of 29 074 job opportunities as against the target of 29 102.

With regards to target groups the performance far exceeded the target set for job opportunities for women but was only an eighth of that set for the disabled.

### **13.4.1 Community Works Programme (CWP)**

The Community Works Programme is a part of the Expanded Public Works Programme that is located in COGHSTA. As at end June 2014 it was implemented in five local municipalities in the province, namely, Richtersveld, Khai-Ma, Kail! Garib, Gamagara and Kgatelopele. The CWP is operational in 26 wards in these five municipalities. The total number of participants in the programme at the end of June 2014 stood at 4 229 which is still below the target of 5 000 made up of one thousand participants per municipality. The majority of the participants in the programme are female and make up 77% of the total. The number of participants in each municipality is provided in the table below.

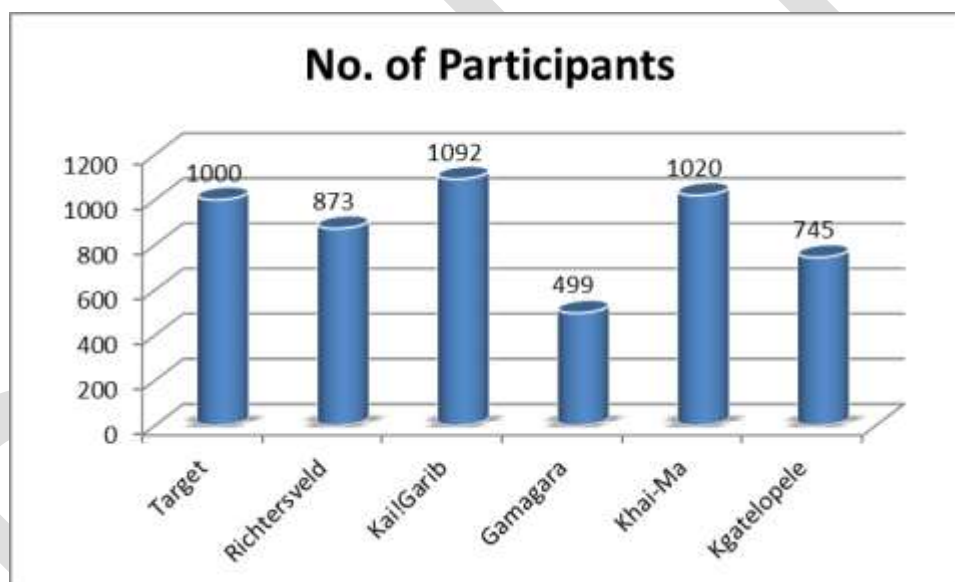
**Table 86: The number of participants in the CWP as at June 2014**

Municipality	No. of Participants
Richtersveld	873
Kai!Garib	1 092
Gamagara	499
Khai-Ma	1 020
Kgatelopele	745
<b>Total</b>	<b>4 229</b>

Source: COGHSTA

Both the Kai! Garib and the Khai-Ma local municipalities have exceeded the participant target of 1 000 whereas the the Gamagara municipality has not yet achieved fifty per cent of the target.

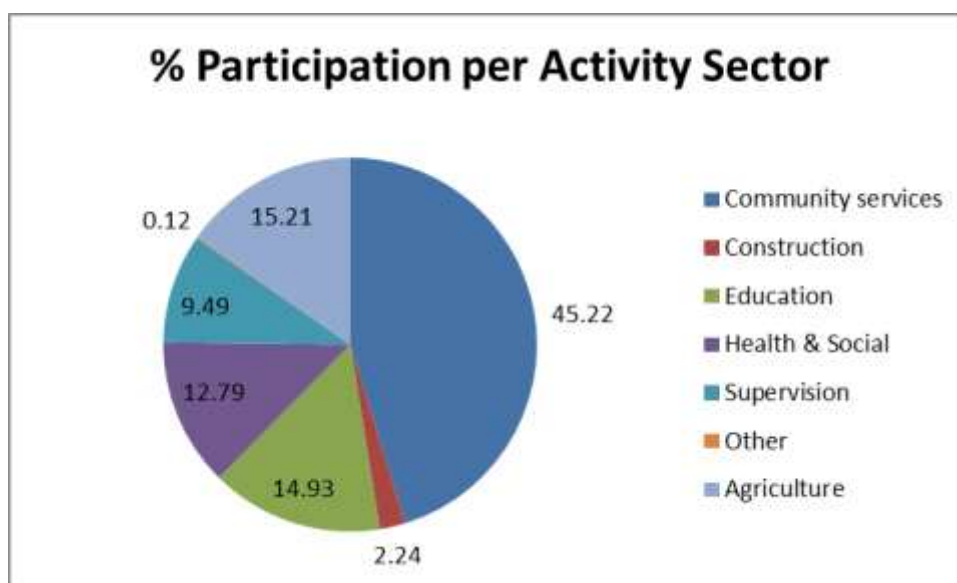
**Figure 72: The number of CWP participants in each municipality**



Source: COGHSTA

The largest number of participants is involved in community services at over 45% followed by agriculture at 15,2% and education at 14,93%. Other activity sectors include health and social services, construction and supervision services. The figure below illustrates the participation in each activity sector.

**Figure 73: % of CWP participation per activity sector**



Source: COGHSTA

## 13.5 Special Programmes and Projects

### 13.5.1 Operation Khotso Pula Nala

Operation Kgotso Pula Nala is a provincial programme that was launched in March 2011. As a township revitalisation and rural development programme this programme aims at revitalising and beautifying townships and rural areas thus ensuring safe, habitable and good living conditions. A total amount of R50 million has been allocated to this programme and eighteen projects were implemented within seventeen municipalities. Details of the projects are provided in the table below.

**Table 87: Projects implemented under Operation Khotso Pula Nala**

Municipality	Project	Budget
Sol Plaatje	Greenpoint: Paving of roads, roads and stormwater drain construction, sports facilities.	R7,5m
Dikgatlong	Rehabilitation of Mataleng community hall	R2,5m
Phokwane	Valspan: Upgrading of streets and stormwater drains; LIC phase 1	R2,49m
Dikgatlong	Construction of roads and stormwater channels	R2,5m
Mier	Cleaning of towns	R2,2m
Mier	Rehabilitation of bulk water supply system	R2,0m
Kai! Garib	Maintenance of Keimoes cemetery	R1,4m
Kai! Garib	Kakamas: Construction of curbstones, emergency blocks and speed bumps.	R1,2m

Gasegonyana	Bathlaros: Installation of fence in cemetery and Tribal office	R2,5m
Siyathemba	Refurbishment of community halls in Prieska, Niekerkshoop & Marydale	R2,6m
Emthanjeni	De Aar: Revitalisation of Nonwakazi Township	R2,5m
Siyancuma	Douglas; Renovation of community hall; fencing.	R2,5m
Umsombovu	Noupoort: Paving of access road	R2,5m
Kamiesberg	Garies: Repair and reseal of internal roads	R1m
Kamiesberg	Soebatsfontein: Upgrading of internal streets	R1,5m
Karoo Hoogland	Williston: Upgrading of internal streets	R2,5m
Hantam	Calvinia: Reseal of street	R1m
Hantam	Calvinia West: Upgrading of internal streets	R1,5m

As at the time of compiling this report nine (9) projects were completed and six (6) projects (4 in Namakwa and 2 in Pixley Ka Seme) are still running. Three (3) projects, two of which are in Kai! Garib and one in Dikgatlong have been discontinued due to mismanagement of funds

### 13.5.2 Rooting Out the Dust Programme

This is a special programme that is the brainchild of the MEC for Public Works with the key objective of creating additional work opportunities through labour intensive projects within municipalities. Phase one of the programme was launched in the 2009/10 financial year with funds amounting to R32 million allocated to this programme. A total of 23 labour intensive projects were implemented that included the following:

- The cleaning of drains and the control of invasive vegetation along road reserves.
- The upgrading of access roads.
- The manufacturing of kerb stones.
- A schools refurbishment programme; and
- De-bushing and vegetation control.

More than 800 job opportunities have been created through the 'Rooting out of Dust' programme.

### 13.5.3 Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme

The Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme is part of the National Youth Service (NYS) programme that attempts to address the shortage of scarce skills in the province. This programme seeks to recruit unemployed youth and train them as artisans in different trades. DRPW, in partnership with the Food and Beverages Seta initiated this programme in the Northern Cape in 2009.

Assessment tests were conducted and 43 youth were identified and sent to the Ikhaya Fundisa Techniskills Academy in Roodepoort. Of these 27 trainees progressed to the next level at Coega for experiential training with several member companies. Only 17 or less than 40% of the 43 original trainees successfully completed the training in 2012. The following are details of those that successfully completed the programme:

- Five boilermakers, 3 males and 2 females, 4 of which are from Upington and one from De Aar.
- Ten fitters, 4 males and six females, 3 from Kimberley, 3 from Upington and 4 from Kuruman; and
- Two motor mechanics, one male and one female, with one from Upington and the other from Kuruman.

Currently, there are 28 apprentices that are receiving on-the-job training in the province in various trades. A detailed breakdown of trainees from the different districts is provided in the table below.

**Table 88: No. of trainees trained in the Phakamile Mabija apprenticeship programme**

District	Total Trainees	Gender		Trade	Company
		M	F		
Namakwa	4	4	0	1 Electrician 2 Fitters 1 Boilermaker	3 at Sishen Mine 1 at KEW Foundries
ZF Mgcawu	4	1	3	1 Diesel Mechanic 2 Electrician 1 Boilermaker	1 at Ulco 2 at Kimberley Mine 1 at Sishen
Frances Baard	13	10	3	2 Diesel Mechanic  10 Electrician 1 Fitter	2 at Ulco 4 at Kimberley Mine 5 at Sishen 2 at KEW Foundries
JTG	4	4	0	4 Diesel Mechanic	
Pixley ka Seme	3	3	0	1 Diesel Mechanic 1 Electrician  1 Fitter	1 at Ulco 1 at Kimberley Mine 1 at Sishen

Source: DTRW

## **14. TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE**

In accordance with the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison (DTSL) is committed to investing in and leveraging funding for the development of transport infrastructure in the province. The aim, amongst other things, is to ensure the expansion of road and rail networks as well as the operational efficiency, capacity and competitiveness of a sea port within the province.

In this regard the Northern Cape provincial government has identified four major transport infrastructure projects, namely, the De Aar logistics hub, the Belmont-Douglas branch line upgrading, the Port Nolloth harbour and the Upington Cargo hub. These projects have the potential to increase economic growth significantly and to create a large number of job opportunities. The progress to date of each project is described below.

### **14.1 De Aar Logistics Hub**

The purpose of this project is to create a logistics hub that requires the resuscitation of parts of the transport and logistics infrastructure within the region. The rationale for De Aar is that the town is located on the rail junction intersecting the Cape Corridor (Johannesburg to Cape Town), the Namibian Corridor (Gauteng to Namibia) and also rail access to the ports of Ngqura and Port Elizabeth. The progress made thus far is the completion and submission of a pre-feasibility report.

### **14.2 Port Nolloth Harbour**

Presently Port Nolloth is a small-craft harbour that services the requirements of the local fishing and mining industries as well as some off-shore oil and gas exploration activities, The Port Nolloth Harbour development project aims to rehabilitate and redevelop the harbour turning it into a serviceable port. A port development framework is currently in the process of being drafted.

### **14.3 Upington Cargo Hub**

This project aims to promote the airport and air services development in the Northern Cape. A feasibility study which was concluded in 2006 determined that Upington is ideally suited to serve as a cargo hub and it has the following attractive benefits for users:

- Less congestion.
- Quicker airport turn-around times.
- Potential for payload factors; and
- Lower handling and airport charges

The project is being driven by the Airports Company of South Africa (ACSA) who is also funding the project.

### **14.4 Belmont/Douglas Branch Line**

The revitalisation of the Belmont/Douglas branch line will result not only in the expansion of infrastructure but will bring about economic growth, particularly for the agricultural sector. This branch line will contribute positively to increasing rail freight volumes, improve efficiencies and safety in the region, contribute to food security and the resuscitation of small and rural towns. Phase 1 of this project has been completed and Phase 2 has begun

with two teams working on the construction of this line, one from Belmont and the other from Salt Lake. This phase is expected to be completed in second half of 2014.

DRAFT

## 15. ENVIRONMENT AND NATURE CONSERVATION

The core performance areas and key functions under this portfolio as mandated by section 24 of the Constitution are the following:

- Management of a unique and diverse natural resource base that include nature reserves and diverse ecosystems and wildlife.
- Creation of an environment that is not harmful to the health and well being of the communities; and
- Protection of the environment for the benefit of the present and future generations.

### 15.1 Environmental Management

#### 15.1.1 Air Quality Management

The Department strives to improve air and atmospheric quality through the implementation of legislation, policies and systems and towards the achievement of:

**Output 2:** *Reduced green house gas emissions, climate change and improved air /atmospheric quality), of*

**Outcome10** namely, *protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources.*

It is also in the final stages of the development of the provincial air quality management plan which has been submitted for approval. At the time of writing of this report the ZF Mgcawu was the only District Municipality with an Air Quality Management Plan. Support was provided to the Frances Baard District Municipality in the development of the district air quality management plan.

Of the 20 air emission license applications received 14 have been provisionally approved. Successful negotiations were held with some of the mining companies for the installation of air quality monitoring stations at their mining operations at their costs in all five districts. Agreements for the installation of monitoring stations have been secured with:

- Kolomela Iron Ore mine in Postmasburg.
- Idwala Lime in Danielskuil; and
- BHP Manganese mine in Hotazel.

The Kolomela monitoring station has been up and running since September 2011 and currently monitors, amongst others, sulphur dioxide, nitrogen oxide and ozone. In terms of the National Environment Management: Air Quality Act specific emitters must obtain air emission licenses, one condition of which is the regular monitoring of air quality and emission on specific chemicals and dust. The table below indicates the progress achieved in this regard.

**Table 89: No. of air quality networks monitored and emission license applications processed**

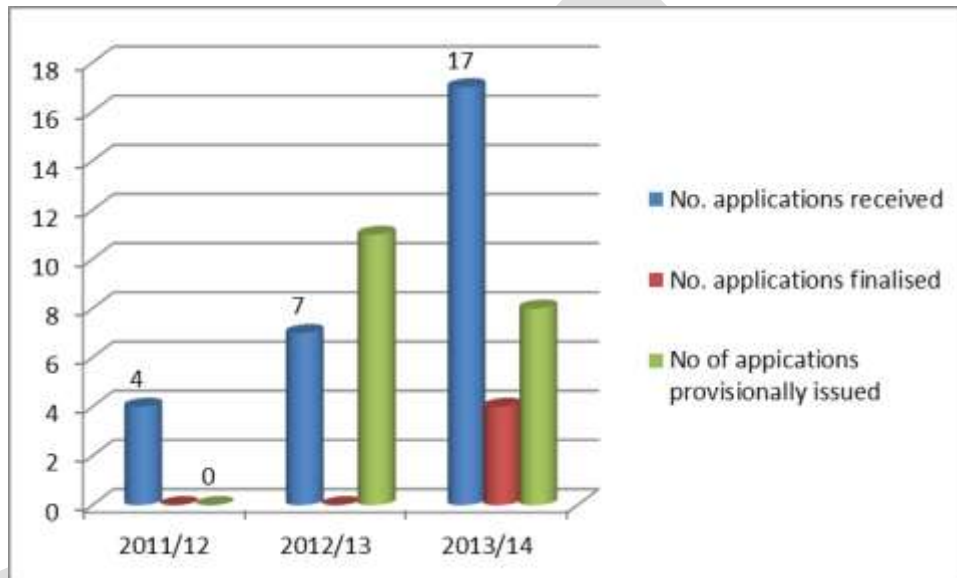
<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/13</b>	<b>2013/14</b>
No. of passive sampler networks monitored	-	5	5	3



No. of chemical and dust analysis	6	19	24	22
No. of air emission license applications received	0	4	7	17
No. of air emission license applications finalised	-	0	0	4
No. of air emission license applications provisionally issued	-	0	11	8

Source: DENC

**Figure 74: No. of air emission license application received versus applications finalised and those provisionally issued.**



Source: DENC

The total number of air emission license applications (eleven) received in 2011/12 and 2012/13 were provisionally issued in 2012/13. By the end of the 2013/14 financial year 4 license applications were finalised and 19 were provisionally issued out of 28 applications that were received since the passing of the Act.

With regards to Reduced CO<sub>2</sub> emission the Northern Cape has developed a Green House Gas inventory.

A draft Climate Change Response and Mitigation Strategy has been compiled and has been workshopped in all five Districts and a Northern Cape Climate Change Response Strategy has been finalised in 2012/13 but is yet to be approved.

### 15.1.2 Energy Efficiency

An important element of the Provincial Climate Change Response Strategy revolves around renewable energy initiatives such as solar and wind energy as well as bio-fuels and energy from waste.

### 15.1.3 Waste Management

Efforts by the DENC have been concentrated on the waste management hierarchy of waste avoidance, minimisations, re-use, recycling and treatment of waste with disposal being a last resort. A Provincial Hazardous Waste Management Plan was crafted in 2012 with the main purpose of ensuring safe and integrated management of hazardous waste as well as the protection and safety of the environment as prescribed by Section 2 of NEMA, Act 107 of 1998. This plan is currently being reviewed.

The function of processing waste licenses has been transferred due to legislative changes from national Department of Environmental Affairs to the province in 2010. The table below depicts the number of applications received and processed.

**Table 90: No. of Waste license applications received and processed and landfill sites monitored**

	2010/11	2012/12	2012/13	2013/14
No of waste licenses applications received	9	11	21	24
No of waste licenses applications processed	20	1	5	22
No of waste licenses applications approved	20	1	5	26
No of landfill sites monitored	133	63	-	96

Source: DENC

#### 15.1.4 Community Based Natural Resource Management

One of the key strategic objectives of the department is the promotion of community based natural resource management through sustainable natural resource utilisation while at the same time creating decent work opportunities and sustainable livelihoods. In this regard the focus is specifically on the creation of green jobs through the recycling of waste, cleaning of the environment and greening and infrastructure related projects. Through these various initiatives a total of 3 484 work opportunities have been created. These range from work opportunities linked to waste recycling projects, beautification, cleaning and greening of open spaces, training and development practices, learnerships, renovation of office buildings and a poverty alleviation project in Phillipstown. The table below indicates the work opportunities created in the province from 2009 to 2012.

**Table 91: No. of job opportunities created under the community based natural resource management programme from 2009 to 2012**

Year		Project	Work Opportunities created
2009	Upington	Waste Recycling	2 744
2010			
2011	Nama Khoi	Waste Recycling	275
2012	Barkly West	Waste Recycling	257
	Hartswater	Landfill site	208

Source: DENC

An important spin-off from the waste recycling projects is the creation of income generating opportunities for more people through the collection and sale of domestic

recyclable waste at the various waste collection sites within the surrounding communities. A case in point is the Namakwa district where eleven waste collection sites have already been identified in Springbok, Bergsig, Nababeep, Caroulousberg, Kommagas, Kleinzee, Koingnaas, Mathieskloof, Waterval and Steinkopf. Operations at these sites are expected to begin later in 2014.

In an effort to create awareness around waste management 39 workshops on waste management have been conducted. These workshops have concentrated on, amongst other things, waste avoidance, minimisations, re-use, recycling and treatment with disposal being the last resort. Furthermore, fifteen municipalities have prioritised licensing of their landfill sites.

### 15.1.5 Environment Impact Management

The National Environmental Authorisation System (NEAS) has been implemented since 2010 in terms of ECA of 2006 and NEMA Regulations of 2010. The DENC with the assistance of two contractors were able to address the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) applications backlog.

**Table 92: No. of EIA applications received and processed from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
No of EIA applications received	100	88	95	71	78
No of EIA applications finalised within legislated timeframes	0	38	62	60	46
No of EIA applications issued	100	51	62	55	44
No of EMRs commented upon	386	277	112	206	194

Source: DENC

### 15.1.6 Environmental Awareness

The department has conducted numerous environmental education and awareness activities over the past five years to capacitate communities, learners and educators on environmental matters. The following are some of the activities conducted during this period:

- A total of 89 environmental awareness campaigns were conducted.
- 1 735 outreach visits were made.
- 272 schools participated in the eco-school programme; and
- A total of 1 809 educators attended capacity building workshops.

## 15.2 Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity

Outcome 10 and Output 1 (Enhanced quality and quantity of water resources), in particular, places various responsibilities to ensure water security, fresh water system integrity maintenance and river health monitoring. However, as a result of budgetary constraints monitoring and research projects related to river health have been prioritised. A pilot project linked to river health has been launched to collate all available information, research and projects on river health.

Alluvial vegetation along the Orange River is the most threatened vegetation type in the province. DENC drafted a review report on the vegetation as part of the river health programme and alluvial vegetation surveys were conducted from 2012 onwards as a long term monitoring project whereby the extent of the critical biodiversity areas would be verified as part of the development of the Conservation Plan for the province as well as to monitor change detection. These surveys were then extended to the Lower Vaal and Harts Rivers which were sampled for physical water parameters, micro-invertebrates and fish. The Kuruman wetlands survey was conducted in 2013 to map the extent of the dolomitic spring distribution and to get an overview of the dolomitic spring generated by the inventory,

The Orange River Mouth Straddling the international border between South Africa and Namibia is an estuary of international importance. Both countries have agreed to the development of a Transfrontier park in the area. The process for delisting of the Orange River Mouth from the Montreaux record (a register of wetland sites of international importance) is on-going.

The department has also implemented activities to monitor the Orange River Mouth which commenced in April 2014 and the monitoring will be extended to Vaal River and the Harts River.

### **15.3 Sustainable Management and Use of Natural Resources**

#### **15.3.1 Restoration and Rehabilitation**

In terms of Sub-output 3.1 of Outcome 10, viz, degraded ecosystems rehabilitated and restored, many hectares of land as well as 160 rural development sites have been rehabilitated.

DENC has also been instrumental in the drive to declare the Kathu forest as a protected area and succeeded in 2009 in getting the Kathu forest declared as a protected woodland. The intent to re-declare the Kathu woodland to include a buffer zone was gazetted in 2013.

#### **15.3.2 Land Conservation**

The NCPGDS target of having 6,5% of all land in the province under conservation has been hamstrung by many challenges. The conservation estate for the Province remains at 3, 58% or 1 334 829 hectares with no new protected areas proclaimed since 2009/10. However, work is in progress for the expansion of the conservation estate with four new nature reserves identified and advertised in the provincial gazette. To further extend the network of protected areas the DENC has negotiated with a private trust and two properties totalling 800 hectares adjacent to the Goegap nature reserve have been purchased

The management of protected areas is measured against the management effectiveness tracking tool developed by DEA and in the light of this, management plans for protected areas have been revised in 2013. The management effectiveness improvement strategy has also been developed and approved.

The main challenges in realising the NCPGDS target and expanding the conservation estate is lack of funding for the purchase of land and delays in internal processes. A related challenge is the absence of funding for maintaining the protected areas in accordance with nationally and internationally accepted standards.

**Table 93: Number of wild life related assessments completed**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
No of wildlife related assessments/moderations conducted	40	75	-	113	114

Source: DENC

### 15.3.3 Hunting Industry

In a bid to expand the role and contribution of the hunting industry towards sustainable wildlife management and as part of the biodiversity management in the Northern Cape the province participated in international hunting and conservation events. The aim of these engagements is to better understand the expectations and needs of the international hunters and the related wildlife tourism market in order to increase the quality of services to the foreign hunting and wildlife tourism sector.

### 15.3.4 Regulation of Natural Resource Use

Sustainable natural resource use is regulated through the processing and issuing of biodiversity permits, including CITES permits and certificates and TOPS permits as well as the regulation of the hunting industry. The number of biodiversity permits of all types issued between 2009/10 to 2013/14 totals 13 165. The table below indicates the application processed.

**Table 94: Number of applications for bio-diversity permits processed from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
No of biodiversity permits issued	864	2 464	2 893	3 569	3 375
No of professional hunters registered		79	-	55	83
No of hunting contractors registered		21	-	22	18
No of dangerous game hunts verified		-	-	-	20

Source: DENC

## 15.4 Coastal Management

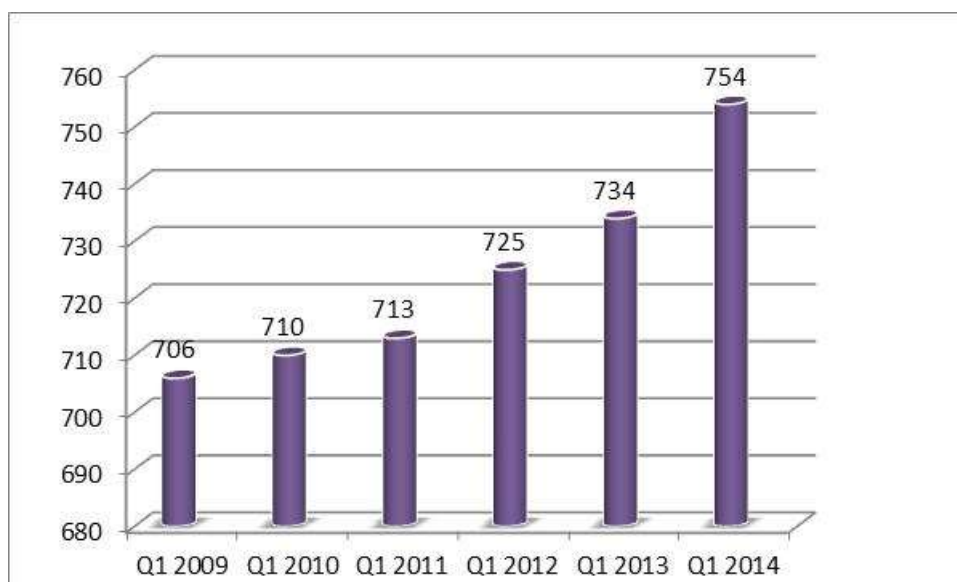
In order to coordinate coastal management amongst the various role-players DENC established a Provincial Coastal Coordinating Committee in terms of section 40 of the ICM Act of 2012. It has also supported three affected municipalities to set up Municipal Coastal Committees.

## 16. EMPLOYMENT IN THE NORTHERN CAPE

### 16.1 Working Age Population

According to the definition by Statistics South Africa the working age population comprises all persons between the ages of fifteen and sixty four. Between 2007 and the first quarter of 2014 the working age population in the province has increased from 696 000 to 754 000, that is, an increase of 58 000. The figure below illustrates the working age population for quarter 1 from 2009 to 2014.

**Figure 75: Population 15-64 years(in thousands) for quarter 1 2009-2014**



Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

### 16.2 Labour Force or the Economically Active Population

The labour force or the economically active population is defined (according to Stats SA) as comprising of all persons who are employed plus all persons who are unemployed. The table below indicates the labour force in the Northern Cape recorded in Quarter 1 for the period 2009 to 2014.

**Table 95: Labour force in the N Cape (in thousands) from Q1 2009 to Q1 2014**

	Q1 2009	Q1 2010	Q1 2011	Q1 2012	Q1 2013	Q1 2014
Labour force in thousands	383	371	372	382	446	434

Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

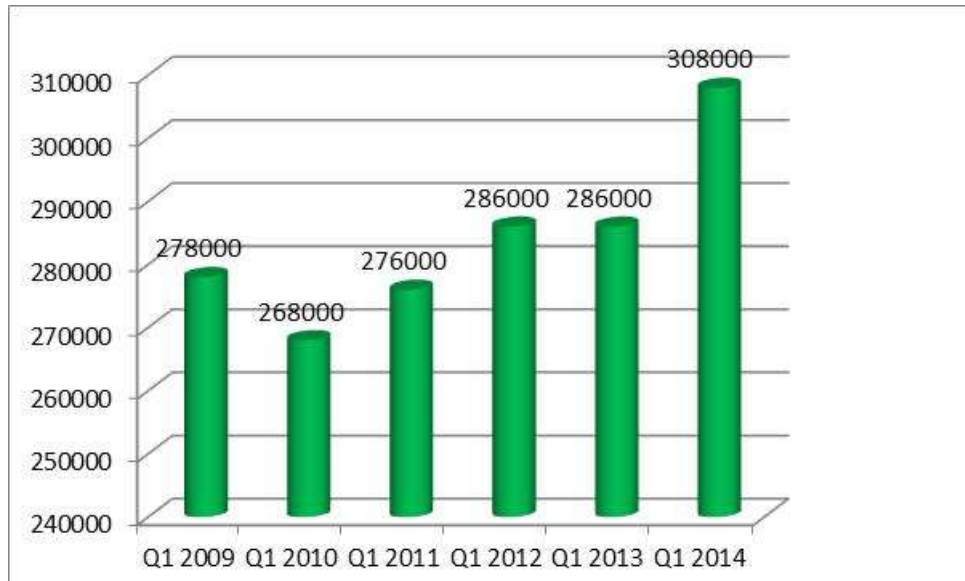
The economically active population in the Northern Cape increased by more than a 51 000 from 383 000 in Quarter 1 of 2009 to 434 000 for the same quarter in 2014. The number of persons that were not economically active decreased significantly from 47,8% of the working population in quarter 1 of 2011 to 32,1% in quarter 1 of 2014. For the period under discussion the labour force was at its maximum in 2013 with a total of 446 000.

### 16.3 Employment in the Northern Cape

Employment figures were the lowest in quarter 1 of 2010 when it stood at 268 000 and was the highest in quarter 4 of 2013 at 329 000. The figures of 2013 are, however, lower

than those of 2001 when number of persons employed in the province was 334 000. Employment figures for the Northern Cape for quarter1 from 2009 to 2014 are illustrated in the figure below:

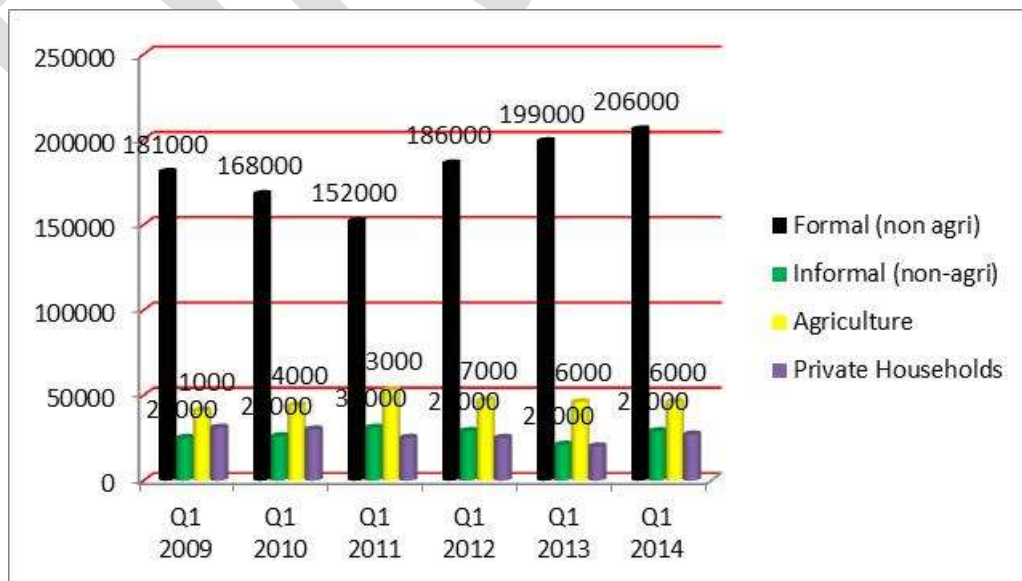
**Figure 76: Employment figures in N Cape Quarter 1 2009-2014**



Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

In the Northern Cape the Community and Social Services sector is the largest employer with figures of 87 000 in the first quarter of 2014, an increase of 12 000 on the 75 000 of Quarter 1 of 2009. This is followed by the agricultural sector whose employment figures have, however, been consistently decreasing. Persons employed in agriculture in first quarter of 2009 was around 65 000 compared to 47 000 in 2014. A breakdown of those employed in terms of the formal sector (non-agricultural), informal sector (non-agricultural), agriculture and private households is illustrated in the figure below.

**Figure 77: Employment figures in the formal, informal, agricultural sector and private households**

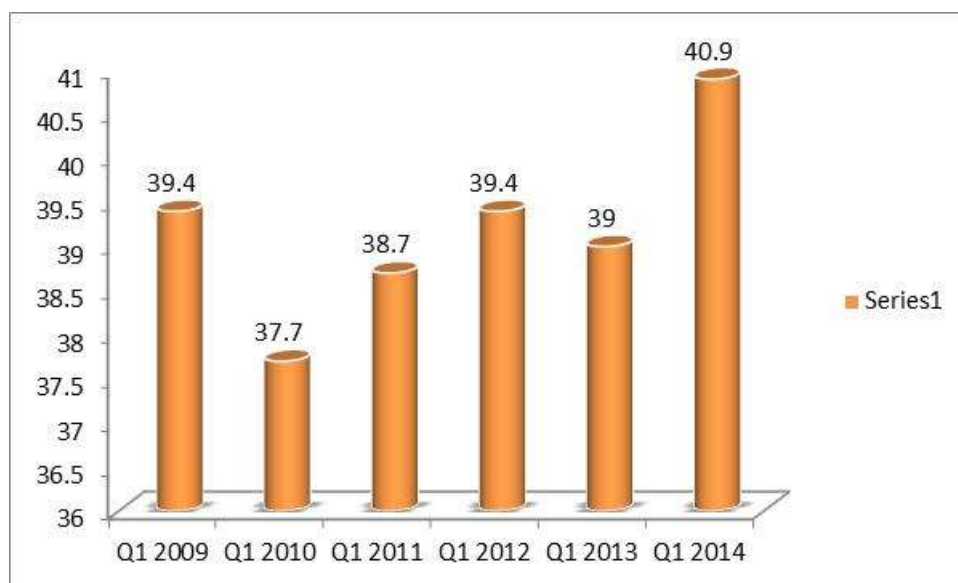


Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

## 16.4 Labour Absorption Rate

Labour absorption rate or the employment to population ratio is defined as the proportion of the working age population that is employed (Stats SA). For the period 2009 (first Quarter) to the first quarter of 2014 the labour absorption rate was the highest in the third quarter of 2013 at 43,8%. This is lower than the labour absorption ratio of 51,0% recorded in 2001. For the first quarter of 2014 the labour absorption ratio was the fourth highest in the country only behind that of Gauteng, Western Cape and Mpumulanga and less than 2% lower than the national ratio. The figure below illustrates the labour absorption ratio for quarter 1 from 2009 to 2014.

**Figure 78: Labour absorption rate in N Cape for Quarter 1 2009-2014**

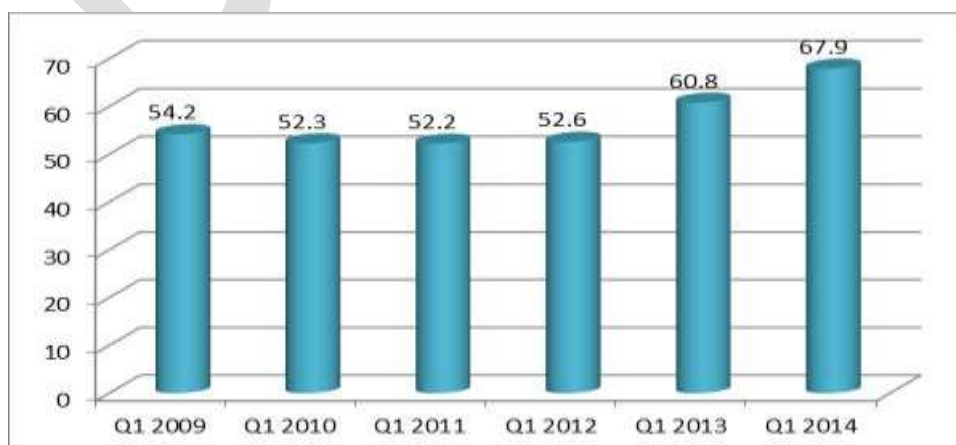


Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

## 16.5 Labour Force Participation Rate

Labour force participation rate is defined as the proportion of the working age population that is either employed or unemployed (Stats SA). The labour force participation ratio for the first quarter for the years 2009 to 2014 is indicated in the figure below.

**Figure 79: Labour force participation ratio for N Cape quarter 1 for the years 2009-2014**



Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

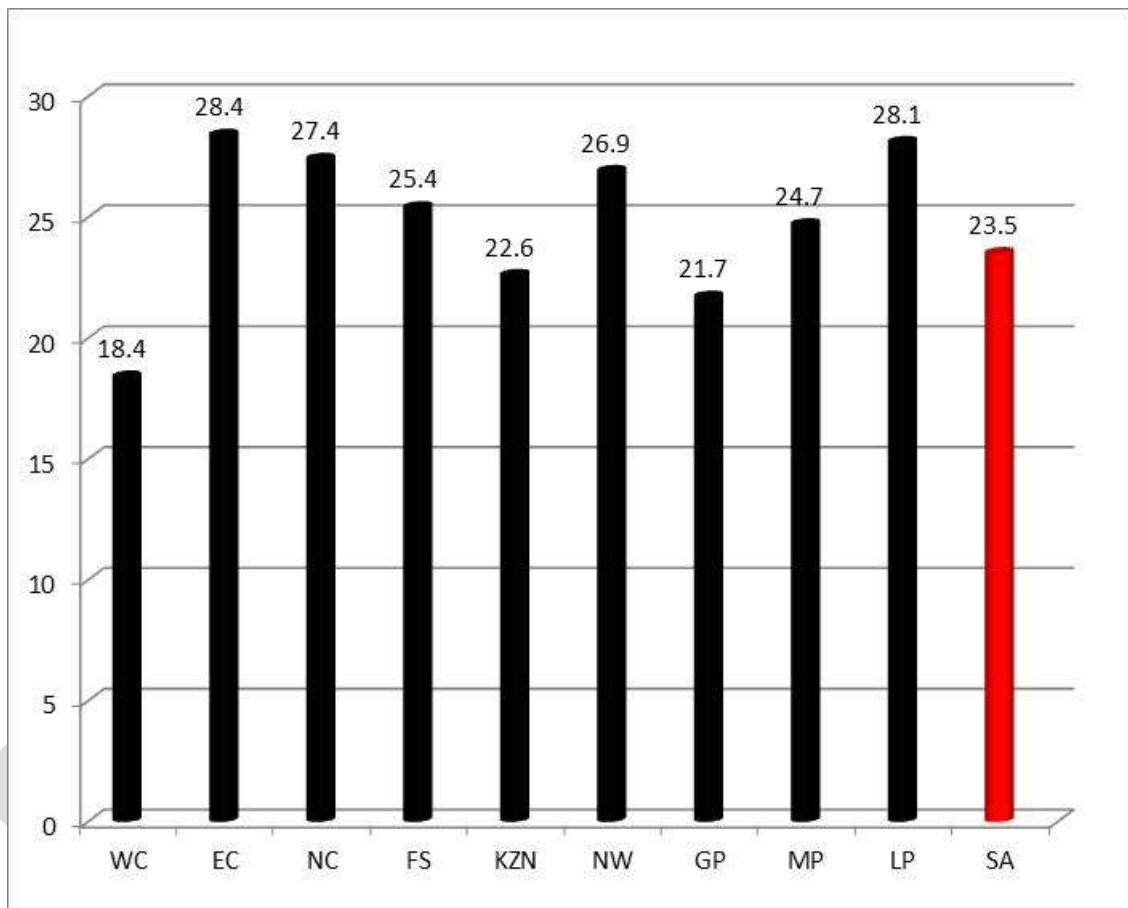


The labour force participation ratio was at its highest in the first quarter of 2014 when a figure of 67,9% was recorded and the lowest in 2011 with a participation rate of 52,2%

## 16.6 Unemployment in the Northern Cape

The unemployment rate in the Northern Cape for the first quarter of 2009 was the third highest in the country at 27,4% with the Eastern Cape province having recorded the highest at 28,4% followed by Limpopo with 28,1% . The figure below depicts the unemployment rates for the nine provinces and the country for the first quarter of 2009.

**Figure 80: Unemployment rates for Provinces and SA, Quarter 1 2009**

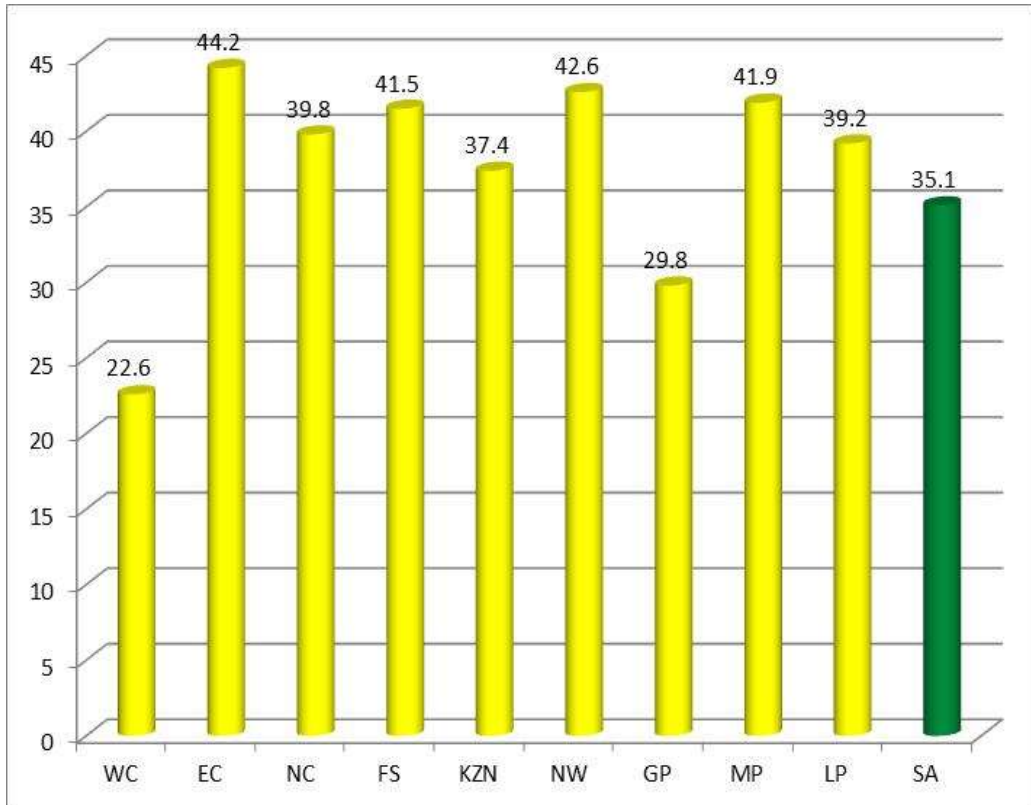


**Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey**

The figure above clearly indicate that the Western Cape at 18,1% had the lowest unemployment rate followed by Gauteng with 21,7% and KwaZulu Natal on 22,6% and these are the only provinces whose unemployment rates are below that of the national rate of 23,5%.

The unemployment figures for the first quarter of 2014 show a deterioration in all nine provinces when compared to the 2009 figures. The national unemployment rate has increased by over 11% from 23,5% in the first quarter of 2009 to 35,1% for the first quarter of 2014. The unemployment rates for the province and South Africa in the first quarter of 2014 is depicted in the figure below.

**Figure 81: Unemployment rates for the provinces and SA Quarter1 2014**



Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

The Western Cape continues to have the lowest unemployment rate with the top three lowest rates in the country unchanged from Quarter 1 2009 with only two provinces i.e. Western Cape and Gauteng, having lower unemployment rates than the national figures. In comparison with the other provinces the Northern Cape has shown slight improvement in that it the province with the fifth highest unemployment rate.

**Figure 82: Unemployment rates in N Cape for Quarter 1 2009-2014**

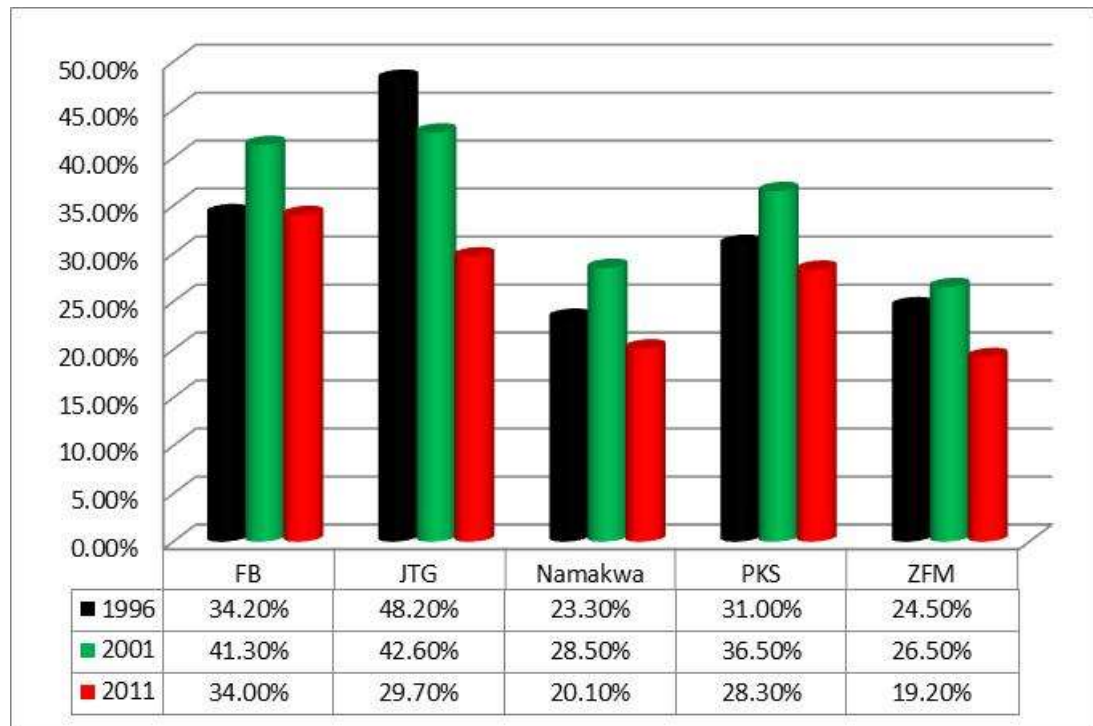


Source: Stats SA - Quarterly Labour Force Survey

The unemployment rate in the Northern Cape for the first quarter for the period 2009 to 2014 was at its lowest in 2010 at 24,9%. However, in the last two years of this period the unemployment figures have increased drastically and the 2014 rate of 39,8% is more than double that of lowest figure recorded in this century, that is, 19,4% in 2004.

Unemployment rates across the Districts in the province shows a marked decrease from 2001 to 2011. The figure below depicts the unemployment rate in all districts in the province for the years 1996, 2001 and 2011.

**Figure 83: Unemployment at the District level for 1996,2001 and 2011**



Source: StatsSA Census

DRAFT

## **17. GOVERNANCE**

### **17.1 Intergovernmental Relations**

Strong institutional mechanisms as legislated for in the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005 exist between and across the different spheres of government to promote cooperation and the coordination, integration as well as the monitoring activities across the three spheres of government. At the national level there is the Presidential Coordinating Committee in which the Premiers of all Provinces and local government representation serve. Other structures promoting coordination between provinces and the national government with regards to concurrent functions are what are commonly referred to as the political and technical Min-Mecs.

At the provincial level the Premier's Intergovernmental Relations Forum which was established in 2005 continues to meet on a regular basis and this structure has been reproduced at the District level. However, whether the desired levels of coordination and cooperation are achieved within the province is a matter of conjecture. There are various reasons for this, not least of which is the disproportionate levels in capacity not only between the spheres but also between the various local municipalities themselves.

### **17.2 Local government**

#### **17.2.1 Developmental Local Government – A New Era**

Developmental Local Government is defined as "local government committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs and improve the quality of their lives". The current model of local government requires that local government must be developmental and one of the objectives of local government is "to promote social and economic development". The White Paper on Local Government identifies three inter-related approaches which can be utilised by local authorities in their quest to become more developmental:

- Integrated development planning;
- Performance management; and
- Co-operating with residents and partners.

#### **Integrated Development Planning**

Integrated development planning is a planning process used by local authorities to establish development plans. It allows for full participation and aims to integrate different strategies in order to ensure the optimal use of limited resources. All municipalities have prepared and reviewed their five-year integrated development plan (IDP's).

#### **Performance Management**

Increased pressures to control excessive spending and for the devolution of powers to lower spheres of government resulted in new demands for Local Government to be held accountable to the electorate and thus for a results-based budgeting process and a results-orientated public administration.

To this end, performance management ensures that plans are implemented efficiently in accordance with the required developmental impact and with optimal utilisation of available resources.

## **Co-operating with residents and partners**

Local Government has to be executed within a framework of democracy and should therefore institute mechanisms that allow for adequate public participation. Developmental local government can thus be regarded as the vehicle through which quality of life issues can be addressed by local authorities and the opinion is held that it will, because of its direct involvement of local communities, be seen as the most tangible expression of a democratic government.

Despite local government being grounded in a strong policy environment with effective planning tools, there are a range of diverse challenges that undermine progress. These challenges include, amongst others the following:

- Serious leadership and governance deficiencies.
- Weak responsiveness and accountability to communities.
- A high degree of financial mismanagement practices for non-developmental purposes.
- Corruption.
- Inadequate human resource capital to ensure professional administrations; and
- Failure by some to fulfil legal requirements to ensure the active participation of communities in local government processes.

The abovementioned challenges that affect the majority of municipalities have resulted in regular service delivery backlogs that have given rise to an escalation in public protests.

### **17.2.2 Status of Municipalities**

A discussion of the status of municipalities follows that will deal briefly with the vacancy rate of senior managers, the status of ward committees, community development workers and the effectiveness of district Intergovernmental relations (IGR) forums.

#### **17.2.2.1 Vacancy Rate of Senior Managers (Section 54A and Section 56 managers)**

Since all municipalities do not have the same organisational structures, for purposes of this report only the senior posts of Municipal Manager (MM), Chief financial Officer (CFO), Technical Manager and Corporate Services that are common to all 32 municipalities will be considered. Vacancies in these positions as at mid-2014 in all municipalities are as follows:

- Over 35% of the posts mentioned above in all 32 municipalities were vacant.
- In 6 of the municipalities the post of MM was vacant.
- The post with the most vacancies was Corporate Services with 13, that is, in over 40% of municipalities.
- This is followed by the post of Technical Manager with 10 vacancies.
- The total number of vacancies regarding Chief Financial Officers was 6.
- In 2 of municipalities, namely, Renosterberg and Mier, all senior manager posts were vacant.

### 17.2.2.2 Ward Committees

All ward committees have been established in most of the municipalities except for Themelihle where only 2 of 4 have been established, Kgatelopele with 3 of 4, Hantam 3 of 5 and //Khara Hais where one still needs to be established. All established ward committees are fully functional. In both the Frances Baard and John Taolo Gaetsewe districts all ward committees have ward operational plans in place. None of the wards in the municipalities in the Namakwa District have their operational plans in place.

### 17.2.2.3 Community Development Workers

There are a total of 283 community development workers servicing 191 wards across twenty seven municipalities in the province. This translates into a provincial ratio of almost 1,5 CDW's per ward. The table below indicates the number of CDWs as well as the number of wards in each district.

**Table 96: The number of wards and CDW's per district and the ratio of CDW's:ward**

District	No of Wards	No of CDWs	Ratio CDW : Ward
Frances Baard	52	82	1,6
John Taolo Gaetsewe	31	49	1,6
ZF Mgcawu	41	47	1,1
Namakwa	30	45	1,5
Pixley ke Seme	37	60	1,6
Provincial Total	191	283	1,5

Source: COGHSTA

The ratio of CDWs per ward is the lowest in the ZF Mgcawu district at 1,1 which is significantly lower than the provincial ratio of 1,5. The ratio of CDWs per ward in local municipalities is highly skewed. In the Frances Baard District the ratio in Magareng is over 2 (viz. 11 CDWs for 5 wards) whilst the Phokwane local municipality has the lowest ratio in the district of 1,2 (11 CDWs in 9 wards). This scenario replicates itself across all the other districts and the municipalities with the highest and lowest ratios in the remaining districts listed below:

- JTG: Gamagara 2 and Ga-Segonyana 1,2.
- ZF Mgcawu : Mier 2 and Kai Garib 1
- Pixley ke Seme : Thembelihle 2,25 and Kareeberg 1; and
- Namakwa : Kamiesberg 3 and Richtersveld 1,25.

## 17.3 Support to Local Government

### 17.3.1 Five-Year Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 – 2011)

The primary purpose of the Five-Year Local Government Strategic Agenda was to build on the positive lessons of Project Consolidate. It was directed at three strategic objectives:

- Mainstreaming hands-on support to all municipalities;

- Addressing the structure and governance arrangements of the State in order to better support local government; and
- Refining and strengthening the policy, legislative and fiscal environment for local government.

These objectives were translated into five key Performance Areas (KPAs) that all provinces and municipalities were required to report against:

- Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development
- Basic Service Delivery
- Local Economic Development
- Municipal Financial Viability and Management
- Good Governance and Public Participation.

In late 2008 the Ministry of COGTA undertook an initial qualitative assessment and review of Project Consolidate and Five-Year Local Government Strategic Agenda. Some key observations from this assessment included the following:

- Both programmes were predominantly technocratic in nature and driven by officials. Political oversight was not strong and effective;
- Many of the initiatives undertaken to support municipalities were not sustainable. While significant progress was made in mobilising experts to support municipalities, this did not result in sustainable capacity and skills being left in municipalities;
- Key municipal support programmes were not under direct departmental control. Examples were Siyenza Manje (under DBSA) and key municipal financial management support programmes (of National Treasury); and
- Communication machinery of the department, and that of provinces and municipalities, was weak and ineffective to communicate the gains and achievement that have been registered.

### **17.3.2 Local Government Turn Around Strategy (LGTAS)**

Five strategic objectives were identified to guide LGTAS interventions and support framework. These are aimed at restoring the confidence of the majority of people in municipalities, as the primary expression of the developmental state at a local level. These were:

- Ensure that municipalities meet the basic service needs of communities;
- Build clean, effective, efficient, responsive and accountable local government;
- Improve performance and professionalism in municipalities;
- Improve national and provincial policy, oversight and support, and
- Strengthen partnerships between local government, communities and civil society.

The roll-out plan of the LGTAS during 2010-2011 was divided into four phases:

**Phase 1:** 20 January – 9 February 2010

Provincial Support Teams undertook visits to all 32 municipalities for purposes of identifying 2 municipalities in the province that are most vulnerable and require urgent assistance from national and provincial government: The two municipalities identified were the Joe Morolong and Renosterberg local municipalities.

**Phase 2:** 10 February – 31 March 2010

This phase involved the full roll-out of LGTAS for the priority/targeted municipalities (i.e. Joe Morolong and Renosterberg Local Municipalities), as well as the completion of LGTAS for all 32 municipalities in the Province. The consolidation of the LGTAS priorities with the Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) and budgets of municipalities formed the key element of this phase.

**Phase 3:** 1 April – 30 June 2010

Focus was on provincially coordinated IDP analysis sessions to examine draft IDPs and LGTAS within them. During this phase the IDP, budgets and service delivery budget Implementation Plans (SDBIPs) were adopted by all 32 municipalities in the province.

**Phase 4:** 1 July 2010 – 31 March 2011

The MEC for COGHSTA commented on the commitments made to the IDPs. Implementation of the IDP went hand-in-hand with 'hands on, Rapid Response' support processes, leveraging of stakeholder support and reporting and monitoring.

The implementation of the LGTAS programme has been complemented by the Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency (MISA) programme through the deployment of engineers. Thirteen distressed municipalities are supported through both the LGTAS and MISA programmes and these municipalities are:

**LGTAS:** Richtersveld, Kamiesberg, Siyathemba, Siyancuma, Tsantsabane and Kgatelopele.

**MISA:** Ga-Segonyana, Gamagara, Joe Morolong, Renosterberg, Mier, Magareng and Khai-Ma.

**Mainstreaming LGTAS into Outcome 9**

Outcome 9 is implemented through the government Programme of Action which is coordinated at national level by the Department of Performance Monitoring and Evaluation in the Presidency, and is coordinated at provincial level by the Office of the Premier.

**17.4 Operation Clean Audit**

Operation Clean Audit (OPCA) was initiated towards the end of 2010 to assist provincial government in its efforts to improve audit outcomes particularly in local government. To this end an OPCA Coordinating Committee (OPCACC) was established comprising of senior government officials and representatives of SALGA, DBSA and the Auditor General's Office. This committee is chaired by the Director General of the province.

OPCACC's first task was to establish a multi-disciplinary team of technical officials that conducted detailed assessments of the financial and general business environment in all 32 municipalities. A detailed report with specific findings and recommendations for each municipality was completed and a decision to assist municipalities that were the most in need of assistance was taken. The identified municipalities, however, were not prepared to cooperate. This required a change in approach and technical teams were tasked to assess



progress made by municipalities in implementing the AG's action plans. The teams found little or no evidence of progress in this regard.

As a result of municipalities not implementing their action plans there has been a repeat of poor audit outcomes and a regression in audit opinions in many instances.

DRAFT

## 18. PROVINCIAL REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE

### 18.1 Provincial Revenue

The total provincial revenue for the Northern Cape has been increasing for every year from the 2008/09 financial year up to the 2012/13 financial year with the largest increase of almost 20% occurring in 2008/09. The average year-on-year increase for the five year period mentioned above is 14,24%. The smallest increase in total provincial revenue occurred in 2012/13 and amounted to 6,3% which was less than half of the average year-on-year increase.

The table below indicates the total provincial revenue over a five year period beginning in 2008/2009 together with the annual percentage increase.

**Table 97: Total annual revenue from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Total Revenue in R'000	% Change Annually
2008/09	7 256 626	19,8
2009/10	8 662 764	19,4
2010/11	9 824 693	13,4
2011/12	11 029 898	12,3
2012/13	11 720 530	6,3
2013/14	13 047 068	11,3

*Source: Consolidated Financial Information*

The largest contributor to the provincial revenue is the equitable share with an average contribution of just under 73% over the five year period mentioned. However, the percentage of the equitable share contribution has been steadily declining over this period from 75,3% in 2008/09 to 71,3% in 2012/13. The second largest contributor is the conditional grants with an annual average of 22,6%. The remaining 6% of the revenue comes from departmental own revenue, local and foreign aid assistance and other revenue.

**Figure 84: Total annual provincial revenue from 2008/09 to 2013/14**



*Source: Consolidated Financial Information*

The largest allocation of the provincial revenue goes to the Department of Education followed by Health and both departments consumed, on average, almost two thirds of the total provincial revenue over the period 2008/09 to 2012/20133.

## 18.2 Provincial Expenditure

The total expenditure for each of the five years from 2008/09 to 2012/13 has generally been less than the total revenue except for the 2008/09 financial year when the total expenditure exceeded the total revenue by an amount of just over R455 million. This surplus for the last four years can be attributed mainly to fact that Provincial Treasury has tightened up further on fiscal discipline and the majority of Departments are cooperating in this regard. The table below illustrates the total expenditure annually for the five year period ending 2012/13 and the year-on-year increases.

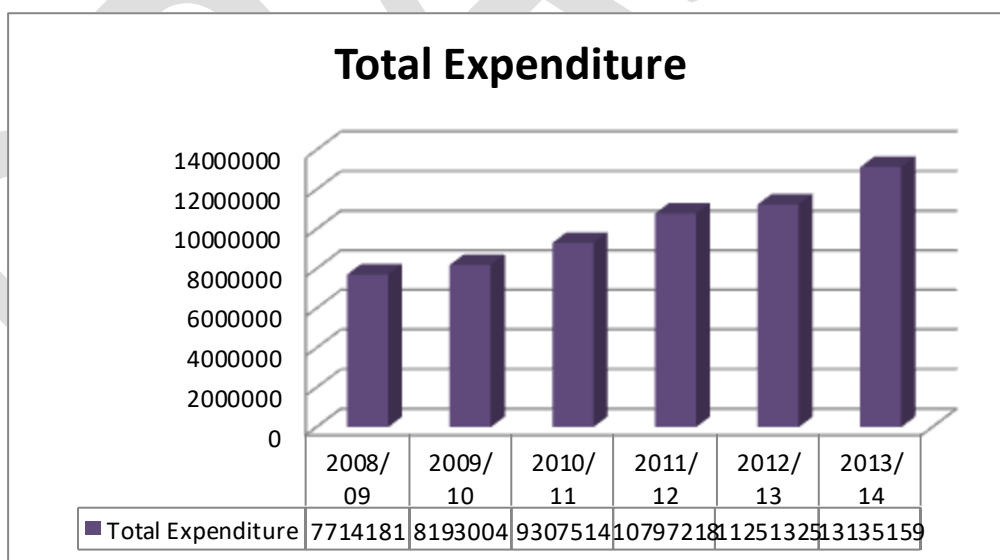
**Table 98: Total annual expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Total Expenditure R'000	Annual Increase R'000	% Change on previous year
2008/09	7 714 181	1 546 283	25,1
2009/10	8 193 004	478 823	6,2
2010/11	9 307 514	1 114 510	13,6
2011/12	10 797 218	1 489 604	16,0
2012/13	11 251 325	454 107	4,2
2013/14	13 135 159	1 883 834	16,7

*Source: Consolidated Financial Information*

The table above indicates significant increases in the financial years 2008/09 (over 25%), 2010/11 (13,6%) and 2011/12 (16%). In the financial years 2009/10 and 2012/13 there have been minimal increases of 6,2% and 4,2% respectively. The figure hereunder depicts the annual total expenditure for the five year period ending 2012/13

**Figure 85: Total annual expenditure for the province from 2008/09 to 2013/14**



*Source: Consolidated Financial Information*

### 18.2.1 Expenditure per Department

In general, all departments experienced an increase in expenditure over the fiscal period 2008/09 to 2012/13 with Roads and Public Works incurring the largest proportionate increase of 214% followed by Economic Development and Tourism with an increase of 169,8% and Health by 81,8%. Those with the smallest increases were Environment and Nature Conservation and the Legislature with 6,8% each and Treasury with 11,8%. The table below indicates the total expenditure of each department from 2008/09 to 2013/14..

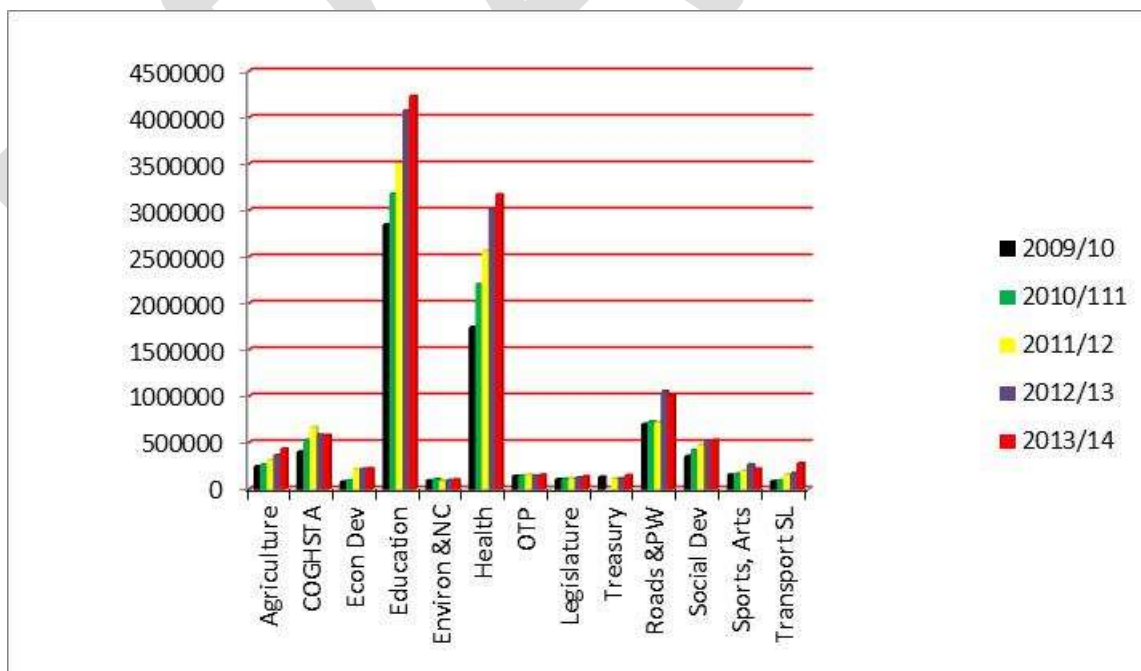
**Table 99: Expenditure per Department from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Department	2009/10 in R'000	2010/11 in R'000	2011/12 in R'000	2012/13 in R'000	2013/14 in R'000
Agriculture	269 676	311 362	369 638	436 462	987 816
COGHSTA	532 958	671 551	589 667	581 941	841 569
Econ Dev	94 559	218 192	223 057	224 893	267 775
Education	3 183 574	3 505 639	4 080 655	4 233 621	4 559 172
Environ &NC	110 164	90 948	100 614	104 200	117 741
Health	2 208 892	2 566 332	3 020 278	3 174 302	3 402 884
OTP	147 839	155 296	149 361	154 769	180 307
Legislature	112 392	115 807	127 040	137 311	145 321
Treasury	117 104	115 849	117 844	151 597	180 289
Roads &PW	729 170	720 018	1 055 695	1 016 536	1 280 918
Social Dev	420 016	478 233	522 687	531 722	604 415
Sports, Arts	169 240	200 458	268 610	221 908	256 651
Transport SL	97 493	157 829	172 072	282 063	310 301
<b>Total</b>	<b>8 193 004</b>	<b>9 307 514</b>	<b>10 797 218</b>	<b>11 251 325</b>	<b>13 135 159</b>

Source: Consolidated Financial Information

The graph below indicates annual expenditure for each department for each year from 2008/09 to 2012/13.

**Figure 86: Annual expenditure according to department from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

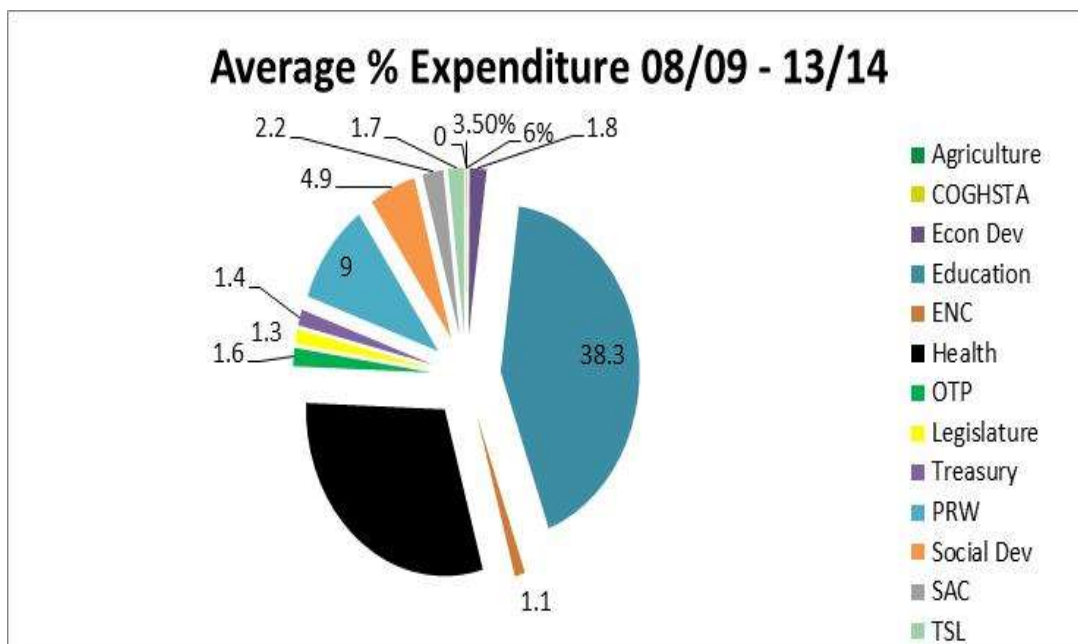


Source: Consolidated Financial Information

The Department of Education is the largest spender of all departments with an average of 38.3% over the period 2008/08 to 2012/13. This is followed by the Department of Health with an average of 27,2% over the same period and together both departments have expended an average of over 65% of the total expenditure. The remaining eleven departments have spent an average of a fraction over 35% in the same period with Roads

and Public Works incurring the largest expenditure of 9% and Environment and Nature Conservation the least at just over 1%. The figure below illustrates the average percentage expenditure of each department over the five year period 2008/09 to 2012/13.

**Figure 87: Average % expenditure for the period 2008/09 to 2012/13**



Source: Consolidated Financial Information

### 18.2.2 Expenditure According to Economic Classification

The table below gives the breakdown of the total expenditure according to economic classification, namely, current expenditure, transfers and subsidies, capital assets and financial assets.

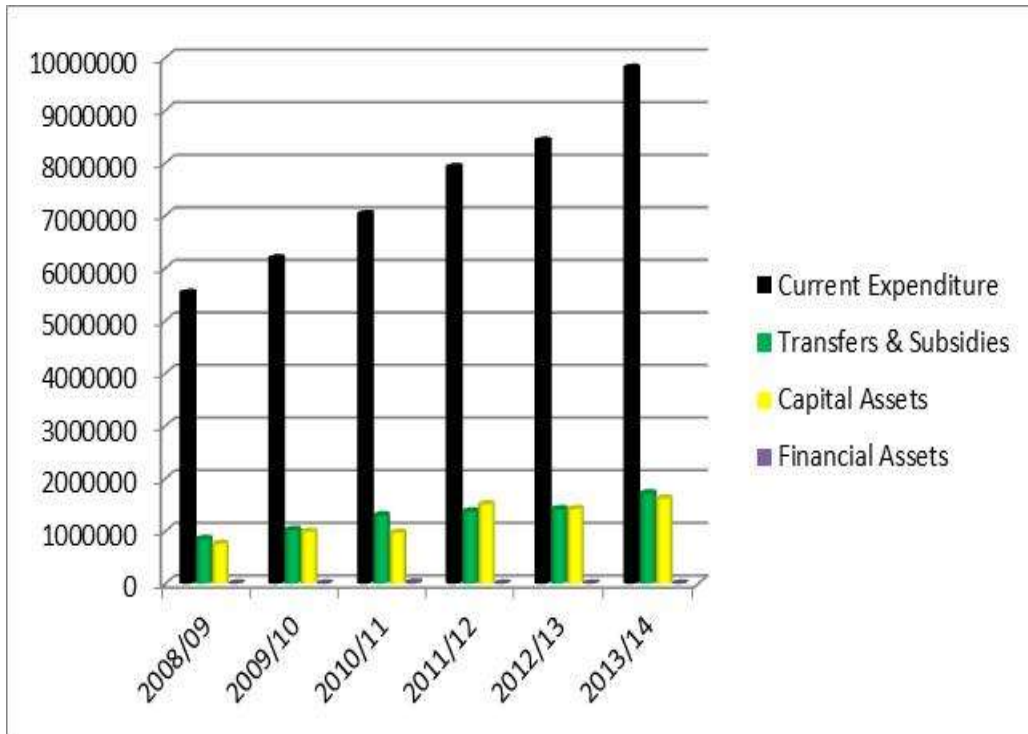
**Table 100: Total annual expenditure according to economic classification: 2008/09-2013/14**

Financial Year	Current Expenditure In R'000	Transfers & Subsidies In R'000	Capital Assets In R'000	Financial Assets In R'000
2008/09	5 523 833	848 527	753 353	Nil
2009/10	6 183 439	1 021 427	985 671	nil
2010/11	7 024 211	1 297 523	964 168	21 612
2011/12	7 919 495	1 369 619	1 506 652	1 452
2012/13	8 418 374	1 413 342	1 416 305	3 304
2013/14	9 804 981	1 714 710	1 615 084	384

Source: Consolidated Financial Information

Current expenditure is by far the largest expenditure in terms of economic classification and accounts for almost 75% of the total expenditure. This is followed by the item transfer and subsidies with non-profit institutions being the largest beneficiaries.

**Figure 88: Annual breakdown into current expenditure, transfers and subsidies, capital assets and financial assets 2008/09 to 2013/14**



Source: Consolidated Financial Information

### 18.2.3 Capital Expenditure

Capital expenditure has regularly increased over the past ten years except for the financial years 2010/11 and 2012/2013 when it underwent slight decreases of 2,4% and 6% respectively. The total capital expenditure over a six year period beginning 2008/09 to 2012/13 amounted to R5,63 billion, almost double that for the period 2004 to 2008. The table below shows the capital expenditure for the six year period with the annual percentage change as well as the percentage of total expenditure.

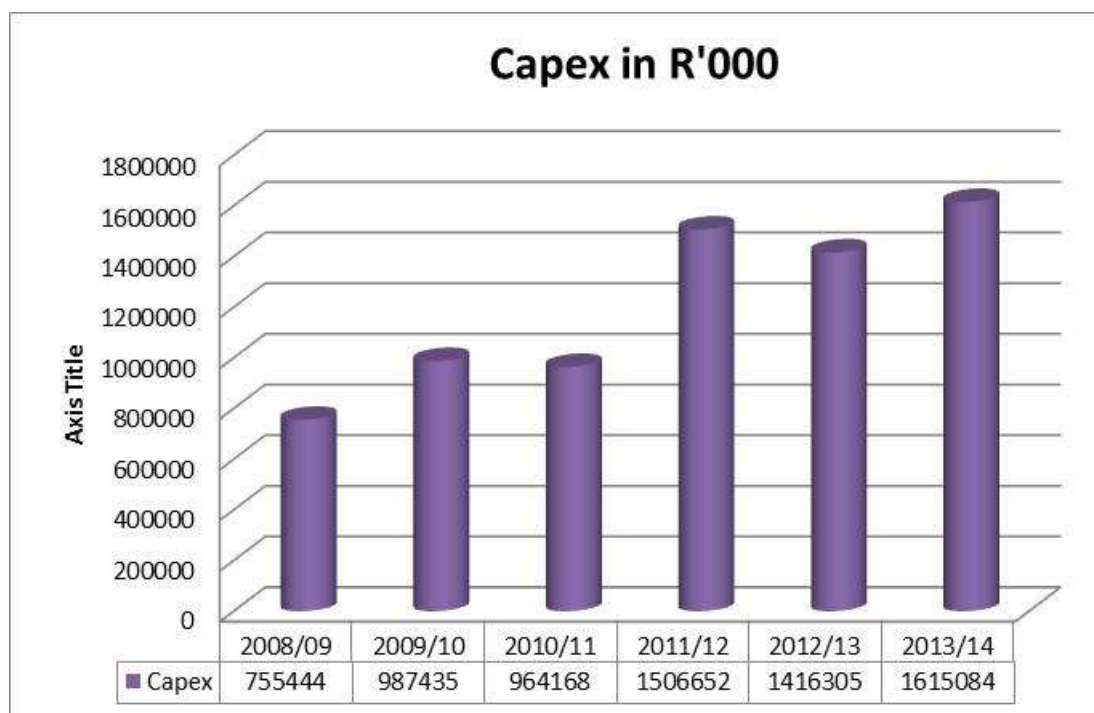
**Table 101: Annual capital expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Amount In R'000	Year on Year % Change	As a % of Total Expenditure
2008/09	755 444	11,2	10,6
2009/10	987 435	30,7	12,1
2010/11	964 168	(2,4)	10,4
2011/12	1 506 652	56,3	14,0
2012/13	1 416 305	(6,0)	12,6
2013/14	1 615 084	14,0	12,3

Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement

The figure 89 illustrates the capital expenditure over the period from 2008/08 to 2012/13.

**Figure 89: Annual capital expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14**



*Source: Consolidated Financial Information*

From 2008/09 to 2011/12 capital expenditure almost doubled from R0,755 billion to R1,5 billion with a year on year increase of 14%. The average annual increase in capital expenditure from the 2008/09 financial year to 2012/13 financial year is 12%.

#### **18.2.4 Transfers and Subsidies**

The key beneficiaries of transfers and subsidies are non-profit institutions, households and provinces and municipalities. Other smaller beneficiaries include universities and technikons, departmental agencies and public corporations and private enterprises. Non-profit institutions benefit the most receiving on average over 40% annually over the six years 2008/09 to 2013/14 followed by households that receive an average of over 35%. The table below illustrates the amounts expended annually from 2008/09 to 2013/14 on transfers and subsidies with year on year percentage increases as well as the percentage of the total expenditure.

**Table 102: Annual expenditure on transfers and subsidies from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

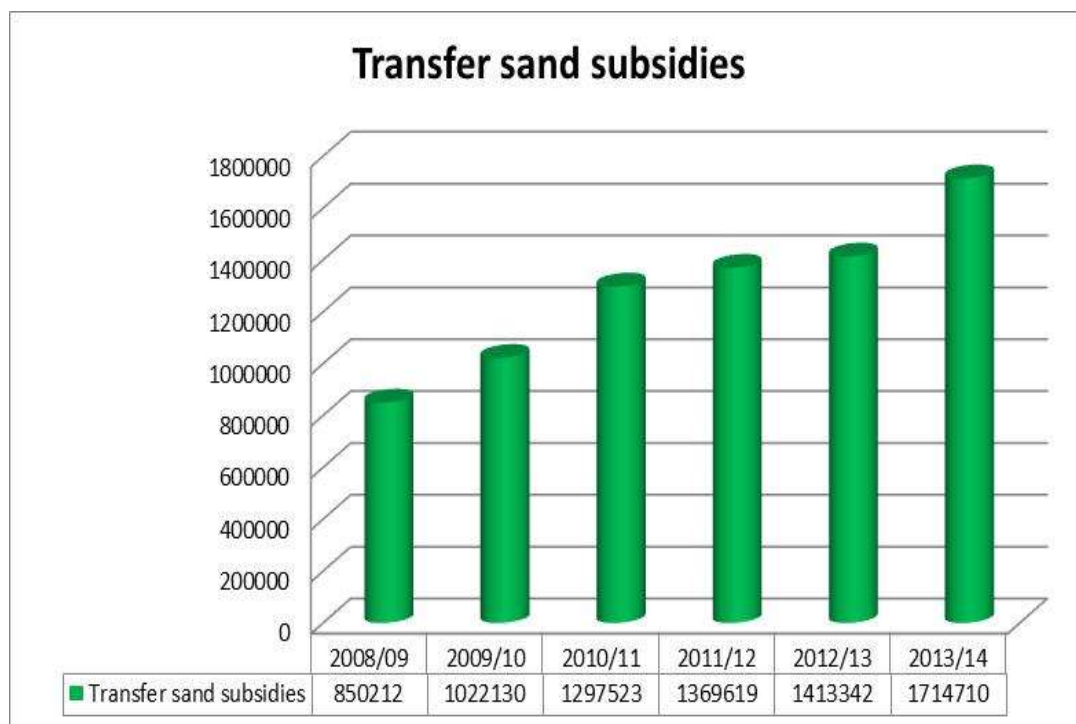
Financial Year	Amount In R'000	Year on Year % Change	As a % of Total Expenditure
2008/09	850 212	19,4	11,9
2009/10	1 022 130	20,2	12,5
2010/11	1 297 523	26,9	13,9
2011/12	1 369 619	5,6	12,7
2012/13	1 413 342	3,2	12,6
2013/14	1 714 710	21,3	13,1

*Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement*

It can be clearly seen from the figures in the table above that there is a consistent annual increase in the amount spent on transfers and subsidies with an average annual increase of 12.7%.



**Figure 90: Annual expenditure on transfers and subsidies from 2008/09 to 2013/14**



**Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement**

### 18.2.5 Compensation of Employees

Compensation of employees has been the highest single item expenditure of the Northern Cape Provincial Government since the inception of democracy and has been consistently consuming over 70% of the current expenditure and over half the total expenditure annually from 2008/09 financial year to 2012/13 financial year. In the 2013/14 financial year this item has decreased to below 70% for the first time in the period under consideration. Table 103 below indicates the compensation for employees annually from 2008/09 to 2013/14 as well as the year-on-year percentage change.

**Table 103: Annual compensation for employees: 2008/09-2013/14**

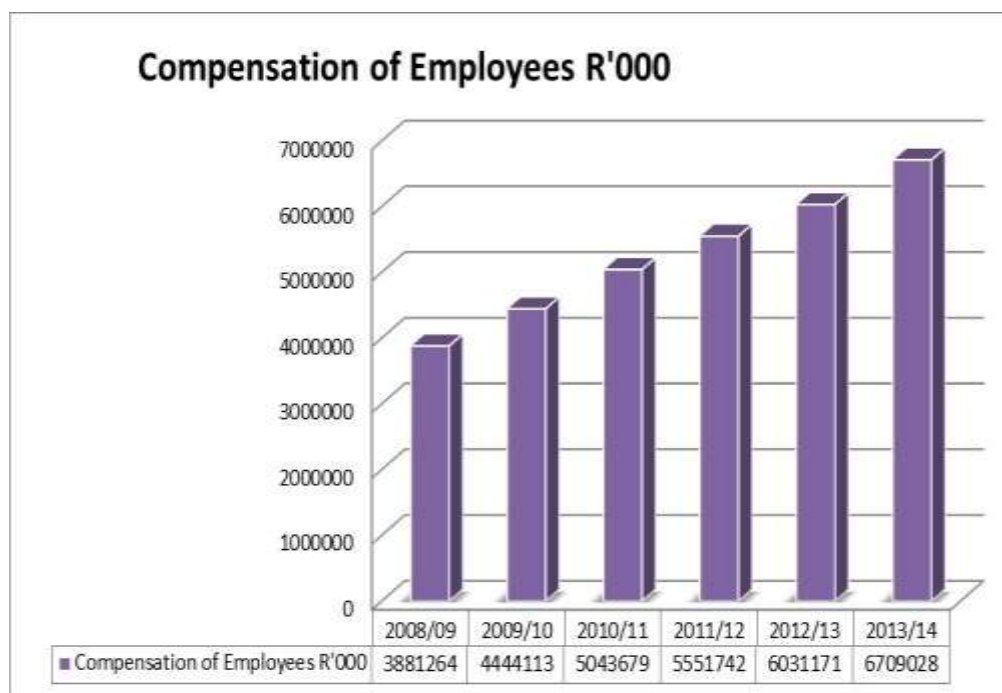
Financial Year	Amount In R'000	Year on Year % Change	As a % of Current Expenditure
2008/09	3 881 264	21,3	70,3
2009/10	4 444 113	14,5	71,9
2010/11	5 043 679	10,1	71,8
2011/12	5 551 742	10,1	70,1
2012/13	6 031 171	8,6	71,6
2013/14	6 709 028	11,2	68,4

**Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement**

Although the annual percentage change has increased every year since 2008/09 the annual increase which stood at 21,3% (2008/09) has been steadily decreasing and reached 8,6 in 2012/13, the lowest increase for the period under review. The increases are more in keeping with what can be termed as acceptable increases for employee compensation.



**Figure 91: Annual expenditure on compensation of employees: 2008/09-2013/14**



**Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement**

### 18.2.6 Training and Staff Development

The investment in training and staff development has increased almost four-fold since 2007/08 from R12,25 million to almost R47,7million in the 2011/12 financial year. For most of the six year period 2008/09 to 2013/14 expenditure on this item has increased with large increases in 2008/09 and 2011/12 financial years. However, 2012/13 and 2013/14 saw an actual decrease for the first time by 3,2% and 0,8% respectively not being lowered very significantly when compared to the previous years.

The table and the figure below indicate the expenditure on training and staff development together with the percentage change annually for the fiscal period 2008/09 to 2013/14.

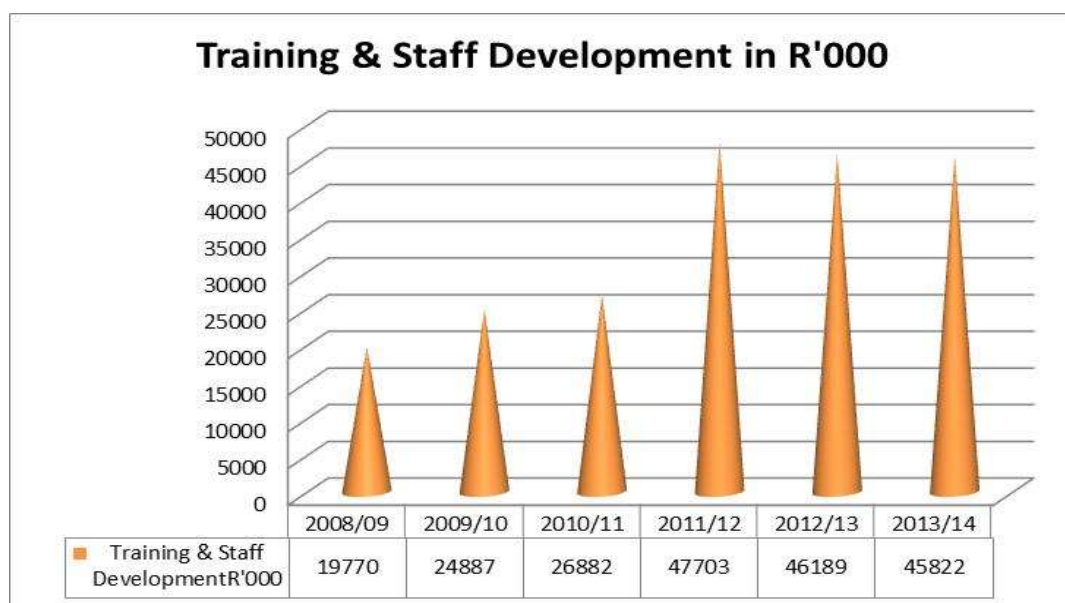
**Table 104: Annual expenditure on training and staff development: 2008/09- 2013/14**

Financial Year	Amount R'000	%Increase/ Decrease
2008/09	19 770	61,4
2009/10	24 887	25,9
2010/11	26 882	7,4
2011/12	47 703	77,5
2012/13	46 189	(3,2)
2013/14	45 822	(0,8)

**Source: Consolidated Financial Information**

The figure below shows the expenditure on training and staff development over the period 2008/09 to 2013/14

**Figure 92: Annual expenditure on training and staff development from 2008/09 to 2013/14**



*Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement*

### 18.3 Unauthorised, Irregular and Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure

#### 18.3.1 Unauthorised Expenditure

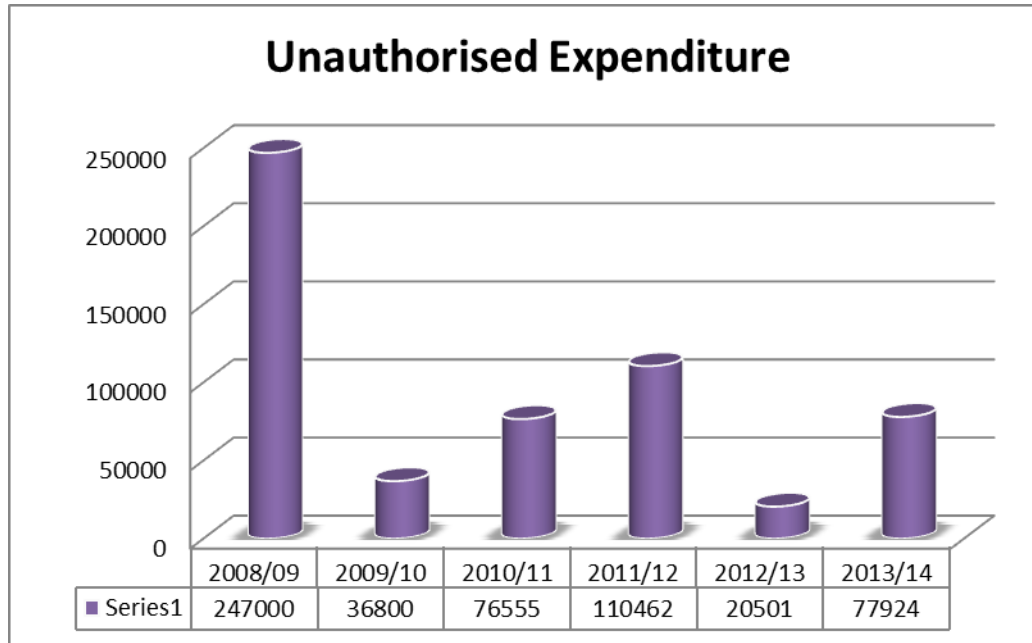
The cumulative unauthorised expenditure for the five year period 2009/10 to 2013/14 amounted to R322, 24 million with the social sector, comprising Education and Health, having incurred 70,7% of the total amount and the remaining Departments less than 23 % for that period. The table and figure below illustrate unauthorised expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14.

**Table 105: Annual total unauthorised expenditure cumulative balance from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Financial Year	Unauthorised Expenditure for Current Year R'000	Amount Approved with funding (Condoned) R'000	Cumulative Unauthorised Expenditure R'000	Opening Balance R'000
2008/09	247 200	467 279 + 216	681 848	902 143
2009/10	36 800	nil	718 648	681 848
2010/11	76 555	nil	795 351	718 796
2011/12	110 462	nil	911 562	801 064
2012/13	20 501	nil	932 618	912 117
2013/14	77 924	718 792	291 750	932 618

*Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement*

**Figure 93: Unauthorised expenditure incurred annually from 2008/09 to 2013/14**



*Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statements*

The unauthorised expenditure for each department for the past five fiscal years is presented in the table below.

**Table 106: Annual Unauthorised expenditure per provincial department from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

Department	2009/10 R'000	2010/11 R'000	2011/12 R'000	2012/13 R'000	2013/14 R'000	Total R'000
Education	13 792	0	0	16 891	37 874	68 557
Health	20 765	38 999	77 768	0	26 506	164 038
Social Development	0	0	0	0	0	0
OTP	0	0	0	0	0	0
Legislature	857	743	417	1 421	1 260	4 698
Transport, S & L	0	0	599	95	0	1 694
Roads & Public W	0	0	26 891	0	0	26 891
Sports, Arts & Cult.	0	7 428	0	0	0	7 428
Agriculture	0	93	0	0	0	93
COGHSTA	1 534	33 135	6 236	2 094	12 284	55 283
Environment & NC	0	119	0	0	0	119
Treasury	0	0	0	0	0	0
Economic Dev	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>36 948</b>	<b>80 517</b>	<b>112 911</b>	<b>20 501</b>	<b>77 924</b>	<b>328 801</b>

*Source: Provincial Treasury Report – Budget Lekgotla*

An analysis of the data in the table above indicates that only two departments, namely, Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs and the Legislature have consistently overspent for every one of the financial years under review. However, Health has incurred the largest amount of unauthorised expenditure for this period followed by Education. It is nevertheless heartening to note that four departments, Social

Development, OTP, Treasury and Economic Development and Tourism have incurred no unauthorised expenditure for the entire period.

The cumulative unauthorised expenditure for the period 2004/05 to 2013/14 amounted to R1,01 billion. As a result of the Debt Redemption Strategy implemented by Treasury the cumulative balance of unauthorised expenditure has been reduced significantly to an amount of R328,8 million as at the end of the 2013/14 financial year.

### 18.3.2 Irregular Expenditure

Irregular expenditure is expenditure that was not incurred in a manner prescribed by legislation. Such expenditure does not necessarily mean that money has been wasted or that fraud has been committed but is an indicator that legislation is not being adhered to, including legislation that is aimed at ensuring that procurement processes are competitive and fair. In many instances it is also an indicator of a significant breakdown in controls. The cumulative amount of irregular expenditure pending condonement stands at over R6,77 billion at the end of the 2013/14 financial year. For four of the last five financial years, between 2009/10 and 2013/14, the amount incurred as irregular expenditure exceeded one billion rands.

**Table 107: Annual irregular expenditure, cumulative balance and condonement annually from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

	<b>Irregular Expenditure for the Year In R'000</b>	<b>Balance @ Year end In R'000</b>	<b>Condonation In R'000</b>	<b>Year Before In R'000</b>
2009/10	199 514	331 194	5 825	nil
2010/11	1 234 301	1 751 193	24 234	222 880
2011/12	1 072 088	3 965 911	107 859	860 331
2012/13	1 452 644	5 615 007	213 750	55 540
2013/14	1 273 448	6,770 316	126 279	8 140

*Source: Consolidated financial statements*

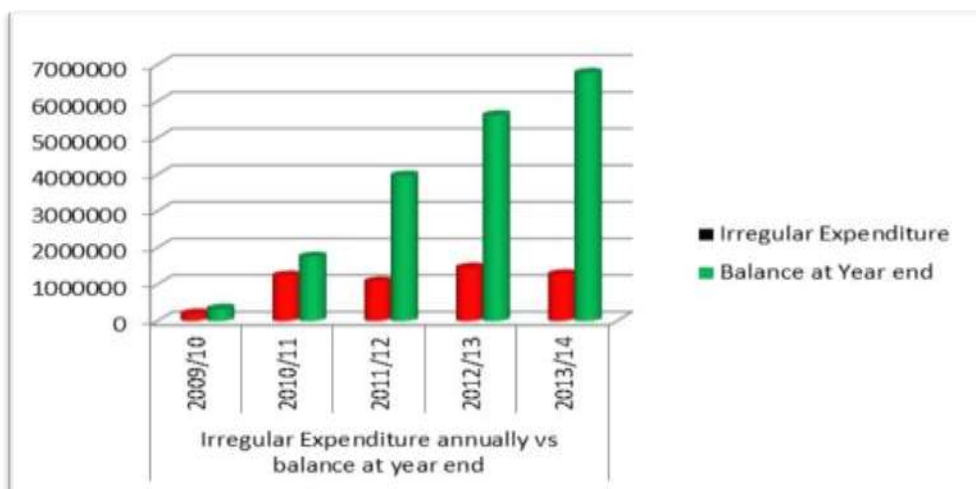
**Table 108: Breakdown of irregular expenditure per Department annually- 2009/10 to 2013/4**

	2009/10 in R'000	2010/11 in R'000	2011/12 in R'000	2012/13 in R'000	2013/14 in R'000	Total
Agriculture Land Reform& Rural Dev	3 973	2 906	2 979	1 752	1 299	12 909
COGHSTA	14 204	21 000	50 123	107 282	49 319	241 928
Economic Dev & T.	7 970	1 103	19 617	400	0	29 090
Education	35 582	69 373	387 774	285 742	348 773	1 127 244
Environment & NC	1 436	383	4 862	1 177	0	7 858
Health	100 872	1 041 955	494 213	792 158	679 867	3 109 065
OTP	2 769	3 228	4 449	6 678	6780	23 904
Legislature	828	817	1 050	4156	2 871	9 722
Treasury	13 127	8 094	16 222	16 068	560	54 071
Roads& Public Works	5 942	68 772	58 154	94 728	42 611	270 207
Social Dev	3 413	3 654	10 998	2 429	1 055	21 549
Sports, Arts & Cult	9 398	10 028	9 655	27 150	19563	75 794
Transport, S&L	0	2 988	11 992	112 924	120 750	248 654
<b>Total</b>	<b>199 514</b>	<b>1 234 301</b>	<b>1 072 088</b>	<b>1452644</b>	<b>1 273448</b>	<b>5 231 995</b>

*Source: Consolidated financial statements*

The figure below illustrates irregular expenditure annually against the cumulative balance at year end.

**Figure 94: Annual irregular expenditure vs cumulative balance at year end from 2009/10 to 2013/14**



Source: Consolidated financial statements

The table above clearly shows that the Department of Health is the major contributor to the total irregular expenditure for the period under review and was responsible for over 51% of this total. It is followed by Education and Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs with 25,5% and 9% respectively. Of significant note is the fact that two departments, namely, Environment and Nature Conservation and Economic Development and Tourism have zero contributions to irregular expenditure in the 2013/14 financial year.

### 18.3.3 Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure

Fruitless and wasteful expenditure is expenditure that was made in vain and could have been avoided had reasonable care been taken. This includes penalties and interest on late payments of creditors or statutory obligations as well as payments made for services not utilised or goods not received. Fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred in 2008/09 was zero and increased to just over R28 million in 2013/14 with the amount incurred peaking at R33,6 million in 2012/13 for the period under consideration. In the 2013/14 fiscal year the Departments of Health and Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs were together responsible for 97% of the fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred in the province (*General report on provincial audit outcomes for the Northern Cape 2013/14*). The table that follows gives the annual breakdown of fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred for the period 2008/09 to 2013/14

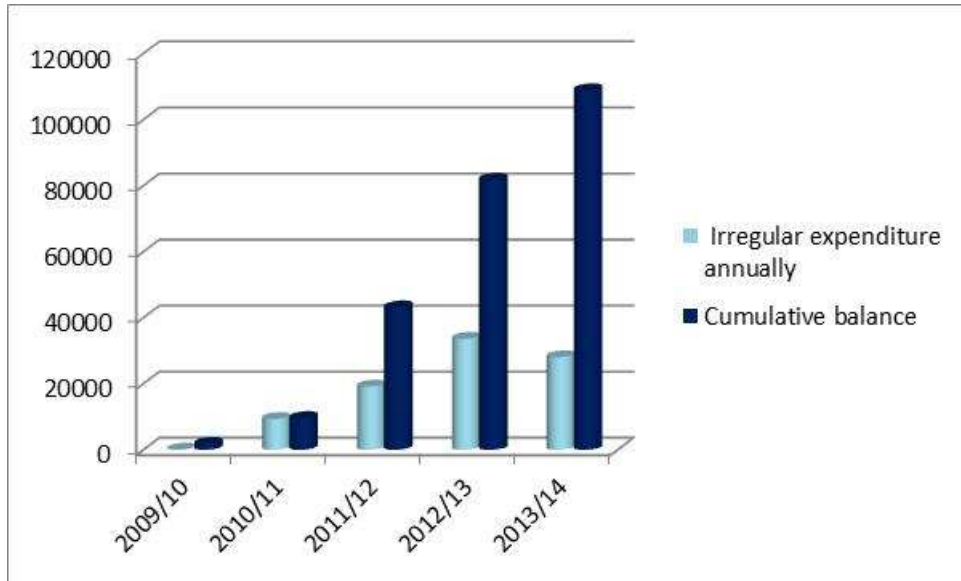
**Table 109: Annual total fruitless and wasteful expenditure from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

	Year before R'000	Annual Amount R'000	Balance R'000
2008/09	nil	nil	1 733
2009/10	nil	96	1 829
2010/11	220	9 368	9 643
2011/12	14 692	19 170	43 158
2012/13	3 241	33 639	81 777
2013/14	368	28 077	108 939

Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement

The figure below depicts the annual fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred for the period 2008/09 to 2013/14 against the cumulative balance.

**Figure 95: Fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred annually vs cumulative balance at year end**



**Source: Consolidated Financial Information- Consolidated Statement**

DRAFT

## 19. AUDIT OUTCOMES: PROVINCIAL AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT

### 19.1 Audit Outcomes of Provincial Government Entities

#### 19.1.1 Introduction

The annual audits conducted by the Office of the Auditor General of the Northern Cape Province are based on an examination of the following three aspects:

- Fair presentation and absence of material misstatements in the financial statements.
- Reliable and credible performance information for purposes of reporting on predetermined performance objectives; and
- Compliance with all the laws and regulations governing financial matters.

For purposes of this report the period under review is from the 2009/10 financial year to the 2013/14 financial year. During this period there has been improvement in the financial health of the province as a result of improved budget controls within some of the entities. However, much more is required of many of the provincial government entities to improve the situation to acceptable levels.

#### 19.1.2 Audit Findings

There are twenty auditees comprising of thirteen(13) provincial departments and six(6) public entities. A further six(6) entities were audited that were categorised as other entities. The table below indicates the audit opinions of the nineteen auditees over a five year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 110: Audit opinions of provincial departments and public entities from 2008/09 to 2013/14**

Departments					
	2009/10	2010/2011	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
Agriculture, Land Reform & Rural Development	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
COGHSTA	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
Economic Development & Tourism	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings
Education	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
Environment & Nature Conservation	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings
Health	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified
Office of the Premier	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
Provincial Legislature	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings
Provincial Revenue Fund	Unqualified with	Unqualified with	Unqualified with	Unqualified with	Audi not finalised at



	findings	findings	findings	findings	legislated date
Provincial Treasury	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings
Roads and Public Works	Disclaimer	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
Social Development	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings
Sports, Arts & Culture	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
Transport , Safety & Liaison	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
<b>Public Entities</b>					
Kalahari Kid Corporation			Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings
NCEDA		Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Disclaimer	Qualified
NC Fleet Managenent	Adverse	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified
N C Gambling Board			Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
N C Liquor Board			Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
N C Tourism Authority	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings

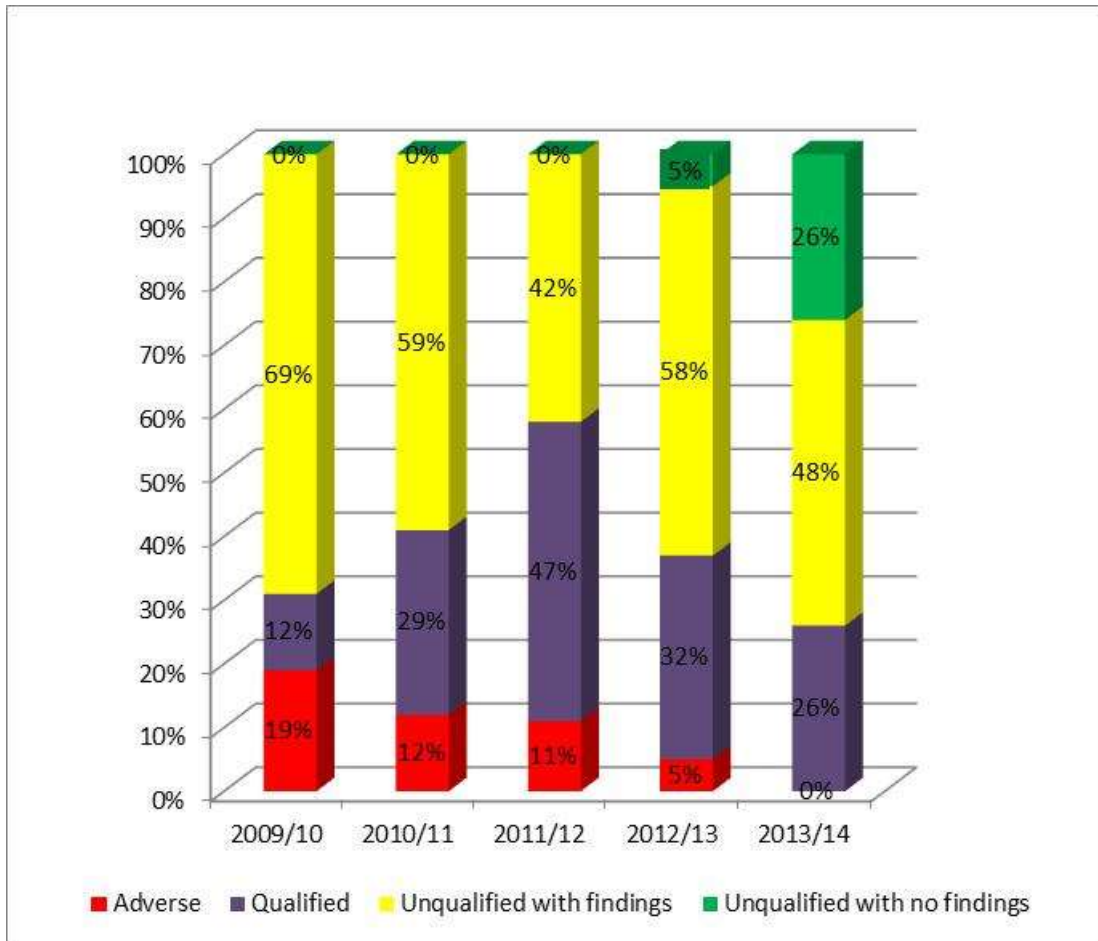
*Source: General Reports on Provincial audit outcomes of the Northern Cape*

An analysis of the above table indicates that there has been significant improvement in the audit findings in the 2013/14 financial year compared to the other financial years under consideration. In the 2013/4 fiscal year five (5) or twenty six per cent (26%) of the nineteen (19) audits finalised at the legislated date received a financially unqualified opinion with no findings or what is commonly referred to as a clean audit. A further nine (9) or forty eight per cent (48%) of the auditees received a financially unqualified audit opinion with findings that relate to their performance information or compliance with legislation or both. It must be noted that these nine (9) auditees have passed the critical test of fair presentation of financial statements and have accounted accurately. The remaining five (5) auditees received a qualified audit opinion indicating that they were unable to account adequately or accurately for all financial transactions and activities. Of significance is the fact none of the nineteen auditees in 2013/14 financial year received adverse audits or disclaimers.

In the period under review the poorest audit outcomes were recorded in 2011/12 when 9 of audit opinions were qualified, representing 47% of auditees and two (2) auditees or 11% of entities audited received adverse audits/ disclaimer. There were no clean audits in that financial year. The figure below indicates a summary of audit opinions of provincial departments and public entities for the period under review.



**Figure 96: Summary of Audit opinions of provincial departments and public entities: 2009/10 to 2013/14**



Source: General Reports on Provincial audit outcomes of the Northern Cape

Of those categorised as other entities most of the entities received audit opinions that were either qualified or given disclaimers whilst 30% of the audits were not finalised at the legislated date. This is indicative of an unhealthy state of affairs and the financial statements presented were unreliable in certain areas (in the case of qualified audit opinions) or unreliable in most areas as is the case with disclaimers. The most improved entity is the Northern Cape housing fund that progressed from a disclaimer (2009/10 and 2010/11) to unqualified with no findings for two years in succession, that is, 2012/13 and 2013/14. With the exception of the Northern Cape Party Political Fund, the financial health of the remaining entities is in a poor state with the reliability of the financial statements in question or their audits were not finalised at the legislated date. The table below illustrates the audit opinions of the so-called other entities for the period 2009/10 to 2013/14.

**Table 110: Audit opinion for other entities from 2009/10 to 2013/14**

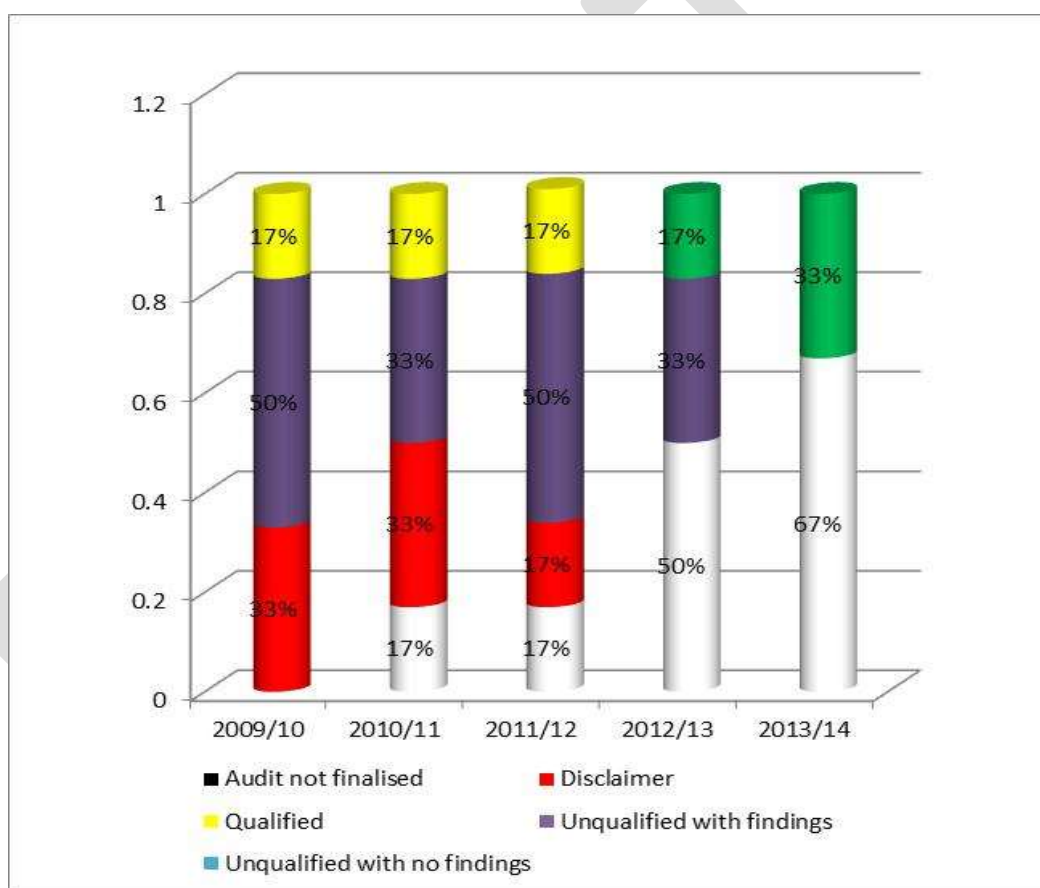
Entity	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14
N C Housing Fund	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Unqualified	Unqualified
McGregor Museum	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified
Ngwao Boswa Kapa Bokone	Qualified	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date
N C Arts and	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Audit not	Audit not

Culture Council				finalised at legislated date	finalised at legislated date
N C Political Party Fund	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date
N C Premier Education Trust Fund	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Audit not finalised at legislated date

Source: General Reports on Provincial audit outcomes of the Northern Cape

The overall performance of the category of other entities annually is depicted in the graph that follows.

Figure 97: Overall audit opinion annually from 2009/10 to 2013/14



Source: General Reports on Provincial audit outcomes of the Northern Cape

## 19.2 Audit Outcomes for Municipalities (2008/09-2012/13)

In the five year period under review, that is, from 2008/08 to 2012/13, the audit outcome of most municipalities is a cause for concern and it would appear that the programme (Operation Clean Audit) implemented by Provincial government is having very little impact on the audit opinions received by municipalities. This is borne out by the fact that during this period 54% of municipalities received disclaimers while 20% received qualified audit opinions, which together represents just under three quarters of the audits conducted during this period. To compound matters even further, the unqualified audits with no findings regressed from two in 2008/09 (Frances Baard DM and Kareeberg LM) to one in 2009/10 (Frances Baard DM) and to none in 2010/11 and 2011/12. Only one municipality

received a clean audit in 2012/13, namely, ZF Mgcawu, which was the only municipality in this period to progress consistently from a disclaimer in 2009/09 to a clean audit in 2012/13. The table below gives a summary of audit opinions from 2008/09 to 2012/13.

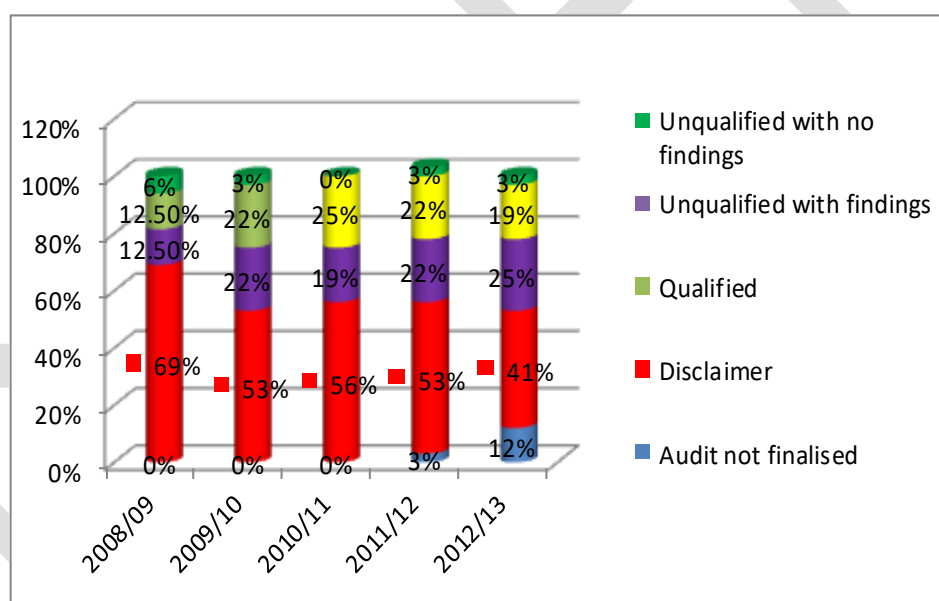
**Table 112: A summary of Municipalities audit opinions: 2008/09-2012/13**

	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13
Unqualified with no findings	2	1	0	0	1
Unqualified with findings	4	7	8	7	6
Qualified	4	7	6	7	8
Disclaimer	22	17	18	17	13
Audit not completed at legislated date	-	-	-	1	4
Total	32	32	32	32	32

*Source: General report on the audit outcomes of Local Government*

The figure below indicates the percentage of the type of audit received annually for municipalities from 2008/09 to 2012/13.

**Figure 98: % of the different types of audits for municipalities annually- 2008/09 to 2012/13**



*Source: General report on the audit outcomes of Local Government*

Eleven municipalities have received disclaimers for every one of the five years of the period under review, and of the four municipalities whose 2012/13 audits were not finalised by the legislated date they also received disclaimers in their four previous audits. It is also of concern to note that the Kareeberg municipality has regressed from an unqualified audit with no findings (a clean audit) in 2008/09 to a qualified audit opinion in 2012/13. The Auditor-General in his "General report on the audit outcomes of local government, Northern Cape, 2012/13, points out that "Despite the continued use of consultants at 23 municipalities to assist in preparing financial reports, 78% of these municipalities still received a modified opinion." The following table details the audit opinions received by all municipalities from 2008/09 to 2012/13.

**Table 113: Audit opinion of municipalities – 2008/09 to 2012/13**

<b>District Municipalities</b>					
	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13
Frances Baard	Unqualified with findings no	Unqualified with findings no	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
JT Gaetsewe	Unqualified with findings no	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
Namakwa	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified
Pixley ka Seme	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Qualified
ZF Mgcawu	Disclaimer	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings no
<b>Local Municipalities</b>					
	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13
Sol Plaatje	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
Dikgatlong	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Magareng	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Audit not finalised
Phokwane	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Ga-Segonyana	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Gamagara	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Disclaimer	Qualified
Joe Morolong	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Hantam	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
Kamiesberg	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Karoo Hoogland	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Audit not finalised	Audit not finalised
Khai-Ma	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
Nama Khoi	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Audit not finalised
Richtersveld	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
Emthanjeni	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings
Kareeberg	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified
Renosterberg	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Siyancuma	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Siyathemba	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Thembelihle	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Ubuntu	Disclaimer	Qualified	Disclaimer	Qualified	Unqualified with findings
Umsobomvu	Disclaimer	Qualified	Disclaimer	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
!Kheis	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Audit not

					finalised
//Khara Hais	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Disclaimer	Qualified
Kai Garig	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Kgatlopelo	Disclaimer	Qualified	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer
Mier	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Disclaimer
Tsansabane	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer

*Source: General report on the audit outcomes of Local Government*

DRAFT

## **20. KEY FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

The Twenty Year Review has revealed significant progress made with regards to the challenges that post-apartheid South Africa was faced with at the dawn of democracy. Remarkable strides have been made to address poverty and the provisioning of social services including health, education and basic services. The war against poverty has enjoyed some measure of success with the people living below the poverty line being halved from 54% in 2002 to 27% in 2009. The percentage of the elderly living in poverty was reduced by over two thirds and children living in poverty also significantly reduced. Furthermore, the vast majority of the citizens in the Northern Cape live in formal dwellings and most have access to basic services.

Despite all the gains made the government is still faced with many challenges that relate to service delivery and alleviating poverty. This is compounded by the fact that society to a large degree remains unequal and it continues to be defined along racial lines. Although government's policies and programmes are amongst the best, the lack of effective and in some cases the absence of effective risk management compromises implementation of programmes and policies and its success thereof. Much progress has been made in relation to the delivery of services in the social sector but the quality of services continues to pose challenges.

Significant investments have been made in infrastructure development but this has had little impact on the high unemployment levels in the province and has not boosted the economy of the Northern Cape as would have been expected. It may, however, in the longer term have the desired effect if there is a review of how these projects are approached.

The search for solutions to address the challenges we face, not only as a province but as a country as a whole, is on-going and is borne out by the adoption of the Outcome Approach of the previous MTSF whereby with fourteen outcomes were identified for implementation. In addition, in the National Development Plan the government has along term plan to tackle the challenges that it is confronted with.

The Provincial Growth and Development Strategy with its targets and strategic interventions should guide province specific deliverables but up to this point has not translated into meaningful achievements.

### **20.1 Social Sector**

The improvements made in service delivery in the social sector have continued with the same degree of consistency as was reported in both the ten and fifteen year reviews. However, in spite of the various recommendations made in the fifteen year review regarding this sector little has been done to address the challenges that were identified. Although access to health, education, basic services, housing and provisioning of social grants is very high the quality of many of these services continues to be of a poor standard. This is particularly so for the poor and marginalised and those living in rural areas. Details of the problems affecting delivery in the social sector are outlined in the paragraphs below.

#### **20.1.1 Education**

As was reported in the fifteen year review report, public education and the quality thereof continues to take precedence which is evidenced by the significant investment by the provincial government. During the five year period from 2009/10 to 2013/14 the funds allocated to Education by the provincial government averaged 37,6% of the provincial budget. Major policy reforms have been introduced to redress the historical imbalances in

education and to transform the education system to one that is more in keeping with the new social order. Through progressive policy prescriptions that included the National School Nutrition programme, No-fee Schools, free learner transport and expansion of access to Grade R the basic education sector landscape has been significantly changed in the province. However, not all policy interventions and programmes have enjoyed equal success.

Even though enormous strides have been made in relation to expanding access to Grade R the quality of teaching in many instances is of a sub-standard due to the fact that a number of Grade R teachers being poorly qualified. A programmatic approach is required to ensure that these practitioners have at least the minimum teaching qualifications with programmes aimed at upgrading those that are under-qualified.

The performance of learners in Mathematics and Literacy in the province is far from satisfactory and despite interventions such as the Annual National Assessment (ANA) that targets learners in Grades 3, 6 and 9 there has been little improvement in the overall performance. Not only do we need to attract quality practitioners in these subjects but more resources need to be invested in improving subject specific content as well as the pedagogic skills of already serving practitioners. The drive to increase the number of learners, particularly girl-learners taking Mathematics and Physical Science will not be successful in the absence of a quality corps of practitioners that can instill a love for these subjects from the early grades.

The matric pass rate of less than 75% is far below that achieved in the late nineties when the province topped the country. More time and resources need to be spent on not only improving the percentage of passes but to also on improving the quality of the passes.

Although the number of learners transported to school has increased from 18 192 in 2009 to 23 424 in 2013 the challenge of provisioning adequate learner transport to deserving learners still persists. This problem is more acute in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District due to its largely rural nature as well as the poor road infrastructure of the area. The long term solution to this challenge may be in provisioning of boarding facilities for learners from rural areas.

The National School Nutrition Programme although successful when it comes to the achievement of its objectives leaves a lot to be desired when it comes to value for money. Although the annual investment in this programme has more than doubled in the last MTFS cycle the number of learners benefitting from this programme is not proportionate to the increase in funding even after considering all other variables that influence the number of learners benefitting from this programme. An analysis of the expenditure of this programme should be undertaken to determine the nature of the problem, if any.

A socio-economic scourge that continues to threaten and derail government's attempts to provide schooling to all children of school-going age in the province is learner pregnancy. Between 2004 and 2011 more than 5 500 learners were reported pregnant. This is clearly a problem that needs the collaborative involvement of a number of stakeholders including the parents. The provincial Department of Education is working in close collaboration with the departments of Health and Social Development as well as the various community based organisations. It is strongly recommended that the sex education in high school becomes a priority.

### **20.1.2 Health**

Since 1994 the Northern Cape has made significant progress in transforming the public health sector. This has led to an expansion of free primary health care, an increase in the life expectancy of both males and females and a decrease in the maternal and child mortality rates. The province has also rolled out anti-retroviral treatment at all primary health care facilities resulting in a fourfold increase in the number of registered ART

patients from 2008 to 2013. The integrated approach to the treatment of both HIV and AIDS and Tuberculosis has resulted in a decline in the number of new cases of tuberculosis. However, in spite of these successes the health sector is still confronted with many challenges.

According to the StatsSA General Household Survey, 2011, the users of private health care facilities seemed to be more satisfied with those facilities than the users of the public health care facilities across all nine provinces. In the Northern Cape the level of satisfaction is much higher in the private health care facilities at almost 90% compared to 54,5% in the public health care facilities. This challenge is being addressed through the re-engineering of the primary health care system and the implementation of the National Core Standards that assess infrastructure, equipment, human resources and the level and quality of services provided. But in the short term the attitude of health care practitioners need to be improved through capacity building initiatives.

Maintaining quality health services is highly dependent on the acquisition and retention of the requisite skills pertaining to the particular sector. There is great difficulty in recruiting scarce and critical skills in the Northern Cape due to its geographic position and even in cases where recruitment is successful these health care practitioners often do not stay for long in the province moving to the larger provinces. A system of Incentives needs to be developed in order to retain scarce skills.

Although much progress has been made towards the achievement of the NCPGDS targets set for the health sector most of the deadlines for the targets have not been met. The deadlines for the targets should be reviewed and more realistic time-lines should be put in place.

The greatest institutional challenge that the Department of Health is faced with is to maintain the current levels of the service package, both in the context of the effects of the permutations of the economic down turn and the historical financial pressures the department has experienced. There are, however, opportunities to improve the quality of life of the people of the Northern Cape by focussing on, amongst others, the strength of the current health outputs.

### **20.1.3 Poverty Alleviation/ Social Development**

The Northern Cape provincial government has made major progress towards the improvement of the lives of its citizens through various programmes aimed at eradicating poverty while at the same time reducing inequality. It is encouraging to note that recommendations made in the fifteen year review with regards to alleviating poverty was given the appropriate consideration through the implementation of the War on Poverty campaign that has adopted an integrated approach. This programme strives for an integration of services so that poor households have access to a basket of public services thereby enjoying a minimum acceptable standard of living.

There are numerous programmes that target the poor that include social grants, free basic services, land reform, integrated food security, a comprehensive rural development programme, housing and free health care, amongst others. Social grants continue to be the largest programme aimed at alleviating poverty and is the main source of income to over a quarter of the households in the Northern Cape. The total amount invested in all categories of social grants have increased from R161,5 million in 2008/09 to R257.9 million in 2013/14. The impact of grants can be seen from the fact that the gini coefficient on per capita household expenditure has decreased from 0.67 before grants to 0, 62 after grants.

All municipalities in the Northern Cape are providing free basic water and sanitation to most indigent households in the province. There are, nevertheless, a small proportion of households that are not benefitting from this programme. COGHSTA should ensure that



all municipalities have indigent policies in place but more especially that these policies are reviewed regularly.

The positive impact of the various poverty alleviation programmes can be measured from the fact that the proportion of people in the province living below the food poverty line has decreased from 40% in 1995 to 26% in 2011 and the number of elderly and children that have been reported going hungry have decreased significantly.

On the other hand, substance abuse continues to pose a serious challenge to all concerned. In a bid to holistically address the negative impact and effects of substance abuse the Department of Social Development together with other stakeholders have developed a Provincial Substance Abuse Prevention Strategy. This strategy was adopted and launched in 2012 to coincide with the International Day on Illicit Drug Trafficking and Substance Abuse.

The 2010/11 crime statistics report shows a sharp increase in drug related crimes in the province. There was a 20% increase from just under 2 000 in 2009/10 to 2418 in 2010/11. This is indicative of the fact there is much to be concerned about regarding substance abuse and its impact on young people in particular. Given the youthful population of the province, this requires serious and urgent attention if a turnaround in the livelihood of individuals and families is to be attained.

In addition, there are no rehabilitation centres in the province making it dependent on referrals to rehabilitation centres in other provinces. The fact that the province has the highest incidence of Foetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorder and an increase in drug related crimes shows that the province is clearly in need of such a facility. Funding for the establishment of a rehabilitation centre, however, has to be given serious consideration.

#### **20.1.4 Human Settlement**

The Northern Cape has the third highest number of formal dwellings in the country at 82,4% and is only below Limpopo and Mpumalanga. This is 2,4% more than that recorded in 2009. The Namakwa district has the highest percentage of formal dwellings at 93,8% and John Taolo Gaetsewe the lowest at 76,6%. In spite of the fact that more than sixty thousand housing units have been delivered in the past 20 years the number of informal dwellings in the province has increased from 11.3% in 2001 to 13,1 % in 2011. The ZF Mgcawu district has the largest percentage of households living in informal dwellings and the Namakwa the lowest.

In the five year intervals since 1994 the largest number of units was delivered in the 2009/10 -2013/14 cohort when a total of 17 761 housing units were delivered. The total expenditure during this period was just over R2 billion. The housing delivery figures could be much higher if it were not for the lack of suppliers of building materials in the province, a lack of bulk infrastructure (for water, sanitation, electricity and roads) and a limited number of large scale financially viable contractors in the province to fast track human settlement projects.

#### **20.1.5 Basic Services**

According to Census 2011, almost 91% of households in the Northern Cape have access to piped water at or above RDP standards. Once again, the district with the highest is Namakwa with a fraction under 97% and the John Taolo Gaetsewe the lowest with 76%. More than 95% of households in 17 local municipalities in the province have access to piped water the with the Gamagara municipality the highest at 99%. However, a matter of grave concern is that ten local municipalities in the Northern Cape recorded blue drop scores of less than 50% and have failed to operate and manage the supply of drinking water in accordance with the regulations. It is also very distressing to note that the ability of Umsobomvu (blue drop score of 15,7%) , Renosterberg, Mier and Siyancuma local

municipalities to supply safe drinking water is under question. This is a dire situation that may require both COGHSTA and DWAF to institute punitive measures should the situation persist.

Another cause for concern is the low average green drop score of 23% that was recorded for the province as a whole in the 2010/11 cycle. Of the 71 waste water systems assessed in the province in the abovementioned cycle only nine had a green drop score of more than 50%. This indicates a serious deterioration in waste water management and the same action as recommended in the paragraph above is suggested.

The number of households with adequate sanitation (flush and chemical toilets) in 2011 stands at 200 578 or 66,5%. These figures are much lower than those recorded in the 2006 census and can be ascribed to the incorporation of the North West towns in the cross border municipalities into the Northern Cape. Support for this assertion is found in the fact that less than 31% households in the John Taolo Gaetsewe have flush/chemical toilets (Census 2011) compared to the Frances Baard with over 80%.

Amongst the local municipalities the Kgatelopele municipality has the highest percentage of households with access to flush/chemical toilets whilst the Joe Morolong has a staggering low percentage of 7,3%. Despite the rural nature of the JTG District and the distance between households a more concerted effort is required by the provincial government to address this problem and consideration should be given to adequate sanitation that is alternate to the flush system.

More than 85% of households in the province have access to electricity (Census 2011) which is slightly lower than the figures recorded in the previous census (2006) and the reasons for this is similar to those given in the above paragraph. The ZF Mgcawu/JTG has the highest percentage of households with electricity. The electricity backlogs recorded in municipalities mainly due to informal settlements and must be addresses through the upgrading of informal settlement programme.

The percentage of households with access to refuse removal is 64,9% and this figure is severely impacted upon by the John Taolo Gaetsewe District where only 26% of households have access. The low numbers in John Taolo Gaetsewe are due to the rural nature of the district and the distance between houses that makes this service unaffordable. An alternative and innovative approach will be required to tackle this challenge.

The following NCPGDS targets for basic services have not been achieved, namely:

- To provide clean drinking water to all in the province by 2014; and
- To eliminate sanitation backlog in the province to all by 2014

These targets need to be reviewed with more realistic deadlines for these targets put in place.

#### **20.1.6 Social Cohesion**

The measurement of the effectiveness of the Social Cohesion programmes through conducting perception surveys from time to time are influenced by many variables that cannot be linked directly to government programmes and therefore cannot accurately measure the effectiveness of these programmes. An effective tool that could measure the success of government programmes in promoting social cohesion is required and there is definitely a need for the development of such a tool that can measure a social cohesion index.

## **20.2 Justice and Crime Prevention**

### **20.2.1 Safety and Security**

As mentioned elsewhere in this report, although the fight against crime has had some success the crime rate in the province continues to remain unacceptably high. In its efforts to ensure a safer and secure environment for all communities the provincial government developed and implemented a Northern Cape Crime Prevention Strategy in 2012. Contact crimes and crimes against women and children remain the biggest challenge in the province. Efforts to combat the latter crimes needs to be strengthened and the number of public awareness and education programmes need to be increased.

An effective means of sustaining the fight against crime is to encourage and promote community policing. Emphasis will need to be placed on partnerships and collaboration between police, residents, government departments and community organisations and a need to focus on changing attitudes, particularly of the communities.

Poverty and unemployment amongst youth play a big role in the commission of crimes such as property related crime, drug related crime (dealing in drugs or use thereof) and contact crimes. These challenges need to be tackled head-on if we hope to succeed in reducing crime levels. Substance abuse, particularly alcohol, is the major cause of contact crimes such as murder, assault and sexual offences. More stringent regulations need to govern the sale of alcohol and tougher sanctions are required against those responsible for the sale of alcohol to minors.

## **20.3 Economic Sector**

The real annual economic growth rate of the Northern Cape was at its lowest in in 2009 as a result of the global economic crisis, the lowest of -3,3% in the decade 2004- 2013 which was 5,5% lower than the previous year. This was followed by a gradual recovery with the annual economic growth rate reaching an average rate of 3,3% in 2012 which was the highest for the ten year period and for the first time it exceeded the average annual economic growth rate of the country which posted a growth of 2,2%. However, in 2013 the provincial economic growth experienced a decline and recorded an annual average rate of 2,1 which was only higher than the growth rates of Eastern Cape, Free State and Mpumalanga for that year.

The Northern Cape contributed 2% to the national economic output in 2013 which is by far the lowest of all nine provinces. This was even lower than the province's contribution of 2,3% in 1999 and 2,2% in 2006.

The structure of the Northern Cape economy has remained fairly unchanged over the past twenty years and the tertiary sector continues to be the largest contributor followed by the primary sector. The primary sector has shown marginal growth with its contribution increasing from 28,7% in 2006 to 30,1% in 2013. Mining and quarrying remains the mainstay of the provincial economy but does not employ as many people as agriculture. Although the secondary sector has grown and its contribution to the provincial economy increased from 5,7% in 2006 to 9,5% in 2013 much more needs to be done to stimulate industries in the secondary sector including manufacturing, agro-processing and SMME development. Manufacturing, however, has gone against the general trend of the secondary sector in that it has decreased from 4,3% in 1996 to 3,2% in 2013. Since manufacturing is a significant player in the creation of work opportunities special and focused attention must be given to the promotion of the growth of this sector.

Tourism has the potential to grow even further and government must embark on a rigorous campaign to promote tourism in the province as an extreme nature and sports destination, amongst other things.

### **20.3.1 Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development**

The agricultural sector in the province grew at an average rate of 2.7% between 2000 and 2012 which was faster than the growth rate of national agriculture at 1.8% during the same period. The contribution of agriculture to the GDP of the Northern Cape has increased from 5.5% in 1996 to 6.6% in 2013 indicating that the rest of the provincial economy grew slower than the 2.7% of agriculture. The GDP multiplier for agriculture is 1.51 compared to 1.58 for the total average economy while the labour multiplier for agriculture is 24.17 as opposed to 8.16 for the total economy, the latter outweighing all other sectors.

Land reform has lost momentum in the past five years particularly with regards to the land redistribution programme. By the end of the 2013/14 financial year over 1 million hectares was redistributed through the land redistribution programme to 6 310 beneficiaries and the land restitution programme has restored almost 759 000 hectares to 98 613 beneficiaries. The NCPGDS target, namely, "To redistribute 30% of the productive agricultural land to PDI's by 2014" was not even close to being achieved which really begs the question of whether this target is realistic and within the control of province. This target needs to be revisited not only with regards to the target deadline but also the percentage of land to be redistributed. Furthermore, no report has been received on the specific target set in the reviewed NCPGDS for 2010 to 2014, that is, to acquire and allocate 81 964 ha.

### **20.3.2 Infrastructure**

The total length of the road network in the province, based on visual assessment, is approximately 3 343 km for paved roads and 22 448 km for unpaved roads. Almost 80% of the unpaved roads are operating as earth roads or with extensive exposures and this has a huge impact on the road user safety and costs in the province. With this massive task and challenge of maintaining a huge road network that is almost a quarter of the country's road network and that is to a large extent in a very poor condition, the Northern Cape receives only 2% of total roads budget from national government. The provincial government should not only embark on a concerted effort to motivate for additional funds from national Treasury for maintenance of the provincial roads but should also argue for a change in the funding formula.

The development of transport infrastructure through projects such as the Port Nolloth Harbour, Upington Cargo Hub and the De Aar Logistics Hub has been in the pipeline since the late nineties and is yet to get off the ground. With national government committed to making significant investments in infrastructure projects provincial government should use the opportunity to lobby for funds for these projects. This would require, where still applicable, all feasibility studies, development frameworks and project plans to be completed without delay.

### **20.3.3 Unemployment**

The unemployment rate for the first quarter of 2014 was 39.8%, a staggering 12.4% more than that for the first quarter of 2009 despite the fact that there were 30 000 more people employed in 2014 (308 000) than 2009 (278 000). This huge increase in unemployment has occurred even though both the labour absorption rate (from 39.4% in Q1 2009 to 40.9% in Q1 2014) and the labour force participation rate (54.2% in Q1 2009 to 67.9% in Q1 2014) have increased. The provincial unemployment rate for Q1 2014 is also higher than national rate of 35.1%. These trends in the unemployment rates are in direct contradiction to the target of reducing the unemployment rate as envisaged in the NCPGDS. It will also be necessary to review this target.

## **20.4 Governance and Administration**

Both governance and the administration have been significantly transformed in the Northern Cape since 1994. There has been an upward trend in the proportion of women serving in the provincial legislature, in the Executive Council as well as in municipal councils.

### **20.4.1 Intergovernmental Relations**

Intergovernmental relations institutions at both provincial and district level are fully operational and functional. However, the implementation of resolutions/ decisions taken at these forums must be enforced otherwise the need for these institutions will become unnecessary. An amendment to the IGR Act that incorporates sanctions for non-compliance may be necessary.

### **20.4.2 Participatory Democracy**

The Northern Cape Province has been amongst the front runners in deepening participatory democracy through, amongst others, its Executive Council meets the people programme. This programme has been replicated at the district level where the district council meets with the people.

The establishment of functional ward committees in the vast majority of wards across the province provides a mechanism for meaningful community engagement at the local level. Despite these structures being in place the success of these engagement processes appears to be limited based on the increase in the number and frequency of service delivery protests.

At local government level there is a need to ensure that community participation in the Integrated Development Planning process is meaningful with due consideration given to balancing the needs identified together with the community and the available resources.

### **20.4.3 Local Government**

The Community Development Workers programme that is implemented at ward level in municipalities has given impetus to government's efforts at not only improving service delivery but also of taking services to the people. The success of this programme on the ground is difficult to measure in the absence of proper supervision as well as effective monitoring and evaluation tools. In order to address these shortcomings an effective monitoring and evaluation system should be developed and implemented.

A severe constraint that places an immense burden on the capabilities of many municipalities is the relatively high vacancy rate among senior managers. In mid-2014 COGHSTA reported that across the 32 municipalities in the province more than 35% of posts for senior managers, including municipal managers, chief financial officers, technical managers and corporate services, were vacant. In six municipalities the post of municipal manager was vacant. This poses a serious risk to the entire operations of the affected municipalities and COGHSTA must become more pro-active in assisting municipalities with the recruitment process and ensuring that the senior posts are filled with competent persons.

Since the late nineties many programmes have been implemented to support local government but with little or no success. The first of these was Municipal Support Programme followed by Project Consolidate and the Five Year Local Government Strategic Agenda. Most of this support was provided in the form of consultants and little or no capacity was left behind at the local level with the result that most municipalities that received such support were no better off once the support was withdrawn. But with the

introduction of the Local Government Turn Around Strategy and MISA initial outcomes are positive but it is still too early to pronounce judgement on the merits or otherwise of these programmes. These programmes will nevertheless require close monitoring.

#### **20.4.4 Finance and Financial Management**

##### **Provincial Government**

The equitable share and conditional grants contribute almost 94% towards the provincial revenue with own revenue contributing less than 5%. Provincial government needs to increase revenue collections to increase its contribution to the revenue.

On the expenditure side, provincial government continues to overspend resulting in unauthorised expenditure being incurred every year. Compensation of employees continues to be the largest spender and consumes annually over half the provincial revenue and over 70% of the total current expenditure. This item has also seen a year-on-year average increase of about 15% for the period 2008/09 to 2013/14. This increase needs to be stemmed if more funds are to be available for service delivery.

A long term solution towards the eradication of poverty is to grow the provincial economy. The bias in provincial expenditure is in favour of the social sector with a very small percentage spent on economic development. It is recommended that expenditure on economic development be increased gradually so as to make an impact on economic growth which also serves as a means of increasing work opportunities.

Because the population of the Northern Cape is sparsely spread throughout the province the cost of providing services such as health, education, housing, water, sanitation, refuse removal and electricity as well as bulk infrastructure, among other things, of acceptable standards is far more costly than in any other province. The hardest hit is the John Taolo Gaetsewe district and details of a lack of services have been dealt with earlier in this report. This situation warrants a review of the formula used to determine the equitable share and provincial government should lead the process of lobbying for this change.

There has been a vast improvement in the audit opinions received by provincial government departments since the 2007/08 financial year when 50% of the departments received qualified audit opinions. In the 2013/14 financial year 4 departments received clean audits compared with only one the previous year and none in the three years preceding 2012/13. In both 2012/13 and 2013/14 not a single department received a disclaimer or adverse audit opinion but there were, however, four and three qualified audits respectively. Three departments, namely, DoE, DoH and DSAC received qualified audits in both years. However, when it comes to management of public sector finances nothing less than an unqualified audit is acceptable. Accordingly, all departments must exercise the necessary diligence in ensuring proper financial management by, inter alia, putting in place effective internal controls and Provincial Treasury should be the custodian.

It is a matter for concern, however, that more than 40% of the departments audited in 2013/14 did not provide reliable and credible performance information when reporting on predetermined performance objectives. Furthermore, 64% of provincial government departments in the same financial year had audit findings on compliance with legislation indicating inadequate controls or deviations from internal controls. With regards to the latter shortcoming Provincial Treasury should be charged with the responsibility of ensuring that all departments have adequate internal controls in place

In spite of the improvement mentioned what is also a matter of grave concern is the relatively large amount of unauthorised, irregular and fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred annually. Despite the debt redemption strategy implemented by Provincial Treasury, which has settled almost 75% of the unauthorised expenditure, the balance at

the end of the 2013/14 financial year is still relatively high and stands at just under R300 million. With the culmination of the implementation of the debt redemption strategy Treasury would need to get tough on departments by implementing the sanction of writing off departmental overspends against their budgets.

At the end of the 2013/14 fiscal year the cumulative balance of irregular expenditure stood at R6,77 billion as a result mainly of non-compliance with financial legislation and regulations. A major portion of the irregular expenditure incurred has resulted from either a breakdown in or a lack of controls. The Department of Health is responsible for more than half of the irregular expenditure followed by Education and COGHSTA. Following discussions with Provincial Treasury it has emerged that the escalation in irregular expenditure since 2010/11 is a result of an altered interpretation of the supply chain management legislation/ regulations. Nevertheless, there are various in-house problems that contribute to this undesirable state of affairs and these include the following:

- High level decisions being left to relatively junior officials.
- No genuine segregation of duties in the supply chain management process.
- Lack of preventative controls in place.
- Risk management is very weak or non-existent.
- Finance staff as well as the non-financial managers are not sufficiently capacitated.
- Sanctions are not applied in instances of gross financial misconduct; and
- Very little or no consideration is given with regards to value for money.

In terms of Section 38(1) (c)(ii) of the Public Finance management Act it is the responsibility of the Accounting Officer to take effective and appropriate steps to- ".....prevent unauthorised, irregular and fruitless and wasteful expenditure and losses resulting from criminal conduct." In the absence of the application of sanctions against cases of financial misconduct the recurrence of irregular expenditure will continue unabated and therefore such actions need to be dealt with in the strongest of terms.

Capacity building of SCM officials and non-financial managers must be conducted on a regular basis to enable the officials, particularly the non-financial manager, to make informed financial decisions.

## **Local Government**

Financial management at the local government level is of matter of serious concern and in most municipalities there seems to be no financial accountability at all. Support for this position is evidenced by the fact that over 54% of all audits of municipalities over the five year period 2008/09 to 2012/13 received disclaimers whereas over the same period only four out of a possible 160 audits were clean audits. The implementation of 'Operation Clean Audit' by the provincial government to improve the audit opinions has had no impact on the audit findings of municipalities and municipalities reluctance to cooperative with provincial government suggests that the problems are of a more serious nature than meets the eye.

The Auditor-General has identified six key risk areas that need to be addressed to improve audit outcomes of municipalities. These are: quality of submitted financial statements; quality of annual performance reports; supply chain management; financial health; information technology controls and human resource management. The audit of the six risk areas in 2012/13 by the AG's office indicates that the recommendations to address these risks have not yet been implemented. To improve accountability in both finances and performance by municipalities stronger action will need to be taken and may even warrant looking at legal imperatives.

## **20.5 Other Matters**

### **20.5.1 Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy**

Not many departments have incorporated the NCPGDS targets and strategic interventions into their departmental strategic plans or their annual action plans. The result is that in most cases there are no direct and hence reliable reporting on achievements against the targets and interventions. In the reviewed version of the NCPGDS (2011) specific targets for 2010-2014 were agreed upon but very few were actually reported against. This, therefore, raises the question as to whether the NCPGDS is still relevant.

If the NCPGDS is still, however, considered relevant then the targets and strategic interventions need to be reviewed and the time-lines for most targets re-determined. What will also be necessary will be to conduct a risk assessment on deliverables and develop a risk management plan.

### **20.5.2 Northern Cape Provincial Spatial Development Framework**

The Provincial Spatial Development Framework provides a spatial framework for, *inter alia*, the provincial sector strategies and aligns environmental management with the applicable international agreements, protocols and conventions. There is, however, little evidence to suggest that the strategic plans of provincial departments have factored the PSDF into their planning.

Moreover, the PSDF has included a number of sectoral strategies that still has to be developed but there is nothing that indicates whether or not he some of them have been developed or are in the process of being developed..



## 21. CONCLUSION

The Northern Cape Provincial Government has to a large degree succeeded in meeting with its Constitutional obligations as well as with its legislative and policy mandates. It has continued in the past five years (as was the case in the previous fifteen years) to focus on the central construct of the Reconstruction and Development Programme, namely, a commitment to effectively address poverty and inequality that is still prevalent in society. In the past two decades there has been significant progress made in a number of areas leading to a marked improvement in the quality of the lives of the citizens of the province.

In spite of the many positives that have emerged through the review there are still a number of challenges that need to be addressed. New approaches are also required to address these challenges so that improvements made to the lives of our people are self-sustaining. The War on Poverty programme with the objective of graduating households out of poverty is commendable but its success should be measured by whether there is a decrease in the number of beneficiaries of social grants. But what remains critical in the fight against poverty is the creation of sustainable employment opportunities. While employment figures in the province have consistently increased over the past five years the unemployment rates are unacceptably high. To address the latter challenge it would require innovative methods to promote the secondary sector, particularly the manufacturing sector.

Education is a key means of graduating out of poverty and the performance of basic education needs to improve and provide the basis for the development of skills required by the economy to enable future generations to access quality jobs. This would also require an improvement in the overall quality of education.

Whilst access to all services continues to expand the quality of most of the services pose a serious challenge. It should be noted that the cost of providing services in the Northern Cape is much higher than in all the other provinces due to, amongst other things, the large distances that need to be traversed. In this regard a concerted effort should be made to convince National Treasury to revisit the funding model used to determine the provincial equitable share.

The intention here is not to repeat all the challenges we face as a government but only to mention a few as a reminder of what lies ahead. This review should not only encourage us to emulate our successes but should also serve to inform future planning that will enable us to tackle the challenges and shortcomings we face head-on.